

# English: Unlocked Literal Bible for Mark, Matthew

Formatted for Translators

©2022 Wycliffe Associates

Released under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Bible Text: The English Unlocked Literal Bible (ULB)

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English Unlocked Literal Bible is based on the unfoldingWord® Literal Text, CC BY-SA 4.0. The original work of the unfoldingWord® Literal Text is available at <https://unfoldingword.bible/ult/>.

The ULB is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Notes: English ULB Translation Notes

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English ULB Translation Notes is based on the unfoldingWord translationNotes, under CC BY-SA 4.0. The original unfoldingWord work is available at <https://unfoldingword.bible/utn>.

The ULB Notes is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

To view a copy of the CC BY-SA 4.0 license visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/>

Below is a human-readable summary of (and not a substitute for) the license.

You are free to:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format.
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

The licensor cannot revoke these freedoms as long as you follow the license terms.

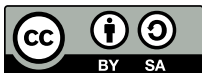
Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: "Original work available at <https://BibleInEveryLanguage.org>." Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.
- No additional restrictions — You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

Notices:

You do not have to comply with the license for elements of the material in the public domain or where your use is permitted by an applicable exception or limitation.

No warranties are given. The license may not give you all of the permissions necessary for your intended use. For example, other rights such as publicity, privacy, or moral rights may limit how you use the material.



# Introduction to the Gospel of Matthew

## Part 1: General Introduction

### Outline of the Book of Matthew

1. The birth of Jesus Christ and the beginning of his ministry (1:1–4:25)
2. Jesus's Sermon on the Mount (5:1–7:28)
3. Jesus illustrates the kingdom of God through acts of healing (8:1–9:34)
4. Jesus's teaching about mission and the kingdom (9:35–10:42)
5. Jesus's teaching about the gospel of the kingdom of God. The beginning of opposition to Jesus. (11:1–12:50)
6. Jesus's parables about the kingdom of God (13:1–52)
7. Further opposition to Jesus and misunderstanding of the kingdom of God (13:53–17:57)
8. Jesus's teaching about life in the kingdom of God (18:1–35)
9. Jesus ministers in Judea (19:1–22:46)
10. Jesus's teaching about the final judgment and salvation (23:1–25:46)
11. The crucifixion of Jesus, his death and resurrection (26:1–28:19)

### What is the book of Matthew about?

The Gospel of Matthew is one of four books in the New Testament that describe some of the life of Jesus Christ. The authors of the gospels wrote about different aspects of who Jesus was and what he did. Matthew showed that Jesus was the Messiah and that God would save Israel through him. Matthew often explained that Jesus fulfilled the Old Testament prophecies about the Messiah. This may indicate that he expected most of his first readers to be Jewish. (See: christ)

### How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "The Gospel of Matthew" or "The Gospel according to Matthew." Or they may choose a title that may be clearer, such as "The Good News about Jesus that Matthew wrote."

### Who wrote the Book of Matthew?

The book does not give the name of the author. However, since early Christian times most Christians have thought that the author was the Apostle Matthew.

## Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

### What is the "kingdom of heaven?"

Matthew spoke of the kingdom of heaven in the same way that other gospel writers spoke of the kingdom of God. The kingdom of heaven represents God ruling over all people and all creation everywhere. Those whom God accepts into his kingdom will be blessed. They will live with God forever.

### What were Jesus's teaching methods?

The people regarded Jesus as a rabbi. A rabbi is a teacher of God's law. Jesus taught in ways similar to other religious teachers in Israel. He had students who followed him wherever he went. These students were called disciples. He often told parables. Parables are stories that teach moral lessons. (See: lawofmoses and disciple and parable)

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### What are the Synoptic Gospels?

The Gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke are called the Synoptic Gospels because they have many similar passages. The word "synoptic" means to "see together."

The texts are considered "parallel" when they are the same or almost the same among two or three gospels. When translating parallel passages, translators should use the same wording and make them as similar as possible.

### Why does Jesus refer to himself as the "Son of Man"?

In the gospels, Jesus calls himself the "Son of Man." It is a reference to Daniel 7:13-14. In this passage there is a person described as a "son of man." That means the person was someone who looked like a human being. God gave authority to the son of man to rule over the nations forever. And all the people will worship him forever.

Jews of Jesus's time did not use "Son of Man" as a title for anyone. Therefore, Jesus used it for himself to help them understand who he truly was. (See: sonofman)

Translating the title "Son of Man" can be difficult in many languages. Readers may misunderstand a literal translation. Translators can consider alternatives, such as "The Human One." It may also be helpful to include a footnote to explain the title.

### What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Matthew?

The following verses are found in older versions of the Bible but are not included in most modern versions:

- "Bless those who curse you, do good to those who hate you" (5:44)
- "For yours is the kingdom and the power and the glory forever. Amen" (6:13)
- "But this kind of demon does not go out except with prayer and fasting" (17:21)
- "For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost" (18:11)
- "Many are called, but few are chosen" (20:16)
- "Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for you devour widows' houses, while you make a show of long prayers. You will therefore receive greater condemnation." (23:14)

Translators are advised not to include these passages. However, if in the translators' region there are older versions of the Bible that include one or more of these passages, the translators can include them. If they are included, they should be put inside square brackets

---

## Matthew

<sup>1</sup>The book of the genealogy of Jesus Christ, son of David, son of Abraham.

<sup>2</sup>Abraham was the father of Isaac, and Isaac the father of Jacob, and Jacob the father of Judah and his brothers.

<sup>3</sup>Judah was the father of Perez and Zerah by Tamar, Perez the father of Hezron, and Hezron the father of Ram.

<sup>4</sup>Ram was the father of Amminadab, Amminadab the father of Nahshon, and Nahshon the father of Salmon.

<sup>5</sup>Salmon was the father of Boaz by Rahab, Boaz the father of Obed by Ruth, Obed the father of Jesse.

<sup>6</sup>Jesse was the father of David the king.

David was the father of Solomon by the wife of Uriah.

<sup>7</sup>Solomon was the father of Rehoboam, Rehoboam the father of Abijah, Abijah the father of Asa.

<sup>8</sup>Asa was the father of Jehoshaphat, Jehoshaphat the father of Joram, and Joram an ancestor of Uzziah.

<sup>9</sup>Uzziah was the father of Jotham, Jotham the father of Ahaz, Ahaz the father of Hezekiah.

<sup>10</sup>Hezekiah was the father of Manasseh, Manasseh the father of Amon, and Amon the father of Josiah.

<sup>11</sup>Josiah was an ancestor of Jechoniah and his brothers at the time of the deportation to Babylon.

<sup>12</sup>After the deportation to Babylon, Jechoniah was the father of Shealtiel, Shealtiel was an ancestor of Zerubbabel.

<sup>13</sup>Zerubbabel was the father of Abiud, Abiud the father of Eliakim, and Eliakim the father of Azor.

<sup>14</sup>Azor was the father of Zadok, Zadok the father of Achim, and Achim the father of Eliud.

<sup>15</sup>Eliud was the father of Eleazar, Eleazar the father of Matthan, and Matthan the father of Jacob.

<sup>16</sup>Jacob was the father of Joseph the husband of Mary, by whom Jesus was born, who is called Christ.

<sup>17</sup>All the generations from Abraham to David were fourteen generations, from David to the deportation to Babylon fourteen generations, and from the deportation to Babylon to the Christ fourteen generations.

<sup>18</sup>The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way. His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit.<sup>19</sup>But Joseph, her husband, was a righteous man and did not want to publicly disgrace her, so he intended to divorce her quietly.

<sup>20</sup>As he thought about these things, an angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream, saying, "Joseph son of David, do not fear to take Mary as your wife, because the one who is conceived in her is conceived by the Holy Spirit.

<sup>21</sup>She will bear a son, and you will call his name Jesus, for he will save his people from their sins."

<sup>22</sup>Now all this happened to fulfill what was spoken by the Lord through the prophet, saying,<sup>23</sup>"Behold, the virgin will become pregnant and will bear a son, and they will call his name Immanuel"—which being translated is "God with us."

<sup>24</sup>Joseph got up from his sleep and did as the angel of the Lord commanded him, and he took her as his wife.<sup>25</sup>But he did not know her until she gave birth to a son. Then he called his name Jesus.

---

## Matthew 1 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set a quotation from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this for the quoted material in 1:23.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Genealogy

A genealogy is a list that records a person's ancestors or descendants. Jews used genealogies to choose the right man to become king. They did this because only a son of a king could become king. Most important people had records of their genealogies.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Use of the passive voice

Matthew uses the passive voice very purposefully in this chapter to indicate that Mary did not have a sexual relationship with anyone. She became pregnant with Jesus because the Holy Spirit performed a miracle. Many languages do not have a passive voice, so translators in those languages must find other ways to present the same truths.

## Links:

- [Matthew 1:1](#)
  - [Matthew intro](#)
- 

### Matthew 1:1

General Information:

The author begins with Jesus's genealogy in order to show that he is a descendant of King David and of Abraham. The genealogy continues through Matthew 1:16.

The book of the genealogy of Jesus Christ

You could translate this as a complete sentence.  
Alternate translation: "This is the list of the ancestors of Jesus Christ"

Jesus Christ, son of David, son of Abraham

There were many generations between Jesus, David, and Abraham. Here "son" means "descendant."  
Alternate translation: "Jesus Christ, a descendant of David, who was a descendant of Abraham"

son of David

Sometimes the phrase "son of David" is used as a title, but here it seems to be used only to identify Jesus's ancestry.

### Matthew 1:2

Abraham was the father of Isaac

"Abraham became the father of Isaac" or "Abraham had a son Isaac" or "Abraham had a son named Isaac."  
There are different ways you could translate this. Whichever way you translate it here, it would be best to translate it the same way throughout the list of Jesus's ancestors.

Isaac the father ... Jacob the father

Here the word "was" is understood. Alternate translation: "Isaac was the father ... Jacob was the father"

### Matthew 1:3

Perez ... Zerah ... Hezron ... Ram

These are names of men.

Perez the father ... Hezron the father

Here the word "was" is understood. Alternate translation: "Perez was the father ... Hezron was the father"

### Matthew 1:4

Connecting Statement:

This continues the genealogy of Jesus.

Amminadab the father ... Nahshon the father

Here the word "was" is understood. Alternate translation: "Amminadab was the father ... Nahshon was the father"

### Matthew 1:5

Salmon was the father of Boaz by Rahab

"Salmon was the father of Boaz, and Boaz's mother was Rahab" or "Salmon and Rahab were the parents of Boaz"

Boaz the father ... Obed the father

Here the word "was" is understood. Alternate translation: "Boaz was the father ... Obed was the father"

Boaz the father of Obed by Ruth

"Boaz was the father of Obed, and Obed's mother was Ruth" or "Boaz and Ruth were the parents of Obed"

### Matthew 1:6

David was the father of Solomon by the wife of Uriah

"David was the father of Solomon, and Solomon's mother was Uriah's wife" or "David and the wife of Uriah were the parents of Solomon"

the wife of Uriah

"the widow of Uriah." Solomon was born after Uriah died.

Matthew 1:7

Connecting Statement:

This continues the genealogy of Jesus.

Rehoboam the father of Abijah, Abijah the father of Asa

The word "was" is understood in both of these phrases. Alternate translation: "Rehoboam was the father of Abijah, and Abijah was the father of Asa"

Matthew 1:8

Joram

This man was called both Joram and Jehoram in the Old Testament.

Matthew 1:9

Connecting Statement:

This continues the genealogy of Jesus.

Matthew 1:10

Amon

Sometimes this is translated "Amos."

Matthew 1:11

Josiah was an ancestor of Jechoniah

A more specific term for "ancestor" can also be used, particularly if the word "ancestor" would only be used for someone who lived before one's grandparents. Alternate translation: "Josiah was a grandfather of Jechoniah"

at the time of the deportation to Babylon

"when they were forced to move to Babylon" or "when the Babylonians conquered them and made them go live in Babylon." If your language needs to specify who went to Babylon, you could say "the Israelites" or "the Israelites who lived in Judah."

Babylon

Here this means the country of Babylon, not just the city of Babylon.

Matthew 1:12

Connecting Statement:

This continues the genealogy of Jesus.

After the deportation to Babylon

Use the same wording you used in Matthew 1:11.

Shealtiel was an ancestor of Zerubbabel

Shealtiel was Zerubbabel's grandfather.

Matthew 1:13

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 1:14

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 1:15

Connecting Statement:

This continues the genealogy of Jesus.

Matthew 1:16

Connecting Statement:

The author concludes Jesus's genealogy, which began in Matthew 1:1.

Mary, by whom Jesus was born

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Mary, who gave birth to Jesus"

who is called Christ

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom people call Christ"

## Matthew 1:17

fourteen

"14"

deportation to Babylon

Use the same wording you used in Matthew 1:11.

## Matthew 1:18

General Information:

This begins a new part of the story in which the author describes the events leading up to the birth of Jesus.

His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph

"His mother, Mary, was going to marry Joseph." Parents normally arranged the marriages of their children. Alternate translation: "The parents of Mary, the mother of Jesus, had promised her in marriage to Joseph"

His mother, Mary, was engaged

Translate in a way that makes it clear that Jesus was not already born when Mary was engaged to Joseph. Alternate translation: "Mary, who would be the mother of Jesus, was engaged"

before they came together

"before they got married." This may refer to Mary and Joseph sleeping together. Alternate translation: "before they had slept together"

she was found to be pregnant

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they realized that she was pregnant" or "it happened that she was pregnant"

to be pregnant

"to be carrying a child"

by the Holy Spirit

The power of the Holy Spirit had enabled Mary to have a baby before she had slept with a man.

## Matthew 1:19

Joseph, her husband

Joseph had not married Mary yet, but when a man and woman promised to marry each other, Jews considered them husband and wife though they did not live together. Alternate translation: "Joseph, who was supposed to marry Mary"

to divorce her quietly

"to quietly cancel their plans to get married"

## Matthew 1:20

As he thought

"As Joseph thought"

appeared to him in a dream

"came to him while Joseph was dreaming"

son of David

Here "son" means "descendant."

the one who is conceived in her is conceived by the Holy Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit caused Mary to become pregnant with this child"

## Matthew 1:21

She will bear a son

Because God sent the angel, the angel knew the baby was a boy.

you will call his name

"you must name him" or "you must give him the name." This is a command.

for he will save

Translator may add a footnote that says "The name 'Jesus' means 'the Lord saves.'"

his people

This refers to the Jews.



## Matthew 1:22

### General Information:

The author quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus's birth was according to scripture.

all this happened

The angel is no longer speaking. Matthew is now explaining the importance of what the angel said.

what was spoken by the Lord through the prophet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the Lord told the prophet to write long ago"

the prophet

There were many prophets. Matthew was speaking of Isaiah. Alternate translation: "the prophet Isaiah"

## Matthew 1:23

Behold ... Immanuel

Here Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah.

Behold, the virgin

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: the virgin"

Immanuel

This is a male name.

Immanuel"—which being translated is "God with us."

This is not in the book of Isaiah. Matthew is explaining the meaning of the name "Immanuel." You could translate it as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "Immanuel." This name means 'God with us.'"

## Matthew 1:24

### Connecting Statement:

The author concludes his description of the events leading up to the birth of Jesus.

as the angel of the Lord commanded

The angel had told Joseph to take Mary as his wife and to name the child Jesus.

he took her as his wife

"he married Mary"

## Matthew 1:25

he did not know her

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "he did not have sexual relations with her"

to a son

"to a male baby" or "to her son." Make sure it is clear that Joseph is not portrayed as the actual father.

Then he called his name Jesus

"Joseph named the child Jesus"

2 <sup>1</sup>After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying, <sup>2</sup>"Where is he who was born King of the Jews? We saw his star in the east and have come to worship him." <sup>3</sup>When Herod the king heard this, he was troubled, and all Jerusalem with him.

<sup>4</sup>Herod brought together all the chief priests and scribes of the people, and he asked them, "Where is the Christ to be born?" <sup>5</sup>They said to him, "In Bethlehem of Judea, for this is what was written by the prophet:

<sup>6</sup> 'But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,  
are not the least among the rulers of Judah,  
for from you will come one who rules,  
who will shepherd my people Israel."

<sup>7</sup>Then Herod secretly called the learned men to ask them exactly what time the star had appeared. <sup>8</sup>He sent them to Bethlehem, saying, "Go and search carefully for the young child. When you have found him, bring me a report so that I also may come and worship him."

<sup>9</sup>After they had heard the king, they went on their way, and the star that they had seen in the east went before them until it came and stood still over where the young child was. <sup>10</sup>When they saw the star, they rejoiced with very great joy.

<sup>11</sup>They went into the house and saw the young child with Mary his mother. They fell down and worshiped him. They opened their treasures and offered him gifts of gold, frankincense, and myrrh. <sup>12</sup>God warned them in a dream not to return to Herod, so they departed to their own country by another way.

<sup>13</sup>After they had departed, an angel of the Lord appeared to Joseph in a dream and said, "Get up, take the young child and his mother, and flee to Egypt. Remain there until I tell you, for Herod will seek the young child to destroy him." <sup>14</sup>That night Joseph rose and took the young child and his mother and departed into Egypt. <sup>15</sup>He remained there until the death of Herod. This fulfilled what had been spoken by the Lord through the prophet, saying, "Out of Egypt I have called my Son."

<sup>16</sup>Then Herod, when he saw that he had been mocked by the learned men, was very angry. He sent and killed all the male children that were in Bethlehem and in all that region who were two years old and under, according to the time that he had determined exactly from the learned men.

<sup>17</sup>Then was fulfilled what had been spoken through Jeremiah the prophet, saying,

<sup>18</sup> "A voice was heard in Ramah,  
weeping and great mourning,  
Rachel weeping for her children,  
and she refused to be comforted,  
because they were no more."

<sup>19</sup>When Herod died, behold, an angel of the Lord appeared in a dream to Joseph in Egypt and said, <sup>20</sup>"Get up and take the child and his mother and go to the land of Israel, for those who sought the child's life are dead." <sup>21</sup>Joseph rose, took the child and his mother, and came into the land of Israel.

<sup>22</sup>But when he heard that Archelaus was reigning over Judea in the place of his father Herod, he was afraid to go there. After God warned him in a dream, he left for the region of Galilee <sup>23</sup>and went and lived in a city called Nazareth. This fulfilled what had been spoken through the prophets, that he would be called a Nazarene.

---

## Matthew 2 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verses 6 and 18, which is from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

"His star"

These words probably refer to a star that the learned men believed to be the sign of a new king of Israel. (See: sign)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"Learned men"

English translations use many different words to translate this phrase. These words include "magi" and "wise men." These men could have been scientists or astrologers. If you can, you should translate this with the general words "learned men."

Links:

- [Matthew 2:1 Notes](#)

Matthew 2:1	baby who will become the king of the Jews has been born. Where is he?"
General Information:	his star
A new part of the story begins here and continues through the end of the chapter. Matthew tells about Herod's attempt to kill the new King of the Jews.	They were not saying that the baby was the rightful owner of the star. Alternate translation: "the star that tells about him" or "the star that is associated with his birth"
Bethlehem of Judea	in the east
"the town of Bethlehem in the province of Judea"	"as it came up in the east" or "while we were in our country"
in the days of Herod the king	worship
"when Herod was king there"	Possible meanings are 1) they intended to worship the baby as divine, or 2) they wanted to honor him as a human king. If your language has a word that includes both meanings, you should consider using it here.
Herod	Matthew 2:3
This refers to Herod the Great.	he was troubled
learned men from the east	"he was worried." Herod was worried that this baby would replace him as king.
"men from the east who studied the stars"	all Jerusalem
from the east	Here "Jerusalem" refers to the people. Also, "all" means "many." Matthew is exaggerating to emphasize how many people were worried. Alternate translation: "many of the people in Jerusalem"
"from a country far east of Judea"	
Matthew 2:2	
Where is he who was born King of the Jews?	
The men knew from studying the stars that the one who would become king had been born. They were trying to learn where he was. Alternate translation: "A	

## Matthew 2:4

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Matthew 2:5

In Bethlehem of Judea

"In the town of Bethlehem in the province of Judea"

this is what was written by the prophet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "this is what the prophet wrote long ago"

## Matthew 2:6

General Information:

The chief priests and scribes of the people quote the prophet Micah to show that the Christ would be born in Bethlehem.

you, Bethlehem, ... are not the least among the rulers of Judah

Micah was speaking to the people of Bethlehem as if they were with him but they were not. Also, "are not the least" can be translated with a positive phrase. Alternate translation: "you, people of Bethlehem, ... your town is among the most important towns in Judah"

who will shepherd my people Israel

Micah speaks of this ruler as a shepherd. This means he will lead and care for the people. Alternate translation: "who will lead my people Israel as a shepherd leads his sheep"

## Matthew 2:7

Herod secretly called the learned men

This means that Herod talked to the learned men without other people knowing.

men to ask them exactly what time the star had appeared.

This can be translated as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: "men, and he asked them, 'When exactly did this star appear?'"

what time the star had appeared

It is implied that the learned men told him when the star appeared. Alternate translation: "what time the star had appeared. The learned men told Herod when the star first appeared"

## Matthew 2:8

young child

This refers to Jesus.

bring me a report

"report back to me" or "let me know"

worship him

See how you translated this in Matthew 2:2.

## Matthew 2:9

After they

"After the learned men"

they had seen in the east

"they had seen come up in the east" or "they had seen in their country"

went before them

"guided them" or "led them"

stood still over

"stopped over"

where the young child was

"the place where the young child was staying"

## Matthew 2:10

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Matthew 2:11

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to the house where Mary, Joseph, and the young Jesus were living.

They went

"The learned men went"

They fell down and worshiped him

"They knelt down and put their faces close to the ground." They did this to honor Jesus.

their treasures

Here "treasures" refers to the boxes or bags they used to carry their treasures. Alternate translation: "the containers that held their treasures"

Matthew 2:12

God warned them

"Afterwards, God warned the learned men." God knew that Herod wanted to harm the child.

dream not to return to Herod, so

This can be translated as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: "dream, saying, 'Do not go back to King Herod,' so"

Matthew 2:13

they had departed

"the learned men had departed"

appeared to Joseph in a dream

"came to Joseph while he was dreaming"

Get up, take ... flee ... Remain ... you

God is speaking to Joseph, so these should all be singular forms.

until I tell you

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "until I tell you it is safe to come back"

I tell you

Here "I" refers to God. The angel is speaking for God.

Matthew 2:14

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 2:15

General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Hosea to show that the Christ would spend time in Egypt.

He remained

It is implied that Joseph, Mary, and Jesus remained in Egypt. Alternate translation: "They remained"

until the death of Herod

Herod does not die until Matthew 2:19. This statement describes the length of their stay in Egypt, and it does not say that Herod died at this time.

what had been spoken by the Lord through the prophet, saying

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the Lord had said through the prophet; he had said" or "what the Lord had told the prophet to tell the people; he had said"

Out of Egypt I have called my Son

"I have called my Son out of Egypt"

my Son

In Hosea this refers to the people of Israel. Matthew quoted it to say that this was true of God's Son, Jesus. Translate it using a word for son that could refer to the only son or the first son.

Matthew 2:16

General Information:

These events happen before Herod's death, which Matthew mentioned in [Matthew 2:15]

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts back to Herod and tells what he did when he learned that the learned men had deceived him.

he had been mocked by the learned men

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the learned men had embarrassed him by tricking him"

He sent and killed all the male children

Herod did not kill the children himself. Alternate translation: "He gave orders for his soldiers to kill all the boys" or "He sent soldiers there to kill all the boy babies"

two years old and under

"2 years old and younger"

according to the time

"based on the time"

Matthew 2:17

General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Jeremiah to show that the death of all of the male children in the region of Bethlehem was according to scripture.

Then was fulfilled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This fulfilled" or "Herod's actions fulfilled"

what had been spoken through Jeremiah the prophet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the Lord spoke long ago through the prophet Jeremiah"

Matthew 2:18

A voice was heard ... they were no more

Matthew is quoting the prophet Jeremiah.

A voice was heard

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People heard a voice" or "There was a loud sound"

Rachel weeping for her children

Rachel lived many years before this time. This prophecy shows Rachel, who has died, weeping for her descendants.

she refused to be comforted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "no one could comfort her"

because they were no more

"because the children were gone and would never return." Here "were no more" is a mild way of saying they are dead. Alternate translation: "because they were dead"

Matthew 2:19

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to Egypt, where Joseph, Mary, and the young Jesus are living.

behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of doing this.

Matthew 2:20

those who sought the child's life

Here "sought the child's life" is a way of saying they wanted to kill the child. Alternate translation: "those who were looking for the child in order to kill him"

those who sought

This refers to King Herod and his advisors.

Matthew 2:21

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 2:22

he was afraid

Connecting Statement:

"Joseph was afraid"

This is the end of the part of the story that began in Matthew 2:1 about Herod's attempt to kill the new King of the Jews.

Matthew 2:23

what had been spoken through the prophets

But when he heard

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the Lord spoke long ago through the prophets"

"But when Joseph heard"

he would be called a Nazarene

Archelaus

This is the name of Herod's son.

Here "he" refers to Jesus. The prophets before the time of Jesus would have referred to him as the Messiah or the Christ. Alternate translation: "people would say that the Christ is a Nazarene"

---

3 <sup>1</sup>In those days John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying, <sup>2</sup>"Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is near." <sup>3</sup>For this is he who was spoken of by Isaiah the prophet, saying,

"The voice of one calling out in the wilderness,  
'Make ready the way of the Lord,  
make his paths straight.'"

<sup>4</sup>Now John wore clothing of camel's hair and a leather belt around his waist. His food was locusts and wild honey. <sup>5</sup>Then Jerusalem, all Judea, and all the region around the Jordan River went out to him. <sup>6</sup>They were baptized by him in the Jordan River, confessing their sins.

<sup>7</sup>But when he saw many of the Pharisees and Sadducees coming to him for baptism, he said to them, "You offspring of vipers, who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming?" <sup>8</sup>Bear fruit worthy of repentance. <sup>9</sup>Do not think of saying among yourselves, 'We have Abraham for our father.' For I say to you that God is able to raise up children for Abraham even out of these stones.

<sup>10</sup>Already the ax has been placed against the root of the trees. So every tree that does not produce good fruit is chopped down and thrown into the fire. <sup>11</sup>I baptize you with water for repentance. But he who comes after me is mightier than I, and I am not worthy even to carry his sandals. He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire. <sup>12</sup>His winnowing fork is in his hand to thoroughly clear off his threshing floor and to gather his wheat into the storehouse. But he will burn up the chaff with fire that can never be put out."

<sup>13</sup>Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. <sup>14</sup>But John kept trying to stop him, saying, "I need to be baptized by you, and do you come to me?" <sup>15</sup>Jesus responded and said to him, "Permit it now, for it is right for us to fulfill all righteousness." Then John permitted him.

<sup>16</sup>After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and behold, the heavens were opened to him. He saw the Spirit of God coming down like a dove and resting upon him. <sup>17</sup>Behold, a voice came out of the heavens saying, "This is my beloved Son. I am very pleased with him."

---

## Matthew 3 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted material in verse 3.

### Special concepts in this chapter

"Bear fruit worthy of repentance"

Fruit is a common picture word in the scriptures. Writers use it to describe the results of either good or bad behavior. In this chapter, good fruit is the result of living as God commands. (See: fruit)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"The kingdom of heaven is near"

No one knows for sure whether the "kingdom of heaven" was present or still coming when John spoke these words. English translations often use the phrase "at hand," but these words can be difficult to translate. Other versions use the phrases "is coming near" and "has come near."

### Links:

- [Matthew 3:1 Notes](#)



---

## Matthew 3:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story where Matthew tells of the ministry of John the Baptist.

In those days

This is many years after Joseph and his family left Egypt and went to Nazareth. This is probably near the time that Jesus begins his ministry. Alternate translation: "Some time later" or "Some years later"

## Matthew 3:2

Repent

This is plural in form. John is speaking to the crowds.

the kingdom of heaven is near

The phrase "kingdom of heaven" refers to God ruling as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use the word "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "our God in heaven will soon show himself to be king"

## Matthew 3:3

General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that John the Baptist was God's appointed messenger to prepare for Jesus's ministry.

For this is he who was spoken of by Isaiah the prophet, saying

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For Isaiah the prophet was speaking of John the Baptist when he said"

The voice of one calling out in the wilderness

This can be expressed as a sentence. Alternate translation: "The voice of one calling out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone calling out in the wilderness"

Make ready the way of the Lord ... make his paths straight

These two phrases mean the same thing.

Make ready the way of the Lord

"Get the road ready for the Lord." Doing this represents being prepared to hear the Lord's message when he comes. People do this by repenting of their sins. Alternate translation: "Prepare to hear the Lord's message when he comes" or "Repent and be ready for the Lord to come"

## Matthew 3:4

Now ... wild honey

The word "Now" is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here Matthew tells background information about John the Baptist.

wore clothing of camel's hair and a leather belt around his waist

This clothing symbolizes that John is a prophet like the prophets from long ago, especially the prophet Elijah.

## Matthew 3:5

Then Jerusalem, all Judea, and all the region

The words "Jerusalem," "Judea," and "the region" are metonyms for the people from those areas. The word "all" is an exaggeration to emphasize that very many people went out. Alternate translation: Then very many people from Jerusalem, Judea, and that region"

## Matthew 3:6

They were baptized by him ... River, confessing their sins

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "John baptized them ... River after they confessed their sins"

They

This refers to the people coming from Jerusalem, Judea, and the region around the Jordan River.

## Matthew 3:7

General Information:

John the Baptist begins to rebuke the Pharisees and Sadducees.

You offspring of vipers, who

This is a metaphor. Here "offspring" means "having the characteristic of." Vipers are a kind of dangerous snakes and represent evil. This can be stated as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "You evil poisonous snakes! Who" or "You are evil like poisonous snakes! Who"

who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming?

John uses a question to rebuke the Pharisees and Sadducees because they were asking him to baptize them so that God would not punish them, but they did not want to stop sinning. Alternate translation: "you cannot flee from God's wrath like this." or "do not think that you can flee from God's wrath just because I baptize you."

flee from the wrath that is coming

The word "wrath" is being used to refer to God's punishment because his wrath precedes it. Alternate translation: "run away from the punishment that is coming" or "escape because God is about to punish you"

Matthew 3:8

Bear fruit worthy of repentance

The phrase "bear fruit" is a metaphor referring to a person's actions. Alternate translation: "Let your actions show that you have truly repented"

Matthew 3:9

We have Abraham for our father

"Abraham is our ancestor" or "We are descendants of Abraham." The Jewish leaders thought that God would not punish them since they were descendants of Abraham.

For I say to you

This adds emphasis to what John is about to say.

God is able to raise up children for Abraham even out of these stones

"God is able to make physical descendants out of even these stones and give them to Abraham"

Matthew 3:10

Connecting Statement:

John the Baptist continues to rebuke the Pharisees and Sadducees.

Already the ax has been placed against the root of the trees. So every tree that does not produce good fruit is chopped down and thrown into the fire

This metaphor means God is ready to punish sinners. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has his axe and he is ready to cut down and burn any tree that grows bad fruit" or "As a person gets his axe ready to cut down and burn a tree that grows bad fruit, God is ready to punish you for your sins"

Matthew 3:11

for repentance

"to show that you have repented"

But he who comes after me

Jesus is the person who comes after John.

is mightier than I

"is more important than I am"

He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire

This metaphor compares John's baptism with water to the future baptism with fire. This means John's baptism only symbolically cleanses people of their sins. The baptism by Holy Spirit and fire will truly cleanse people of their sins. If possible, use the word "baptize" in your translation to keep the comparison to John's baptism.

Matthew 3:12

His winnowing fork is in his hand

This metaphor compares the way Christ will separate the righteous people from the unrighteous people to the way a man separates wheat grain from chaff. Alternate translation: "Christ is like a man whose winnowing fork is in his hand"

His winnowing fork is in his hand

Here "in his hand" means the person is ready to act.  
Alternate translation: "Christ is holding a winnowing fork because he is ready"

winnowing fork

This is a tool for tossing wheat up into the air to separate the wheat grain from the chaff. The heavier grain falls back down and the unwanted chaff is blown away by the wind. It is similar in shape to a pitchfork but with wide tines made of wood.

his threshing floor

"his ground" or "the ground where he separates the grain from the chaff"

gather his wheat into the storehouse ... burn up the chaff with fire that can never be put out

This is a metaphor showing how God will separate righteous people from evil people. The righteous will go to heaven like wheat into a farmer's storehouse, and God will burn the people who are like chaff with a fire that will never be put out.

can never be put out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will never burn out"

Matthew 3:13

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a later time when John the Baptist baptizes Jesus.

to be baptized by John

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so John could baptize him"

Matthew 3:14

I need to be baptized by you, and do you come to me?

John uses a question to show his surprise at Jesus's request. Alternate translation: "You are more important than I am. I should not baptize you. You should baptize me."

Matthew 3:15

for us

Here "us" refers to Jesus and John.

John permitted him

You may need to make explicit that John permitted Jesus to be baptized by John. Alternate translation: "John allowed Jesus to be baptized" or "John agreed to baptize Jesus"

Matthew 3:16

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about John the Baptist. It describes what happened after he baptized Jesus.

After he was baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After John baptized Jesus"

behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

the heavens were opened to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus saw the sky open" or "God opened the heavens to Jesus"

coming down like a dove

Possible meanings are 1) this is simply a statement that the Spirit was in the form of a dove or 2) this is a simile that compares the Spirit coming down upon Jesus gently, the way a dove would.

Matthew 3:17

a voice came out of the heavens saying

"Jesus heard a voice from heaven." Here "voice" refers to God speaking. Alternate translation: "God spoke from heaven"

Son

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

---

<sup>4</sup> Then Jesus was led up by the Spirit into the wilderness to be tempted by the devil.<sup>2</sup> When he had fasted forty days and forty nights, he was hungry.<sup>3</sup> The tempter came and said to him, "If you are the Son of God, command these stones to become bread."

<sup>4</sup> But Jesus answered and said to him, "It is written, 'Man does not live on bread alone, but by every word that comes out of the mouth of God.'"

<sup>5</sup> Then the devil took him into the holy city and set him on the highest point of the temple building,<sup>6</sup> and said to him, "If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written,

'He will command his angels to take care of you,'  
and

'They will carry you in their hands,  
so that you will not hit your foot against a stone.'"

<sup>7</sup> Jesus said to him, "Again it is written, 'You must not test the Lord your God.'"

<sup>8</sup> Again, the devil took him up to a very high hill and showed him all the kingdoms of the world along with all their glory.<sup>9</sup> He said to him, "All these things I will give you, if you fall down and worship me."

<sup>10</sup> Then Jesus said to him, "Go away from here, Satan! For it is written, 'You will worship the Lord your God, and you will serve only him.'"

<sup>11</sup> Then the devil left him, and behold, angels came and served him.

<sup>12</sup> Now when Jesus heard that John had been handed over, he withdrew into Galilee.<sup>13</sup> He left Nazareth and went and lived in Capernaum, which is by the Sea of Galilee in the territories of Zebulun and Naphtali.

<sup>14</sup> This happened to fulfill what was said by Isaiah the prophet:

<sup>15</sup> "The land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali,  
toward the sea, beyond the Jordan,  
Galilee of the Gentiles!

<sup>16</sup> The people who sat in darkness  
have seen a great light,  
and to those who sat in the region and shadow of death,  
upon them has a light arisen."

<sup>17</sup> From that time Jesus began to preach and say, "Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is near."

<sup>18</sup> As he was walking by the Sea of Galilee, he saw two brothers, Simon who is called Peter, and Andrew his brother, casting a net into the sea, for they were fishermen.<sup>19</sup> Jesus said to them, "Come, follow me, and I will make you fishers of men."<sup>20</sup> Immediately they left the nets and followed him.

<sup>21</sup> As Jesus was going on from there he saw two other brothers, James son of Zebedee and John his brother. They were in the boat with Zebedee their father mending their nets. He called them,<sup>22</sup> and they immediately left the boat and their father and followed him.

<sup>23</sup> Jesus went about in all of Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, preaching the gospel of the kingdom and healing every kind of disease and sickness among the people.<sup>24</sup> The news about him went out into all of Syria, and the people brought to him all those who suffered from various diseases and pains, those who were possessed by demons, the epileptics, and the paralytics. Jesus healed them.<sup>25</sup> Large crowds followed him from Galilee, the Decapolis, Jerusalem, and Judea, and from beyond the Jordan.

# Matthew 4 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verses 6, 15 and 16, which is from the Old Testament.

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"the kingdom of heaven has come near"

No one knows for use whether the "kingdom of heaven" was present or still coming when Jesus spoke these words. English translations often use the phrase "at hand," but these words can be difficult to translate. Other versions use the phase "is coming near" and "has come near."

"If you are the Son of God"

The reader should not understand these words in verses 3 and 6 to mean that Satan did not know whether Jesus was the Son of God. God had already said that Jesus was his Son ([Matthew 3:17](#)), so Satan knew who Jesus was. He also knew that Jesus could make stones become bread and could throw himself off of high places and not be hurt. He was trying to make Jesus do these things and so disobey God and obey Satan. These words can be translated as "Show me your power if you are the Son of God" (See: [satan](#) and [sonofgod](#))

## Links:

- [Matthew 4:1 Notes](#)

### Matthew 4:1

forty days and forty nights

#### General Information:

"40 days and 40 nights." This refers to 24-hour periods.  
Alternate translation: "40 days"

Here Matthew begins a new part of the story in which Satan tempts Jesus in the wilderness after Jesus has been there for 40 days.

### Matthew 4:3

Jesus was led up by the Spirit

The tempter

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Spirit led Jesus"

These words refer to the same being as "the devil" (verse 1). You may have to use the same word to translate both.

to be tempted by the devil

If you are the Son of God, command

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so the devil could tempt Jesus"

It is best to assume that Satan knew that Jesus is the Son of God. Possible meanings are 1) this is a temptation to do miracles for Jesus's own benefit. Alternate translation: "You are the Son of God, so you can command" or 2) this is a challenge or accusation. Alternate translation: "Prove that you are the Son of God by commanding"

### Matthew 4:2

he had fasted ... he was hungry

These refer to Jesus.

the Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

command these stones to become bread.

You could translate this with a direct quotation.

Alternate translation: "say to these stones, 'Become bread.'"

bread

Here "bread" refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "food"

Matthew 4:4

General Information:

Jesus rebukes Satan with a quotation from Deuteronomy.

It is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses wrote this in the scriptures long ago"

Man does not live on bread alone

This implies that there is something more important to life than food.

but by every word that comes out of the mouth of God

Here "word" and "mouth" refer to what God says. Alternate translation: "but by listening to everything that God says"

Matthew 4:5

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 4:6

General Information:

Satan quotes from the Psalms in order to tempt Jesus.

If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down

It is best to assume that Satan knew that Jesus is the Son of God. Possible meanings are 1) this is a

temptation to do a miracle for Jesus's own benefit. Alternate translation: "Since you are truly the Son of God, you can throw yourself down" or 2) this is a challenge or accusation. Alternate translation: "Prove that you are truly the Son of God by throwing yourself down"

the Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

throw yourself down

"let yourself fall to the ground" or "jump down"

for it is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for the writer wrote in the scriptures" or "for it says in the scriptures"

'He will command his angels to take care of you,' and

This can be translated with a direct quotation, and you can specify that it is God who will command. Alternate translation: "'God will say to his angels, 'Take care of him,'" and" or "'God will command his angels to take care of you,' and"

They will carry you

"The angels will hold you"

Matthew 4:7

General Information:

Jesus rebukes Satan with another quotation from Deuteronomy.

Again it is written

It is understood that Jesus is quoting scripture again. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Again, I will tell you what Moses wrote in the scriptures"

You must not test

Here "you" refers to anyone. Alternate translation: "One should not test" or "No person should test"

#### Matthew 4:8

Again, the devil

"Next, the devil"

#### Matthew 4:9

He said to him

"The devil said to Jesus"

All these things I will give you

"I will give you all these things." The tempter is emphasizing here that he will give "all these things," not just some of them.

fall down

"put your face near the ground." This was a common action to show that a person was worshiping.

#### Matthew 4:10

General Information:

Jesus rebukes Satan with another quotation from Deuteronomy.

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about how Satan tempted Jesus.

For it is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For Moses also wrote in the scriptures"

You will worship ... you will serve

Both instances of "you" are singular, a command to everyone who hears it.

#### Matthew 4:11

behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the important new information that follows.

#### Matthew 4:12

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story in which Matthew describes the beginning of Jesus's ministry in Galilee. These verses explain how Jesus came to be in Galilee.

Now

This word is used here to mark a change in the main story. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

John had been handed over

This can be stated in active form and the information omitted from the euphemism can be stated. Alternate translation: "the king had handed John over to the prison" or "the king had arrested John"

#### Matthew 4:13

in the territories of Zebulun and Naphtali

"Zebulun" and "Naphtali" are the names of the tribes that lived in these territories many years earlier before foreigners took control of the land of Israel.

#### Matthew 4:14

This happened

This refers to Jesus's going to live in Capernaum.

what was said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what God said"

#### Matthew 4:15

General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus's ministry in Galilee was a fulfillment of prophecy.

The land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali ... Galilee of the Gentiles!

These are two descriptions of the same territory.



toward the sea

This is the Sea of Galilee.

Matthew 4:16

General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus's ministry in Galilee was a fulfillment of prophecy.

The people who sat in darkness have seen a great light

Here "darkness" is a metaphor for not knowing the truth about God. And "light" is a metaphor for God's true message that saves people from their sin.

The people who sat

These words can be combined with the sentence beginning with "The land of Zebulun" (verse 15). Alternate translation: "In the territory of Zebulun and Naphtali ... where many Gentiles live, the people who sat"

who sat ... who sat

"who were living ... who were living." The word "sat" is an idiom for having lived for a long time in one place, not to sitting on the ground or a piece of furniture.

to those who sat in the region and shadow of death, upon them has a light arisen

This basically has the same meaning as the first part of the sentence. Here "those who sat in the region and shadow of death" is a metaphor. It represents those who did not know God. These people were in danger of dying and being separated from God forever.

Matthew 4:17

the kingdom of heaven is near

The phrase "the kingdom of heaven" refers to God ruling as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, include a word that means "heaven" in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 3:2]

Matthew 4:18

General Information:

This begins a new scene within the part of the story about Jesus's ministry in Galilee. Here he begins to gather men to be his disciples.

casting a net into the sea

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "throwing a net into the water to catch fish"

Matthew 4:19

Come, follow me

Jesus invites Simon and Andrew to follow him, live with him, and become his disciples. Alternate translation: "Be my disciples"

I will make you fishers of men

This metaphor means Simon and Andrew will teach people God's true message, so others will also follow Jesus. Alternate translation: "I will teach you to gather men to me like you used to gather fish"

Matthew 4:20

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 4:21

Connecting Statement:

Jesus calls more men to be his disciples.

He called them

"Jesus called John and James." This phrase also means that Jesus invited them to follow him, live with him, and become his disciples.

Matthew 4:22

they immediately left

"at that moment they left"

left the boat ... and followed him

It should be clear that they immediately put their nets down and left that place with Jesus. If your language requires you to tell whether they were leaving for the rest of the day or for a long time or for the rest of their lives, you should probably translate as they were leaving for the rest of their lives. It would be good to have a note saying that the Greek does not specify how long they would be gone.

Matthew 4:23

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about the beginning of Jesus's ministry in Galilee. The rest of this chapter summarizes what he did and how the people responded.

teaching in their synagogues

"teaching in the synagogues of the Galileans" or  
"teaching in the synagogues of those people"

preaching the gospel of the kingdom

Here "kingdom" refers to God's reign as king. Alternate translation: "preaching the good news that God will show himself as king"

every kind of disease and sickness

The words "disease" and "sickness" are closely related but should be translated as two different words if possible. "Disease" is what causes a person to be sick. "Sickness" is the physical weakness or affliction that results from having a disease.

Matthew 4:24

those who were possessed by demons

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom demons controlled"

the epileptics

The word "epileptic" refers to people who have epilepsy and so sometimes become unconscious and move uncontrollably.

Matthew 4:25

the Decapolis

This name means "the Ten Towns." This is the name of a region to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee.

5 <sup>1</sup>When Jesus saw the crowds, he went up on the mountain. When he had sat down, his disciples came to him.  
<sup>2</sup>He opened his mouth and taught them, saying,

3 "Blessed are the poor in spirit,  
for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

4 Blessed are those who mourn,  
for they will be comforted.

5 Blessed are the meek,  
for they will inherit the earth.

6 Blessed are those who hunger and thirst for righteousness,  
for they will be filled.

7 Blessed are the merciful,  
for they will obtain mercy.

8 Blessed are the pure in heart,  
for they will see God.

9 Blessed are the peacemakers,  
for they will be called sons of God.

10 Blessed are those who have been persecuted for righteousness' sake,  
for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.

<sup>11</sup>"Blessed are you when people insult you and persecute you and say all kinds of evil things against you falsely for my sake.<sup>12</sup>Rejoice and be glad, for great is your reward in heaven. For in this way people persecuted the prophets who lived before you.

<sup>13</sup>"You are the salt of the earth. But if the salt has lost its taste, how can it be made salty again? It is never again good for anything except to be thrown out and trampled under people's feet.<sup>14</sup>You are the light of the world. A city set on a hill cannot be hidden.

<sup>15</sup>Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket, but rather on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house.<sup>16</sup>Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and glorify your Father who is in heaven.

<sup>17</sup>"Do not think that I have come to destroy the law or the prophets. I have come not to destroy them, but to fulfill them.<sup>18</sup>For truly I say to you that until heaven and earth pass away, not the smallest letter or the smallest part of a letter will in any way pass away from the law, until all things have been accomplished.

<sup>19</sup>Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.<sup>20</sup>For I say to you that unless your righteousness exceeds the righteousness of the scribes and Pharisees, you will in no way enter the kingdom of heaven.

<sup>21</sup>"You have heard that it was said to them in ancient times, 'Do not murder,' and 'Whoever murders will be subject to judgment.'<sup>22</sup>But I say to you that everyone who is angry with his brother will be subject to judgment; and whoever says to his brother, 'You worthless person!' will be subject to the council; and whoever says, 'You fool!' will be subject to the fire of hell.

<sup>23</sup>Therefore if you are offering your gift at the altar and there remember that your brother has anything against you,<sup>24</sup>leave your gift there in front of the altar, and go on your way. First be reconciled with your brother, and then come and offer your gift.

<sup>25</sup>Agree with your adversary quickly while you are with him on the way to court, or your adversary may hand you over to the judge, and the judge may hand you over to the officer, and you may be thrown into prison.<sup>26</sup>Truly I say to you, you will never come out from there until you have paid the last penny you owe.

<sup>27</sup>"You have heard that it was said, 'Do not commit adultery.'<sup>28</sup>But I say to you that everyone who looks on a woman to lust after her has already committed adultery with her in his heart.

<sup>29</sup>If your right eye causes you to stumble, pluck it out and throw it away from you. For it is better for you that one of your members should perish than that your whole body should be thrown into hell.<sup>30</sup>If your right hand causes

you to stumble, cut it off and throw it away from you. For it is better for you that one of your members should perish than that your whole body should go into hell.

<sup>31</sup>It was also said, 'Whoever sends his wife away, let him give her a certificate of divorce.'<sup>32</sup>But I say to you that everyone who divorces his wife, except on account of sexual immorality, makes her an adulteress. Whoever marries her after she has been divorced commits adultery.

<sup>33</sup>"Again, you have heard that it was said to those in ancient times, 'Do not swear a false oath, but carry out your oaths to the Lord.'<sup>34</sup>But I say to you, swear not at all, neither by heaven, for it is the throne of God,<sup>35</sup> nor by the earth, for it is the footstool for his feet; nor by Jerusalem, for it is the city of the great King.

<sup>36</sup>Neither swear by your head, for you cannot make one hair white or black.<sup>37</sup>But let your speech be 'Yes, yes,' or 'No, no.' Anything that is more than this is from the evil one.

<sup>38</sup>"You have heard that it was said, 'An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth.'<sup>39</sup>But I say to you, do not resist one who is evil. Instead, whoever strikes you on your right cheek, turn to him the other also.

<sup>40</sup>If anyone wishes to bring a lawsuit against you and takes away your tunic, let that person also have your cloak.

<sup>41</sup>Whoever compels you to go one mile, go with him two.<sup>42</sup>Give to anyone who asks you, and do not turn away from anyone who wishes to borrow from you.

<sup>43</sup>"You have heard that it was said, 'You must love your neighbor and hate your enemy.'<sup>44</sup>But I say to you, love your enemies and pray for those who persecute you,<sup>45</sup> so that you may be sons of your Father who is in heaven. For he makes his sun to rise on the evil and the good, and sends rain on the just and the unjust.

<sup>46</sup>For if you love those who love you, what reward do you get? Do not even the tax collectors do the same thing?<sup>47</sup>If you greet only your brothers, what do you do more than others? Do not even the Gentiles do the same thing?

<sup>48</sup>Therefore you must be perfect, as your heavenly Father is perfect.

---

<sup>1</sup>The best ancient copies do not have Bless those who curse you, do good to those who hate you .

---

## Matthew 5 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Many people call the words in Matthew 5-7 the Sermon on the Mount. This is one long lesson that Jesus taught. Bibles divide this lesson into three chapters, but this can sometimes confuse the reader. If your translation divides the text into sections, be sure that the reader understands that the whole sermon is one large section.

Matthew 5:3-10, known as The Beatitudes or as The Blessings, has been set apart by being set farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text, with each line beginning with the word "blessed." This way of placing the words on the page highlights the poetic form of this teaching.

Jesus spoke about many different subjects in this sermon, so you may wish to help the reader by putting an empty line into the text whenever Jesus changed the subject.

### Special concepts in this chapter

"His disciples"

It is possible to refer to anyone who followed Jesus as a follower or disciple. Jesus selected twelve of his followers to become his closest disciples, "the twelve disciples." They would later become known as the apostles.

### Links:

- [Matthew 5:1 Notes](#)

## Matthew 5:1

Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story in which Jesus begins to teach his disciples. This part continues through the end of chapter 7 and is frequently called the Sermon on the Mount.

## Matthew 5:2

He opened his mouth

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "Jesus began to speak"

taught them

The word "them" refers to his disciples.

## Matthew 5:3

General Information:

Here, Jesus begins to describe the characteristics of people who are blessed.

the poor in spirit

This means people who are humble. Alternate translation: "those who know they need God"

for theirs is the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "for God in heaven will be their king"

## Matthew 5:4

those who mourn

Possible reasons they are sad are 1) the sinfulness of the world or 2) their own sins or 3) the death of someone. Do not specify the reason for mourning unless your language requires it.

they will be comforted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will comfort them"

## Matthew 5:5

the meek

"the gentle" or "those who do not rely on their own power"

they will inherit the earth

"God will give them the entire earth"

## Matthew 5:6

those who hunger and thirst for righteousness

This metaphor describes people who strongly desire to do what is right. Alternate translation: "those who desire to live right as much as they desire food and drink"

they will be filled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will fill them" or "God will satisfy them"

## Matthew 5:7

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Matthew 5:8

the pure in heart

"people whose hearts are pure." Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's inner being or intentions. Alternate translation: "those who only want to serve God"

they will see God

This means they will be able to live in God's presence. Alternate translation: "God will allow them to live with him"

## Matthew 5:9

the peacemakers

These are the people who help others to have peace with one another.

for they will be called sons of God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for God will call them his children" or "they will be children of God"

sons of God

It is best to translate "sons" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human son or child.

Matthew 5:10

those who have been persecuted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those people whom others treat unfairly"

for righteousness' sake

"because they do what God wants them to do"

theirs is the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 5:3]

Matthew 5:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes describing the characteristics of people who are blessed.

Blessed are you

The word "you" is plural.

say all kinds of evil things against you falsely

"say all kinds of evil lies about you" or "say bad things about you that are not true"

for my sake

"because you follow me" or because you believe in me"

Matthew 5:12

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 5:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about how his disciples are like salt and light.

You are the salt of the earth

Possible meanings are 1) just as salt makes food good, disciples of Jesus influence the people of the world so that they will be good. Alternate translation: "You are like salt for the people of the world" or 2) just as salt preserves food, disciples of Jesus keep people from becoming totally corrupt. Alternate translation: "As salt is for food, you are for the world"

if the salt has lost its taste

Possible meanings are 1) "if the salt has lost its power to do things that salt does" or 2) "if the salt has lost its flavor."

how can it be made salty again?

"how can it be made useful again?" Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples. Alternate translation: "there is no way for it to become useful again."

except to be thrown out and trampled under people's feet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "except for people to throw it out into the road and walk on it"

Matthew 5:14

You are the light of the world

This means Jesus's followers bring the message of God's truth to all the people who do not know God. Alternate translation: "You are like a light for the people of the world"

A city set on a hill cannot be hidden

At night when it is dark, people can see the city lights shining. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "During the night, no one can hide the lights that shine from a city on a hill" or "Everyone sees the lights of a city on a hill"

## Matthew 5:15

Neither do people light a lamp

"People do not light a lamp"

put it under a basket

"place the lamp under a basket." This is saying it is foolish to create light only to hide it so people do not see the light of the lamp.

## Matthew 5:16

Let your light shine before people

This means a disciple of Jesus should live in such a way that others can learn about God's truth. Alternate translation: "Let your lives be like a light that shines before people"

your Father who is in heaven

It is best to translate "Father" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human father.

## Matthew 5:17

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law.

the prophets

This refers to what the prophets wrote in the scriptures.

## Matthew 5:18

truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

until heaven and earth pass away

Here "heaven" and "earth" refer to the entire universe. Alternate translation: "as long as the universe lasts"

all things have been accomplished

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all things have happened" or "God causes all things to happen"

all things

The phrase "all things" refers to everything in the law. Alternate translation: "everything in the law" or "all that is written in the law"

## Matthew 5:19

whoever breaks

Possible meanings are 1) "whoever disobeys" or 2) "whoever ignores."

the least one of these commandments and teaches

"any of these commandments, even the least important one, and teaches"

whoever ... teaches others to do so will be called

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "if anyone ... teaches others to do so, God will call that person"

least in the kingdom of heaven

The phrase "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is found only in Matthew. If possible use "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "the least important in his heavenly kingdom" or "the least important under the rule of our God in heaven"

keeps them and teaches them

"obeys all these commandments and teaches others to do the same"

great

most important

## Matthew 5:20

For I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

you ... your ... you

These are plural.

that unless your righteousness exceeds ... Pharisees, you will in no way enter

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "that your righteousness must exceed ... Pharisees in order to enter"

Matthew 5:21

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" is plural in "you have heard." The understood "you" is singular in "Do not murder," but in some languages it may need to be translated as plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about murder and anger.

it was said to them in ancient times

This can be expressed with an active verb. Alternate translation: "God said to those who lived long ago" or "Moses said to your ancestors long ago"

will be subject to judgment

Possible meanings are 1) "will have to go to the judge" or 2) "will be in danger of punishment."

Matthew 5:22

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" is plural in "I say to you."

But I say

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is just as important as the original commands. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis.

brother

This refers to a fellow believer, not to a literal brother or a neighbor.

worthless person ... fool

Both of these insults represent a person who cannot think correctly. "Worthless person" is close to "brainless," where "fool" adds the idea of disobedience to God.

council

This was likely a local council, not the main Sanhedrin in Jerusalem.

Matthew 5:23

you

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

offering your gift

"giving your gift" or "bringing your gift"

at the altar

It is implied that this is God's altar at the temple in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "to God at the altar in the temple"

there remember

"while you are standing at the altar you remember"

your brother has anything against you

"another person is angry with you because of something you did"

Matthew 5:24

First be reconciled with your brother

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "First make peace with the person"



Matthew 5:25

Agree with your

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

your adversary

This is a person who takes someone to court for doing something wrong to accuse him before a judge.

may hand you over to the judge

Here "hand you over" means to give someone into the control of someone else. Alternate translation: "will let the judge deal with you"

the judge may hand you over to the officer

Here "hand you over" means to give someone into the control of someone else. Alternate translation: "the judge will give you over to the officer"

officer

a person who has authority to carry out the decisions of a judge

you may be thrown into prison

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the officer might put you in prison"

Matthew 5:26

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

from there

"from prison"

Matthew 5:27

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" is plural in "you have heard." The understood "you" is

singular in "Do not commit adultery," but in some languages it may need to be translated as plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about adultery and lust.

that it was said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God said" or "that Moses said"

commit

This word means to act out or do something.

Matthew 5:28

But I say

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is just as important as the original commands. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis. See how you translated this in Matthew 5:22.

everyone who looks on a woman to lust after her has already committed adultery with her in his heart

This metaphor indicates that a man who lusts after a woman is as guilty of adultery as a man who actually commits the act of adultery.

to lust after her

"and lusts after her" or "and desires to sleep with her"

in his heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's thoughts. Alternate translation: "in his mind" or "in his thoughts"

Matthew 5:29

If your right eye causes you to stumble, pluck it out and throw it away from you

The irony here is that people use their eyes in part to keep from stumbling. Here "eye" is a metonym for what a person chooses to look at or learn about, "stumble" is a metaphor for "sin," and "pluck it out and throw it away from you" is a hyperbolic metaphor for doing

everything possible to avoid sinning. Alternate translation: "if what you are interested in causes you to want to sin, do everything you can to stay away from it"

If your

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All instances of "you" and "your" are singular, but in some languages they may need to be translated as plural.

right eye

This refers to the eye on the right-hand side of the face. The Jews thought of the right hand as more important than the left, so the phrase "right eye" was a metaphor for the most important eye. You may need to translate "right" as "better" or "stronger."

pluck it out

This is an exaggerated command for a person to do whatever he needs to do to stop sinning. It means "forcefully remove it" or "destroy it." If the right eye is not specifically mentioned, you may need to translate this "destroy your eyes." If eyes have been mentioned, you may need to translate this "destroy them."

throw it away from you

"get rid of it"

one of your members should perish

"you should lose one part of your body"

than that your whole body should be thrown into hell

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "than for God to throw your whole body into hell"

Matthew 5:30

If your right hand causes

In this metonymy, the hand stands for the actions of the whole person.

right hand

This means the most important hand, as opposed to the left hand. You may need to translate "right" as "better" or "stronger."

cut it off

This is an exaggerated command for a person to do whatever he needs to do to stop sinning.

Matthew 5:31

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about divorce.

It was also said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God also said" or "Moses also said"

sends his wife away

This is a euphemism for "divorces his wife."

let him give

"he must give"

Matthew 5:32

But I say

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is just as important as the original commands. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis. See how you translated this in Matthew 5:22.

makes her an adulteress

It is the man who divorces the woman improperly who "causes her to commit adultery." In many cultures it would be normal for her to remarry, but if the divorce is improper, such a remarriage is adultery.

her after she has been divorced

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "her after her husband has divorced her" or "the divorced woman"

## Matthew 5:33

### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" is plural in "you have heard." The "you" and "your" are singular in "Do not swear" and "carry out your oaths," but in some languages they may need to be translated as plural.

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about swearing oaths.

Again, you

"Also, you" or "Here is another example. You"

it was said to those in ancient times

This can be expressed with an active verb. Alternate translation: "God said to those who lived long ago" or "Moses said to your ancestors long ago"

Do not swear a false oath, but carry out your oaths to the Lord.

"Do not swear that you will do something and then not do it. Instead do whatever you have sworn to the Lord that you will do"

## Matthew 5:34

But I say

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is equally important to the original commands from God. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis. See how you translated this in Matthew 5:22.

swear not at all

"do not swear at all" or "do not swear by anything"

it is the throne of God

Because God reigns from heaven, Jesus speaks of heaven as if it were a throne. Alternate translation: "it is from here that God rules"

## Matthew 5:35

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes his words from verse 34, telling the people not to swear.

nor by the earth ... city of the great King

Here Jesus means that when people make a promise or when they say that something is true, they must not swear by anything. Some people were teaching that if a person swears by God that he will do something, then he must do it, but if he swears by something else, such as by heaven or earth, then it is less offensive if he does not do what he swore to do. Jesus says that swearing by heaven or earth or Jerusalem is just as serious as swearing by God because those things all belong to God.

it is the footstool for his feet

This metaphor means the earth also belongs to God. Alternate translation: "it is like a footstool where a king rests his feet"

for it is the city of the great King

"for it is the city that belongs to God, the great King"

## Matthew 5:36

### General Information:

Previously Jesus told his hearers that God's throne, footstool, and earthly home are not theirs to swear by. Here he says that they may not swear even by their own heads.

your ... you

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of these words are singular, but you may have to translate them as plural.

swear

This refers to taking an oath. See how you translated this in Matthew 5:34.

## Matthew 5:37

let your speech be 'Yes, yes,' or 'No, no.'

"if you mean 'yes,' say 'yes,' and if you mean 'no,' say 'no.'"

## Matthew 5:38

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" in "you have heard" is plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about retaliating against an enemy.

that it was said

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Matthew 5:27]

eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth

The law of Moses allowed a person to harm a person in the same way he had harmed him, but he could not harm him worse.

## Matthew 5:39

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" in "I say to you" is plural. The "you" in "whoever strikes you" and the understood "you" in "turn to him" are both singular, but in some languages they may need to be translated as plural.

But I say

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is just as important as the original commands. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis.

one who is evil

"an evil person" or "someone who harms you"

strikes ... your right cheek

To strike the side of a man's face was an insult in Jesus's culture. As with the eye and the hand, the right cheek is the more important one, and striking that cheek was a terrible insult.

strikes

hits with the back of an open hand

turn to him the other also

"let him hit your other cheek also"

## Matthew 5:40

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are singular. In some languages they may need to be translated as plural.

tunic ... cloak

The "tunic" was worn close to the body, like a heavy shirt or a sweater. The "cloak," the more valuable of the two, was worn over the "tunic" for warmth and also used as a blanket for warmth at night.

let that person also have

"give also to that person"

## Matthew 5:41

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The word "you" is singular, as is the understood "you" in the command "go." In some languages these may need to be translated as plural.

Whoever

"Anyone who." The context implies that he is speaking about a Roman soldier.

one mile

This is one thousand paces, which is the distance a Roman soldier could legally force someone to carry

something for him. If "mile" is confusing, it can be translated as "one kilometer" or "a distance."

with him

This refers to the one who compels you to go.

go with him two

"go the mile he forces you to go, and then go another mile." If "mile" is confusing, you can translate it as "two kilometers" or "twice as far."

Matthew 5:42

do not turn away from

"do not refuse to lend to." This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "lend to"

Matthew 5:43

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" in "you have heard" is plural. The "you" and "your" are singular in "You must love your neighbor and hate your enemy," but in some languages they may need to be translated as plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about loving enemies.

that it was said

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Matthew 5:27]

your neighbor

Here the word "neighbor" does not refer to a specific neighbor, but to any members of one's community or people group. These are people whom one usually desires to treat kindly or at least believes he ought to treat kindly. Alternate translation: "your countrymen" or "those who belong to your people group"

Matthew 5:44

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All instances of "you" and "your" are plural.

But I say

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is just as important as the original commands. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis. See how you translated this in Matthew 5:22.

I say to you ... your enemies ... pray ... persecute you

All instances of "you" and "your," as well as the command to pray, are plural.

Matthew 5:45

you may be sons of your Father

It is best to translate "sons" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to human sons or children.

Father

This is an important title for God.

Matthew 5:46

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All instances of "you" and "your" are plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes teaching about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. This section began in Matthew 5:17.

what reward do you get?

Jesus uses this question to teach the people that loving those who love them is not something special that God will reward them for. This rhetorical question can be

translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "you will get no reward."

Do not even the tax collectors do the same thing?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Even the tax collectors do the same thing."

Matthew 5:47

what do you do more than others?

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "you do nothing more than others."

greet

This is a general term for showing a desire for the well-being of the hearer.

Do not even the Gentiles do the same thing?

This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Even the Gentiles do the same thing."

Matthew 5:48

Father

This is an important title for God.

---

6<sup>1</sup>"Watch out that you do not do your acts of righteousness before people to be seen by them, or else you will have no reward from your Father who is in heaven.<sup>2</sup>So when you give alms, do not sound a trumpet before yourself as the hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, so that they may be glorified by people. Truly I say to you, they have received their reward in full.

<sup>3</sup>But when you give alms, do not let your left hand know what your right hand is doing<sup>4</sup>so that your alms may be given in secret. Then your Father who sees in secret will reward you.

<sup>5</sup>"When you pray, do not be like the hypocrites, for they love to stand and pray in the synagogues and on the street corners so that they may be seen by people. Truly I say to you, they have received their reward.<sup>6</sup>But you, when you pray, enter your inner chamber. Shut the door and pray to your Father, who is in secret. Then your Father who sees in secret will reward you.<sup>7</sup>When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the pagans do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

<sup>8</sup>Therefore, do not be like them, for your Father knows what things you need before you ask him.

<sup>9</sup>Therefore pray like this:

'Our Father in heaven,  
may your name be honored as holy.

<sup>10</sup> May your kingdom come.

May your will be done  
on earth as it is in heaven.

<sup>11</sup> Give us today our daily bread.

<sup>12</sup> Forgive us our debts,  
as we also have forgiven our debtors.

<sup>13</sup> Do not bring us into temptation,  
but deliver us from the evil one.'<sup>1</sup>

<sup>14</sup>For if you forgive people their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you.<sup>15</sup>But if you do not forgive their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.

<sup>16</sup>"When you fast, do not have a sad face as the hypocrites do, for they disfigure their faces so that they may appear to people to be fasting. Truly I say to you, they have received their reward in full.<sup>17</sup>But you, when you fast, anoint your head and wash your face<sup>18</sup>so that you may not appear to people to be fasting, but only to your Father who is in secret; and your Father who sees in secret will reward you.

<sup>19</sup>"Do not store up for yourselves treasures on the earth, where moth and rust destroy, and where thieves break in and steal.<sup>20</sup>Instead, store up for yourselves treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor rust destroys, and where thieves do not break in and steal.<sup>21</sup>For where your treasure is, there will your heart be also.

<sup>22</sup>The eye is the lamp of the body. Therefore, if your eye is good, your whole body is filled with light.<sup>23</sup>But if your eye is bad, your whole body is full of darkness. Therefore, if the light that is in you is actually darkness, how great is that darkness!<sup>24</sup>No one can serve two masters, for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will be devoted to one and despise the other. You cannot serve God and wealth.

<sup>25</sup>Therefore I say to you, do not worry about your life, what you will eat or what you will drink; or about your body, what you will wear. For is not life more than food, and the body more than clothes?<sup>26</sup>Look at the birds in the sky. They do not sow or reap or gather into barns, but your heavenly Father feeds them. Are you not more valuable than they are?

<sup>27</sup>Which one of you by being anxious can add one cubit to his lifespan?<sup>28</sup>Why are you anxious about clothing? Think about the lilies in the fields, how they grow. They do not labor, and they do not spin cloth.<sup>29</sup>Yet I say to you, even Solomon in all his glory was not clothed like one of these.

<sup>30</sup>If God so clothes the grass in the fields, which exists today and tomorrow is thrown into the oven, how much more will he clothe you, you of little faith?<sup>31</sup>Therefore do not be anxious and say, 'What will we eat?' or 'What will we drink?' or 'What clothes will we wear?'

<sup>32</sup>For the Gentiles search for these things, and your heavenly Father knows that you need them.<sup>33</sup>But seek first his kingdom and his righteousness, and all these things will be given to you.<sup>34</sup>Therefore, do not be anxious for tomorrow, for tomorrow will be anxious for itself. Each day has enough evil of its own.

# Matthew 6 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Matthew 6 continues Jesus's extended teaching known as "The Sermon on the Mount."

You may wish to set apart the prayer in 6:9-11 by placing it farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text.

Jesus spoke about many different subjects in this sermon, so you may wish to help the reader by putting an empty line into the text whenever Jesus changed the subject.

## Links:

- [Matthew 6:1 Notes](#)

---

### Matthew 6:1

#### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are plural.

#### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples in his Sermon on the Mount, which began in Matthew 5:3. In this section, Jesus addresses the "acts of righteousness" of alms, prayer, and fasting.

#### Watch out

This is a way to warn people to be careful. Alternate translation: "Be careful" or "Beware"

before people to be seen by them

It is implied that those who see the person will honor him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "in front of people just so that they can see you and give you honor for what you have done"

#### Father

This is an important title for God.

### Matthew 6:2

do not sound a trumpet before yourself

This metaphor means to do something that purposefully gets people's attention. Alternate translation: "do not draw attention to yourself like someone who plays a loud trumpet in a crowd"

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

### Matthew 6:3

#### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are plural.

#### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples about alms.

do not let your left hand know what your right hand is doing

This is a metaphor for total secrecy. Just as hands usually work together and each can be said to "know" what the other is doing at all times, you should not let even those closest to you know when you are giving to the poor.



#### Matthew 6:4

your alms may be given in secret

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you can give to the poor without other people knowing"

#### Matthew 6:5

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" in verses 5 and 7 are plural; in verse 6 they are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about prayer.

so that they may be seen by people

It is implied that those who see them will give them honor. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that people will see them and give them honor"

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

#### Matthew 6:6

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" in verses 5 and 7 are plural; in verse 6 they are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

enter your inner chamber. Shut the door

"go to a private place" or "go where you can be alone"

Father, who is in secret

Possible meanings are 1) no one can see God. Alternate translation: "Father, who is invisible" or 2) God is in that private place with the praying person. Alternate translation: "Father, who is with you in private"

Father

This is an important title for God.

your Father who sees in secret

"your Father will see what you do in private and"

#### Matthew 6:7

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" in verses 5 and 7 are plural; in verse 6 they are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

do not make useless repetitions

Possible meanings are 1) the repetitions are useless. Alternate translation: "do not keep uselessly saying things over and over again" or 2) the words or sentences are meaningless. Alternate translation: "do not keep repeating meaningless words"

they will be heard

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "their false gods will hear them"

#### Matthew 6:8

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about how they as individuals should pray. The words "you" and "your" are plural in the first sentence. Within the prayer, the words "you" and "your" are singular and refer to God, "Our Father in heaven."

Father

This is an important title for God.

you ask him

See how you translated "ask" in Matthew 5:42.

#### Matthew 6:9

Our Father in heaven

This is the beginning of the prayer and how Jesus teaches the people to address God.

may your name be honored as holy

Here "your name" refers to God himself. This can also be expressed with an active verb. Alternate translation: "may people honor you as holy" or "may people honor you because you are holy"

may your name be honored as holy

By saying this, people show that they want to honor God as holy. Alternate translation: "help us to honor your name as holy" or "we want to honor you as holy"

#### Matthew 6:10

May your kingdom come

Here "kingdom" refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "May you rule over everyone and everything completely"

May your will be done on earth as it is in heaven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May everything on earth happen in accordance with your will, just as everything in heaven does"

#### Matthew 6:11

General Information:

This is part of a prayer that Jesus was teaching the people. All instances of "we," "us," and "our" refer only to those who would pray this prayer. Those words do not also refer to God, to whom they would be praying.

daily bread

Here "bread" refers to food in general.

#### Matthew 6:12

debts

A debt is what one person owes another. This is a metaphor for sins.

our debtors

A debtor is a person who owes a debt to another person. This is a metaphor for those who have sinned against us.

#### Matthew 6:13

Do not bring us into temptation

The word "temptation," an abstract noun, can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "Do not let anything tempt us" or "Do not let anything cause us to desire to sin"

#### Matthew 6:14

General Information:

All instances of "you" and "your" are plural. However, Jesus is telling his hearers what will happen to them as individuals if each person does not forgive others.

their trespasses

The abstract noun "trespasses" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "when they trespass against you"

Father

This is an important title for God.

#### Matthew 6:15

their trespasses ... your trespasses

The abstract noun "trespasses" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "them when they trespass against you ... you when you trespass against God" or "them when they do things that harm you ... you when you do things that make your Father angry"

#### Matthew 6:16

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of "you" are plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about fasting.

they disfigure their faces

The hypocrites would not wash their faces and would not comb their hair. They did this purposely to draw attention to themselves so that people would see them and give them honor for fasting.

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

Matthew 6:17

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are singular, though in some languages they may also need to be translated as plural.

anoint your head

"put oil in your hair" or "groom your hair." To "anoint" the head here is to take normal care of one's hair. It has nothing to do with "Christ" meaning "anointed one." Jesus means that people should look the same whether they are fasting or not.

Matthew 6:18

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are singular, though in some languages they may also need to be translated as plural.

Father who is in secret

Possible meanings are 1) no one can see God. Alternate translation: "Father, who is invisible" or 2) God is with that person who fasts secretly. Alternate translation: "Father, who is with you in private" See how you translated this in Matthew 6:6.

Father

This is an important title for God.

who sees in secret

"who sees what you do in private." See how you translated this in Matthew 6:6.

Matthew 6:19

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about money and possessions.

treasures

riches, the things to which a person gives the most value

where moth and rust destroy

"where moth and rust ruin treasures"

moth

a small, flying insect that destroys cloth

rust

a brown substance that forms on metals

Matthew 6:20

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do.

store up for yourselves treasures in heaven

This is a metaphor that means do good things on earth so God will reward you in heaven.

Matthew 6:21

General Information:

All occurrences of "your" are singular, though in some languages they may also need to be translated in plural.

there will your heart be also

Here "heart" means a person's thoughts and interests.

Matthew 6:22

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of "you" and "your" are all singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

The eye is the lamp of the body

This is a metaphor. Possible meanings are 1) the eye is like a lamp because it enables a person to see things, or 2) the eye is like a lamp shining on a person's body because it shows what the person is really like.

Alternate translation: "A person's eyes are like a lamp for his body"

if your eye is good, your whole body is filled with light

Possible meanings are 1) "if your eye is good, it fills your body with light" or 2) "if your eye is good, it shows that your body is filled with light."

if your eye is good

Possible meanings are "if your eye is noble" or "if your eye sees clearly." Jesus speaks of the eye to talk about what a person thinks about and wants. Possible meanings of the metaphor are 1) "if you are generous" or 2) "if you look at and want at what is good"

your whole body is filled with light

Possible meanings are 1) "you are full of righteousness" or 2) "you understand what is truly good"

eye is

You may have to translate this as plural, "eyes are."

Matthew 6:23

if your eye is bad, your whole body is full of darkness

Possible meanings are 1) "if your eye is bad, it fills your body with darkness" or 2) "if your eye is bad, it shows that your body is full of darkness."

if your eye is bad

Possible meanings are "if your eye is evil" or "if your eye does not see clearly." Jesus speaks of the eye to talk about what a person thinks about and wants. Possible meanings of the metaphor are 1) "if you are greedy," or 2) "if you do not look at and want what is right."

if your eye is bad

This does not refer to magic. Jewish people often used this as a metaphor for someone who is greedy.

your whole body is full of darkness

Possible meanings are "you are full of evil" or 2) "you will understand nothing about what is right."

if the light that is in you is actually darkness, how great is that darkness!

"if that which is supposed to cause light in your body causes darkness, then your body is in complete darkness"

Matthew 6:24

for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will be devoted to one and despise the other

Both of these phrases mean basically the same thing. They emphasize that a person cannot love and be devoted both to God and money at the same time.

You cannot serve God and wealth

"You cannot love God and money at the same time"

Matthew 6:25

General Information:

Here the instances of "you" and "your" are all plural.

I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

to you

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do.

is not life more than food, and the body more than clothes?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "obviously life is more than what you eat, and your body is more than what you wear." or "clearly there are things in life that are more important than food, and there are things concerning the body that are more important than clothes."

Matthew 6:26

barns

places to store crops

Father

This is an important title for God.

Are you not more valuable than they are?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "Obviously you are more valuable than birds."

Matthew 6:27

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All instances of "you" and "your" are plural.

Which one of you by being anxious can add one cubit to his lifespan?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Here to "add one cubit to his lifespan" is a metaphor for adding time to how long a person will live. Alternate translation: "None of you can, just by worrying, add years to your life. You cannot add even one minute to your life! So you should not worry about things you need."

one cubit

A cubit, a measure of a little less than half a meter, is used here as a metaphor for a short period of time.

Matthew 6:28

Why are you anxious about clothing?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "You should not be worried about what you will wear."

Think about

"Consider"

lilies ... They do not labor, and they do not spin cloth

Jesus speaks about the lilies as if they were people who wore clothes. The lilies being clothed is a metaphor for the plants having beautiful and colorful flowers.

lilies

A lily is a kind of wild flower.

Matthew 6:29

even Solomon ... was not clothed like one of these

Jesus speaks about the lilies as if they were people who wore clothes. The lilies being clothed is a metaphor for the plants having beautiful and colorful flowers.

I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

was not clothed like one of these

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "did not wear clothes that are as beautiful as these lilies"

Matthew 6:30

so clothes the grass in the fields

Jesus continues to speak about the lilies as if they were people who wore clothes. The lilies being clothed is a metaphor for the plants having beautiful and colorful flowers.

grass

If your language has a general word that can refer both to "grass" and to the word you used for "lilies" in the previous verse, you can use it here.

is thrown into the oven

The Jews at that time used grass in their fires to cook their food. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone throws it into a fire" or "someone burns it"

how much more will he clothe you ... faith?

Jesus uses this question to teach the people that God will provide what they need. Alternate translation: "he will certainly clothe you ... faith."

you of little faith

"you who have such little faith." Jesus addresses the people this way because their anxiety about clothing shows they have little faith in God.

#### Matthew 6:31

Therefore

"Because of all of this,"

What clothes will we wear

In this sentence, "clothes" is a synecdoche for material possessions. Alternate translation: "What possessions will we have"

#### Matthew 6:32

For the Gentiles search for these things

"For the Gentiles are concerned about what they will eat, drink, and wear"

your heavenly Father knows that you need them

Jesus is implying that God will make sure their basic needs are met.

Father

This is an important title for God.

---

#### Matthew 6:33

seek first his kingdom and his righteousness

Here "kingdom" refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "concern yourselves first with serving God, who is your king, and doing what is right"

all these things will be given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will provide all these things for you"

#### Matthew 6:34

Therefore

"Because of all this"

tomorrow will be anxious for itself

Jesus speaks of "tomorrow" as if it were a person who could worry. Jesus means that a person will have enough to worry about when the next day comes.

7 <sup>1</sup>"Do not judge, and you will not be judged.<sup>2</sup>For with the judgment you judge, you will be judged, and with the measure that you measure, it will be measured out to you.

<sup>3</sup>Why do you look at the tiny piece of straw that is in your brother's eye, but you do not take notice of the log that is in your own eye?<sup>4</sup>How can you say to your brother, 'Let me take out the piece of straw that is in your eye,' while the log is in your own eye?<sup>5</sup>You hypocrite! First take the log out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly to take out the piece of straw that is in your brother's eye.

<sup>6</sup>Do not give what is holy to the dogs, and do not throw your pearls in front of the pigs. Otherwise they may trample them underfoot, and then turn and tear you to pieces.

<sup>7</sup>"Ask, and it will be given to you. Seek, and you will find. Knock, and it will be opened to you.<sup>8</sup>For everyone who asks, receives; everyone who seeks, finds; and to the person who knocks, it will be opened.<sup>9</sup>Or which one of you, if his son asks for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?<sup>10</sup>Or if he asks for a fish, will give him a snake?

<sup>11</sup>Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father in heaven give good things to those who ask him?<sup>12</sup>Therefore, whatever things you want people to do to you, you should also do to them, for this is the law and the prophets.

<sup>13</sup>"Enter through the narrow gate. For wide is the gate and broad is the way that leads to destruction, and there are many people who go through it.<sup>14</sup>But the gate is narrow and the way is difficult that leads to life, and there are few who find it.

<sup>15</sup>"Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing but are truly ravenous wolves.<sup>16</sup>By their fruits you will know them. Do people gather grapes from a thornbush or figs from thistles?<sup>17</sup>In the same way, every good tree produces good fruit, but the bad tree produces bad fruit.

<sup>18</sup>A good tree cannot produce bad fruit, nor can a bad tree produce good fruit.<sup>19</sup>Every tree that does not produce good fruit is chopped down and thrown into the fire.<sup>20</sup>So then, you will recognize them by their fruits.

<sup>21</sup>Not everyone who says to me, 'Lord, Lord,' will enter into the kingdom of heaven, but only those who do the will of my Father who is in heaven.<sup>22</sup>Many people will say to me in that day, 'Lord, Lord, did we not prophesy in your name, in your name drive out demons, and in your name do many miracles?'<sup>23</sup>Then will I openly declare to them, 'I never knew you! Get away from me, you who practice lawlessness!'

<sup>24</sup>"Therefore, everyone who hears my words and obeys them will be like a wise man who built his house upon a rock.<sup>25</sup>The rain came down, the floods came, and the winds blew and beat upon that house, but it did not fall down, for it was founded on the rock.

<sup>26</sup>But everyone who hears my words and does not obey them will be like a foolish man who built his house upon the sand.<sup>27</sup>The rain came down, the floods came, and the winds blew and struck that house, and it fell, and its destruction was complete."

<sup>28</sup>It came about that when Jesus finished speaking these words, the crowds were astonished by his teaching,<sup>29</sup> for he taught them as one who had authority, and not as their scribes.

---

## Matthew 7 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Jesus spoke about many different subjects in this sermon, so you may wish to help the reader by putting an empty line into the text whenever Jesus changed the subject.

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Matthew 5-7

Many people call the words in Matthew 5-7 the Sermon on the Mount. This is one long lesson that Jesus taught. Bibles divide this lesson into three chapters, but this can sometimes confuse the reader. If your translation divides the text into sections, be sure that the reader understands that the whole sermon is one large section.

"By their fruits you will know them"

Fruit is a common image in the scriptures. It is used to describe the results of either good or bad actions. In this chapter, good fruit is the result of living as God commands. (See: fruit)

## Links:

- [Matthew 7:1 Notes](#)

### Matthew 7:1

#### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The instances of "you" and the commands are plural.

#### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples in his Sermon on the Mount, which began in Matthew 5:3.

#### Do not judge

It is implied here that "judge" has the strong meaning of "condemn harshly" or "declare guilty." Alternate translation: "Do not condemn people harshly"

you will not be judged

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will not condemn you harshly"

### Matthew 7:2

#### For

Be sure the reader understands the statement in 7:2 is based on what Jesus said in 7:1.

with the judgment you judge, you will be judged

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will condemn you in the same way you condemn others"

#### measure

Possible meanings are 1) this is the amount of punishment given or 2) this is the standard used for judgment.

it will be measured out to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will measure it out to you"

### Matthew 7:3

#### General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of "you" and "your" are all singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

Why do you look ... brother's eye, but you do not take notice of the log that is in your own eye?

Jesus uses this question to rebuke the people for paying attention to other people's sins and ignoring their own. Alternate translation: "You look ... brother's eye, but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye." or "Do not look ... brother's eye and ignore the log that is in your own eye."

the tiny piece of straw that is in your brother's eye

This is a metaphor that refers to the less important faults of a fellow believer.



tiny piece of straw

"speck" or "splinter" or "bit of dust." Use a word for the smallest thing that commonly falls into a person's eyes.

brother

All occurrences of "brother" in 7:3-5 refer to a fellow believer, not to a literal brother or a neighbor.

the log that is in your own eye

This is a metaphor for a person's most important faults. A log could not literally go into a person's eye. Jesus is exaggerating to emphasize that a person should pay attention to his own more important faults before he deals with another person's less important faults.

log

the largest part of a tree that someone has cut down

Matthew 7:4

How can you say ... your own eye?

Jesus asks this question to challenge the people to pay attention to their own sins before they pay attention to another person's sins. Alternate translation: "You should not say ... your own eye."

Matthew 7:5

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 7:6

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of "you" and "your" are all plural.

dogs ... pigs

Jews considered these animals dirty, and God told the Jews not to eat them. They are metaphors for wicked people who do not value holy things. It would be best to translate these words literally.

pearls

These are similar to round, valuable stones or beads. They are a metaphor for the knowledge of God or precious things in general.

they may trample

"the pigs may trample"

then turn and tear

"the dogs will then turn and tear"

Matthew 7:7

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of "you" and "your" are all plural.

Ask ... Seek ... Knock

These are metaphors for praying to God. The verb form shows that we are to keep praying until he answers. If your language has a form for continuing to do something over and over, use it here.

Ask

request things from someone, in this case God. See how you translated this word in Matthew 5:42.

it will be given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will give you what you need"

Seek

look for someone, in this case God

Knock

To knock on a door was a polite way to request that the person inside the house or room open the door. If knocking on a door is impolite or not done in your culture, use the word that describes how people politely ask for doors to be opened. Alternate translation: "Tell God you want him to open the door"

it will be opened to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will open it for you"

Matthew 7:8

who ... asks

See how you translated "ask" in Matthew 5:42.

Matthew 7:9

Or which one of you ... a stone?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "There is not one person among you ... a stone."

son asks

See how you translated "asks" in Matthew 5:42.

a loaf of bread

This refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "some food"

stone

This noun should be translated literally.

Matthew 7:10

Or if he asks for a fish, will give him a snake?

Jesus asks another question to teach the people. It is understood that Jesus is still referring to a man and his son. Alternate translation: "And there is not one person among you, if his son asks for a fish, will give him a snake."

he asks

See how you translated "asks" in Matthew 5:42.

fish ... snake

These nouns should be translated literally.

Matthew 7:11

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of "you" and "your" are plural.

how much more will your Father in heaven give ... him?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "then your Father in heaven will most certainly give ... him."

Father

This is an important title for God.

ask him

See how you translated "asks" in Matthew 5:42.

Matthew 7:12

whatever things you want people to do to you

"whatever way you want others to act toward you"

for this is the law and the prophets

Here "law" and "prophets" refer to what Moses and the prophets wrote. Alternate translation: "for this is what Moses and the prophets teach in the scriptures"

Matthew 7:13

General Information:

This image of walking through a wide gate to destruction or a narrow gate to life represents how people live and the results of how they live. When you translate, use appropriate words for "wide" and "broad" that are as different as possible from "narrow" in order to emphasize the differences between the two sets of gates and ways.

Enter through the narrow gate ... many people who go through it

This is an image of people traveling on a road and going through a gate into a kingdom. One kingdom is easy to enter; the other is hard to enter.

Enter through the narrow gate

You may need to move this to the end of verse 14:  
"Therefore, enter through the narrow gate."

the gate ... the way

Possible meanings are 1) "the way" refers to the road that leads to the gate of a kingdom, or 2) the "the gate" and "the way" both refer to the entrance to the kingdom.

to destruction

This abstract noun can be translated with a verb.  
Alternate translation: "to the place where people die"

Matthew 7:14

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to speak of people choosing how they are going to live as if they are choosing whether to go on one path or another.

to life

The abstract noun "life" can be translated using the verb "live." Alternate translation: "to the place where people live"

Matthew 7:15

Beware of

"Be on guard against"

who come to you in sheep's clothing but are truly ravenous wolves

This metaphor means that false prophets will pretend they they are good and want to help people, but they are really evil and will do people harm.

ravenous wolves

wolves that are extremely hungry and that consume or destroy everything they touch

Matthew 7:16

By their fruits you will know them

This metaphor refers to a person's actions. Alternate translation: "Just as you know a tree by the fruit that

grows on it, you will know false prophets by how they act"

Do people gather ... thistles?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. The people would have known that the answer is no. Alternate translation: "People do not gather ... thistles."

Matthew 7:17

every good tree produces good fruit

Jesus continues to use the metaphor of fruit to refer to good prophets who produce good works or words.

the bad tree produces bad fruit

Jesus continues to use the metaphor of fruit to refer to bad prophets who produce evil works.

Matthew 7:18

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 7:19

Every tree that does not produce good fruit is chopped down and thrown into the fire

Jesus continues to use fruit trees as a metaphor to refer to false prophets. Here, he only states what will happen to the bad trees. It is implied that the same thing will happen to the false prophets.

is chopped down and thrown into the fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people chop down and burn"

chopped down

See how you translated this in Matthew 3:10

Matthew 7:20

you will recognize them by their fruits

The word "their" can refer to either the prophets or the trees. This metaphor implies that the fruit of trees and the deeds of prophets both reveal whether they are good or bad. If possible, translate this in a way so that it can refer to both trees and prophets.

#### Matthew 7:21

will enter into the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "will live with God in heaven when he shows himself to be king"

those who do the will of my Father who is in heaven

"whoever does what my Father in heaven desires"

Father

This is an important title for God.

#### Matthew 7:22

in that day

Jesus said "that day" knowing his hearers would understand he was referring to the day of judgment. You should include "the day of judgment" only if your readers would not understand otherwise.

did we not prophesy ... drive out demons ... do many miracles?

The people use a question to emphasize that they did these things. Alternate translation: "we prophesied ... we drove out demons ... we did many miracles."

we

This "we" does not include Jesus.

in your name

Possible meanings are 1) "by your authority" or "by your power" or 2) "because we were doing what you wanted us to do" or 3) "because we asked you for the power to do it"

#### Matthew 7:23

I never knew you

This means the person does not belong to Jesus. Alternate translation: "You are not my follower" or "I have nothing to do with you"

#### Matthew 7:24

Therefore

"For that reason"

my words

Here "words" refers to what Jesus says.

like a wise man who built his house upon a rock

Jesus compares those who obey his words to a person who builds his house where nothing can harm it.

rock

This is the bedrock below the topsoil and clay, not a large stone or boulder above the ground.

#### Matthew 7:25

it was founded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he put its foundation"

#### Matthew 7:26

like a foolish man who built his house upon the sand

Jesus continues the simile from the previous verse. He compares those who do not obey his words to foolish house-builders. Only a fool would build a house on a sandy place where rain, floods, and wind can sweep the sand away.

#### Matthew 7:27

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of Jesus's Sermon on the Mount, which began in Matthew 5:3.

fell

Use the general word in your language that describes what happens when a house falls down.

its destruction was complete

The rain, floods, and wind completely destroyed the house.

## Matthew 7:28

### General Information:

These verses describe how the people in the crowds reacted to Jesus's teaching in the Sermon on the Mount.

It came about that when

This phrase shifts the story from Jesus's teachings to what happened next. Alternate translation: "When" or "After"

were astonished by his teaching

It is clear in 7:29 that they were amazed not just at what Jesus taught but also the way he taught it.

Alternate translation: "were amazed by the way he taught"

## Matthew 7:29

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

8 <sup>1</sup>When Jesus had come down from the hill, large crowds followed him. <sup>2</sup>Behold, a leper came to him and bowed before him, saying, "Lord, if you are willing, you can make me clean."

<sup>3</sup>Jesus reached out his hand and touched him, saying, "I am willing. Be clean." Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy.

<sup>4</sup>Jesus said to him, "See that you say nothing to any man. Go on your way, show yourself to the priest, and offer the gift that Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."

<sup>5</sup>When he was coming into Capernaum, a centurion came to him, begging him <sup>6</sup>and saying, "Lord, my servant lies at home paralyzed and in terrible agony."

<sup>7</sup>Then Jesus said to him, "I will come and heal him."

<sup>8</sup>The centurion answered and said, "Lord, I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. Only say the word and my servant will be healed. <sup>9</sup>For I also am a man under authority, and I have soldiers under me. I say to this one, 'Go,' and he goes, and to another one, 'Come,' and he comes, and to my servant, 'Do this,' and he does it."

<sup>10</sup>When Jesus heard this, he was amazed and said to those who were following him, "Truly I say to you, I have not found anyone with such faith in Israel.

<sup>11</sup>I tell you, many will come from the east and the west, and they will recline at the table with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, in the kingdom of heaven. <sup>12</sup>But the sons of the kingdom will be cast out into the outer darkness, where there will be weeping and grinding of teeth." <sup>13</sup>Jesus said to the centurion, "Go! As you have believed, so may it be done for you." And the servant was healed at that very hour.

<sup>14</sup>When Jesus had come into Peter's house, he saw Peter's mother-in-law lying sick with a fever. <sup>15</sup>Jesus touched her hand, and the fever left her. Then she got up and started serving him.

<sup>16</sup>When evening had come, the people brought to Jesus many who were possessed by demons. He drove out the spirits with a word and healed all who were sick. <sup>17</sup>This was to fulfill what was spoken through Isaiah the prophet, saying,

"He took our illnesses  
and bore our diseases."

<sup>18</sup>Now when Jesus saw the crowd around him, he gave instructions to leave for the other side of the Sea of Galilee.

<sup>19</sup>Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go."

<sup>20</sup>Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."

<sup>21</sup>Another of the disciples said to him, "Lord, allow me first to go and bury my father."

<sup>22</sup>But Jesus said to him, "Follow me, and leave the dead to bury their own dead."

<sup>23</sup>When Jesus had entered a boat, his disciples followed him into it. <sup>24</sup>Behold, there arose a great storm on the sea, so that the boat was covered with the waves. But Jesus was asleep. <sup>25</sup>The disciples came to him and woke him up, saying, "Save us, Lord; we are perishing!"

<sup>26</sup>Jesus said to them, "Why are you afraid, you of little faith?" Then he got up and rebuked the winds and the sea. Then there was a great calm.

<sup>27</sup>The men marveled and said, "What sort of man is this, that even the winds and the sea obey him?"

<sup>28</sup>When Jesus had come to the other side and to the country of the Gadarenes, two men who were possessed by demons met him. They were coming out of the tombs and were very violent, so that no traveler could pass that way. <sup>29</sup>Behold, they cried out and said, "What do we have to do with you, Son of God? Have you come here to torment us before the set time?"

<sup>30</sup>Now a herd of many pigs was there feeding, not too far away from them.<sup>31</sup>The demons kept pleading with Jesus and saying, "If you cast us out, send us away into that herd of pigs."  
<sup>32</sup>Jesus said to them, "Go!" The demons came out and went into the pigs; and behold, the whole herd rushed down the steep hill into the sea and they died in the water.  
<sup>33</sup>Those who had been tending the pigs ran away and they went into the city and reported everything, especially what had happened to the men who had been possessed by demons.<sup>34</sup>Behold, all the city came out to meet Jesus. When they saw him, they begged him to leave their region.

# Matthew 8 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a new section.

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Miracles

Jesus performed miracles to show that he could control things that no other people could control. He also showed that it is proper to worship him because he performed miracles. (See: authority)

## Links:

- [Matthew 8:1 Notes](#)

### Matthew 8:1

#### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story that contains several accounts of Jesus healing people. This theme continues through Matthew 9:35.

When Jesus had come down from the hill, large crowds followed him

"After Jesus came down from the hill, a large crowd followed him." The crowd may have included both people who had been with him on the mountain and people who had not been with him.

### Matthew 8:2

#### Behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

a leper

"a man who had leprosy" or "a man who had a skin disease"

bowed before him

This is a sign of humble respect before Jesus.

if you are willing

"if you want to" or "if you desire." The leper knew that Jesus had the power to heal him, but he did not know if Jesus would want to touch him.

you can make me clean

Here "clean" means to be healed and to be able to live in the community again. Alternate translation: "you can heal me" or "please heal me"

### Matthew 8:3

#### Be clean

By saying this, Jesus healed the man.

Immediately he was cleansed

"At that moment he was cleansed"

he was cleansed of his leprosy

The result of Jesus saying "Be clean" was that the man was healed. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he was well" or "the leprosy left him" or "the leprosy ended"

Matthew 8:4

to him

This refers to the man that Jesus just healed.

say nothing to any man

"do not say anything to anyone" or "do not tell anyone I healed you"

show yourself to the priest

Jewish law required that the person show his healed skin to the priest, who would then allow him or her to return to the community, to be with other people.

offer the gift that Moses commanded, for a testimony to them

The law of Moses required that someone healed of leprosy give a thanksgiving offering to the priest. When the priest accepted the gift, people would know that the man had been healed. Lepers were ostracized, banned from the community, until they had proof of their healing.

to them

This can possibly refer to 1) the priests or 2) all the people or 3) the critics of Jesus. If possible, use a pronoun that could refer to any of these groups.

Matthew 8:5

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a different time and place and tells about Jesus healing another person.

When he was coming into Capernaum

"When Jesus was coming into Capernaum"

Matthew 8:6

paralyzed

unable to move because of disease or stroke

Matthew 8:7

Jesus said to him

"Jesus said to the centurion"

I will come and heal him

"I will come to your house and make your servant well"

Matthew 8:8

under my roof

This is an idiom that refers to inside the house. Alternate translation: "into my house"

say the word

Here "word" represents a command. Alternate translation: "give the command"

will be healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will become well"

Matthew 8:9

under authority ... under me

To be "under" someone means to be less important and to obey the commands of someone more important.

Matthew 8:10

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

I have not found anyone with such faith in Israel

Jesus's hearers would have thought that the Jews in Israel, who claim to be children of God, would have greater faith than anyone. Jesus is saying they are wrong and that the centurion's faith was greater.

Matthew 8:11

you

Here "you" is plural and refers to "those who were following him" in [Matthew 8:10]



from the east and the west

Using the opposites "east" and "west" is a way of saying "everywhere." Alternate translation: "from everywhere" or "from far away in every direction"

recline at the table

People in that culture would lie down beside the table while eating. This phrase indicates that all those at the table are family and close friends. The joy in the kingdom of God is frequently spoken of as if the people there were feasting. Alternate translation: "live as family and friends"

in the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "when our God in heaven shows that he is king"

Matthew 8:12

sons of the kingdom will be cast out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will cast the sons of the kingdom out"

the sons of the kingdom

The phrase "the sons of the kingdom" is a metonym, referring to the unbelieving Jews of the kingdom of Judea. There is also irony here because the "sons" will be thrown out while the strangers will be welcomed. Alternate translation: "those who should have allowed God to rule over them"

the outer darkness

Here "outer darkness" is a metonym for the place where God sends those who reject them. This is a place that is completely separated from God forever. Alternate translation: "the dark place away from God"

weeping and grinding of teeth

"Grinding of teeth" here is a symbolic act, representing extreme sadness and suffering. Alternate translation: "weeping and showing their extreme suffering"

Matthew 8:13

so may it be done for you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so I will do it for you"

the servant was healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus healed the servant"

at that very hour

"at the exact time Jesus said he would heal the servant"

Matthew 8:14

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a different time and place and tells of Jesus healing another person.

Jesus had come

The disciples were probably with Jesus, but the focus of the story is on what Jesus said and did, so introduce the disciples only if needed to avoid wrong meaning.

Peter's mother-in-law

"the mother of Peter's wife"

Matthew 8:15

the fever left her

If your language would understand this personification to mean that the fever could think and act on its own, this can be translated as "she became better" or "Jesus healed her."

got up

"got out of bed"

Matthew 8:16

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to later that evening and tells of Jesus healing more people and casting out demons.

When evening had come

Because Jews did not work or travel on the Sabbath, "evening" may imply after the Sabbath. They waited until evening to bring people to Jesus. You do not need to mention the Sabbath unless you need to avoid wrong meaning.

many who were possessed by demons

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "many people whom demons possessed" or "many people whom demons controlled"

He drove out the spirits with a word

Here "word" stands for a command. Alternate translation: "He commanded the spirits to leave"

Matthew 8:17

This was to fulfill

"Jesus did this to fulfill"

what was spoken through Isaiah the prophet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what Isaiah the prophet had spoken"

He took our illnesses and bore our diseases

Matthew is quoting the prophet Isaiah to show that when Jesus healed people, he fulfilled what Isaiah had said would happen. These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Jesus truly did this. Alternate translation: "Truly he took our illnesses"

Matthew 8:18

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts and tells about Jesus's response to some people who wanted to follow him.

Now

This word is used here to mark a change in the main story. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

he gave instructions

"he told his disciples"

Matthew 8:19

Then

This means after Jesus "gave instructions" but before he could get into the boat.

wherever

to any place

Matthew 8:20

Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests

Jesus answers with this proverb. This means even wild animals have somewhere to rest.

Foxes

Foxes are animals like dogs. They eat nesting birds and other small animals. If foxes are unknown in your area, use a general term for dog-like creatures or other furry animals.

holes

Foxes make holes in the ground to live in. Use the appropriate word for the place where the animal you use for "foxes" lives.

the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

nowhere to lay his head

This refers to a place to sleep. Alternate translation: "no place of his own to sleep"

Matthew 8:21

allow me first to go and bury my father

It is unclear whether the man's father has died and he will bury him immediately, or if the man wants to stay for a longer amount of time until his father dies so he can bury him then. The main point is that the man wants to do something else first before he follows Jesus.

## Matthew 8:22

leave the dead to bury their own dead

Jesus does not mean literally that dead people will bury other dead people. Possible meanings of "the dead": 1) it is a metaphor for those who will soon die, or 2) it is a metaphor for those who do not follow Jesus and are spiritually dead. The main point is that a disciple must not let anything delay him from following Jesus.

## Matthew 8:23

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to the account of Jesus calming a storm as he and his disciples cross the Sea of Galilee.

entered a boat

"got onto a boat"

his disciples followed him

Try to use the same words for "disciple" and "follow" that you used in ([Matthew 8:21-22](#)).

## Matthew 8:24

Behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. Your language may have a way of showing this.

Alternate translation: "Suddenly" or "Without warning"

there arose a great storm on the sea

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "a powerful storm arose on the sea"

so that the boat was covered with the waves

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that the waves covered the boat"

## Matthew 8:25

General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus's healing ministry was a fulfillment of prophecy.

woke him up, saying, "Save us

Possible meanings are 1) they first woke Jesus and then they said, "Save us" or 2) as they were waking Jesus up, they were saying "Save us."

us ... we

If you need to translate these words as inclusive or exclusive, then inclusive is best. The disciples probably meant they wanted Jesus to save the disciples and himself from drowning.

we are perishing

"we are going to die very soon." The word "perishing" is a strong word for "dying."

## Matthew 8:26

to them

"to the disciples"

Why are you afraid ... faith?

Jesus was rebuking the disciples with this rhetorical question. Alternate translation: "You should not be afraid ... faith!" or "There is nothing for you to be afraid of ... faith!"

you of little faith

"you who have such little faith." Jesus addresses his disciples this way because their anxiety about the storm shows they have little faith in him to control it. See how you translated this in Matthew 6:30.

## Matthew 8:27

What sort of man is this, that even the winds and the sea obey him?

"Even the winds and the sea obey him! What sort of man is this?" This rhetorical question shows that the disciples were surprised. Alternate translation: "This man is unlike any man we have ever seen! Even the wind and the waves obey him!"

even the winds and the sea obey him

For people or animals to obey or disobey is not surprising, but for wind and water to obey is very surprising. This personification describes the natural elements as being able to hear and respond like people.

## Matthew 8:28

Connecting Statement:

Here the author returns to the theme of Jesus healing people. This begins an account of Jesus healing two demon-possessed men.

to the other side

"to the other side of the Sea of Galilee"

the Gadarenes

This name refers to the people who lived in the town of Gadara.

two men who were possessed by demons

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "two men whom demons possessed" or "two men whom demons were controlling"

They ... were very violent, so that no traveler could pass that way

The demons that were controlling these two men were so dangerous that no one could go through that area.

## Matthew 8:29

Behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. Your language may have a way of showing this.

What do we have to do with you, Son of God?

The demons use a question but they are being hostile toward Jesus. Alternate translation: "Do not bother us, Son of God!"

Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus, which describes his relationship to God.

Have you come here to torment us before the set time?

Again, the demons use a question in a hostile way. Alternate translation: "You should not disobey God by punishing us before the specific time God has set when he will punish us!"

## Matthew 8:30

Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here Matthew tells background information about a herd of pigs that had been there before Jesus arrived.

## Matthew 8:31

If you cast us out

It is implied that the demons knew that Jesus was going to cast them out. Alternate translation: "Because you are going to cast us out"

us

This is exclusive, meaning the demons only.

## Matthew 8:32

to them

This refers to the demons inside the men.

The demons came out and went into the pigs

"The demons left the men and entered the pigs"

behold

This alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

rushed down the steep hill

"ran quickly down the steep slope"

they died in the water

"they fell into the water and drowned"

## Matthew 8:33

Connecting Statement:

This concludes the account of Jesus healing two demon-possessed men.

tending the pigs

"taking care of the pigs"

what had happened to the men who had been possessed by demons

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what Jesus did to help the men whom demons had controlled"

Matthew 8:34

Behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of showing this.

---

all the city

The word "city" is a metonym for the people of the city. The word "all" is probably an exaggeration to emphasize how very many people came out. Not necessarily every person came out.

their region

"their area"

<sup>9</sup> Jesus entered a boat, crossed over, and came into his own city.<sup>2</sup> Behold, they brought to him a paralyzed man lying on a mat. Seeing their faith, Jesus said to the paralyzed man, "Son, be encouraged. Your sins have been forgiven."

<sup>3</sup> Behold, some of the scribes said among themselves, "This man is blaspheming."<sup>4</sup> Jesus knew their thoughts and said, "Why are you thinking evil in your hearts?<sup>5</sup> For which is easier, to say, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up and walk'?<sup>6</sup> But that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins, ... " he said to the paralytic, "Get up, pick up your mat, and go to your house."

<sup>7</sup> Then the man got up and went away to his house.<sup>8</sup> When the crowds saw this, they were afraid and glorified God, who had given such authority to people.<sup>9</sup> As Jesus passed by from there, he saw a man named Matthew sitting at the tax collector's tent. He said to him, "Follow me." He got up and followed him.

<sup>10</sup> As Jesus sat down to eat in the house, behold, many tax collectors and sinners came and dined with Jesus and his disciples.<sup>11</sup> When the Pharisees saw it, they said to his disciples, "Why does your teacher eat with tax collectors and sinners?"

<sup>12</sup> When Jesus heard this, he said, "People who are strong in body do not need a physician; only those who are sick do."<sup>13</sup> You should go and learn what this means: 'I desire mercy and not sacrifice.' For I came not to call the righteous to repent, but sinners."

<sup>14</sup> Then the disciples of John came to him and said, "Why do we and the Pharisees often fast, but your disciples do not fast?"

<sup>15</sup> Jesus said to them, "Can the sons of the wedding hall mourn while the bridegroom is still with them? But the days will come when the bridegroom will be taken away from them, and then they will fast.

<sup>16</sup> No man puts a piece of new cloth on an old garment, for the patch will tear away from the garment, and a worse tear will be made.

<sup>17</sup> Neither do people put new wine into old wineskins. If they do, the skins will burst, the wine will be spilled, and the wineskins will be destroyed. Instead, they put new wine into fresh wineskins, and both will be preserved."

<sup>18</sup> While Jesus was saying these things to them, behold, an official came and bowed down to him. He said, "My daughter has just now died, but come and lay your hand on her, and she will live."<sup>19</sup> Then Jesus got up and followed him, and so did his disciples.

<sup>20</sup> Behold, a woman who suffered from a discharge of blood for twelve years came up behind Jesus and touched the edge of his garment.<sup>21</sup> For she had said to herself, "If only I touch his clothes, I will be made well."

<sup>22</sup> But Jesus turned and saw her, and said, "Daughter, take courage; your faith has made you well." And the woman was healed from that hour.

<sup>23</sup> When Jesus came into the official's house, he saw the flute players and the crowd making a commotion.<sup>24</sup> He said, "Go away, for the girl is not dead, but she is asleep." But they laughed at him in mockery.

<sup>25</sup> When the crowd had been put outside, he entered the room and took her by the hand, and the girl got up.<sup>26</sup> The news about this spread into all that region.

<sup>27</sup> As Jesus passed by from there, two blind men followed him. They kept shouting and saying, "Have mercy on us, Son of David!"

<sup>28</sup> When Jesus had come into the house, the blind men came to him. Jesus said to them, "Do you believe that I can do this?"

They said to him, "Yes, Lord."

<sup>29</sup> Then Jesus touched their eyes and said, "Let it be done to you according to your faith,"<sup>30</sup> and their eyes were opened. Then Jesus strictly commanded them and said, "See that no one knows about this."<sup>31</sup> But the two men went out and spread the news about this throughout that region.

<sup>32</sup>As those two men were going away, behold, a mute man possessed by a demon was brought to Jesus.<sup>33</sup>When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!"

<sup>34</sup>But the Pharisees were saying, "By the ruler of the demons, he drives out demons."

<sup>35</sup>Jesus went about all the cities and the villages. He continued teaching in their synagogues, preaching the gospel of the kingdom and healing all kinds of disease and all kinds of sickness.<sup>36</sup>When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged. They were like sheep without a shepherd.

<sup>37</sup>He said to his disciples, "The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few."<sup>38</sup>Therefore urgently pray to the Lord of the harvest, so that he may send out laborers into his harvest."

---

## Matthew 9 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

"Sinners"

When the people of Jesus's time spoke of "sinners," they were talking about people who did not obey the law of Moses and instead committed sins like stealing or sexual sins. When Jesus said that he came to call "sinners," he meant that only people who believe that they are sinners can be his followers. This is true even if they are not what most people think of as "sinners." (See: sin)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Passive voice

Many sentences in this chapter tell that a person had something happen to him without saying who caused that something to happen. You may have to translate the sentence so that it tells the reader who performed the action.

Rhetorical questions

Speakers in this chapter asked questions to which they already knew the answer. They asked the questions to show that they were not happy with the hearers or to teach them or to get them to think. Your language may have another way of doing this.

Proverbs

Proverbs are very short sentences that use words that are easy to remember. They teach about something that is generally true. People who understand proverbs usually have to know much about the language and culture of the speaker. When you translate the proverbs in this chapter, you may have to use many more words than the speakers used so that your readers can understand things that the original audiences understood.

### Links:

- [Matthew 9:1 Notes](#)
-

## Matthew 9:1

Connecting Statement:

Matthew returns to the theme, which he began in Matthew 8:1, of Jesus healing people. This begins an account of Jesus healing a paralyzed man.

Jesus entered a boat

It is implied that the disciples were with Jesus.

a boat

This is probably the same boat as in Matthew 8:23. You only need to specify this if needed to avoid confusion.

into his own city

"to the town where he lived." This refers to Capernaum.

## Matthew 9:2

Behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of showing this.

they brought

"some men from the city brought"

their faith

This refers to the faith of the men and may also include the faith of the paralyzed man.

Son

The man was not Jesus's real son. Jesus was speaking to him politely. If this is confusing, it can also be translated "My friend" or "Young man" or even omitted.

Your sins have been forgiven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I have forgiven your sins"

## Matthew 9:3

Behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of doing this.

among themselves

Possible meanings are 1) each one was thinking to himself, or 2) they were speaking among themselves.

blaspheming

Jesus was claiming to be able to do things the scribes thought only God can do.

## Matthew 9:4

knew their thoughts

Jesus knew what they were thinking either supernaturally or because he could see them talking to each other.

Why are you thinking evil in your hearts?

Jesus used this question to rebuke the scribes. Here "hearts" refers to their minds or their thoughts. Alternate translation: "Do not think evil thoughts."

evil

This is moral evil or wickedness, not simply error in fact.

## Matthew 9:5

For which is easier, to say, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up and walk'?

Jesus uses this question to make the scribes think about what might prove whether or not he could really forgive sins. Alternate translation: "I just said 'Your sins are forgiven.' You may think that it is harder to say 'Get up and walk,' because the proof of whether or not I can heal the man will be shown by whether or not he gets up and walks." or "You may think that it is easier to say 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up and walk.'"



which is easier, to say, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up and walk'?

The quotes can be translated as indirect quotes.  
Alternate translation: "which is easier, to tell someone that his sins are forgiven, or to tell him to get up and walk?" or "you may think that it is easier to tell someone that his sins are forgiven than to tell him to get up and walk."

Your sins are forgiven

Here "your" is singular. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I have forgiven your sins"

Matthew 9:6

that you may know

"I will prove to you." The "you" is plural.

your mat ... your house

Here "you" is singular.

go to your house

Jesus is not forbidding the man to go elsewhere. He is giving the man the opportunity to go home.

Matthew 9:7

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 9:8

they were afraid

Possible meanings are 1) they were afraid, or 2) they were in awe. "Awe" is a feeling of wonder a person has when they see or experience something great or powerful.

who had given

"because he had given"

such authority

This refers to the authority to declare sins forgiven.

Matthew 9:9

Connecting Statement:

This concludes the account of Jesus healing a paralyzed man. Jesus then calls a tax collector to be one of his disciples.

As Jesus passed by from there

This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

passed by

"was leaving" or "was going"

Matthew ... him ... He

Church tradition says that this Matthew is the author of this Gospel, but the text gives no reason to change the pronouns from "him" and "He" to "me" and "I."

He said to him

"Jesus said to Matthew"

He got up and followed him

"Matthew got up and followed Jesus." This means Matthew became Jesus's disciple.

Matthew 9:10

the house

This is probably Matthew's house, but it could also be Jesus's house. Specify only if needed to avoid confusion.

behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of doing this.

sinners

people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

## Matthew 9:11

When the Pharisees saw it

"When the Pharisees saw that Jesus was eating with the tax collectors and sinful people"

Why does your teacher eat with tax collectors and sinners?

The Pharisees use this question to criticize what Jesus is doing. Alternate translation: "Your teacher should not eat with tax collectors and sinner."

## Matthew 9:12

When Jesus heard this

Here "this" refers to the question the Pharisees asked about Jesus eating with tax collectors and sinners.

People who are strong in body do not need a physician, only those who are sick do

Jesus answers with a proverb. He means that he eats with these kinds of people because he has come to help sinners.

People who are strong in body

"People who are healthy"

physician

doctor

only those who are sick do

The phrase "need a physician" is understood. Alternate translation: "only people who are sick need a physician"

## Matthew 9:13

You should go and learn what this means

Jesus is about to quote the scriptures. Alternate translation: "You should learn the meaning of what God said in the scriptures"

You should go

Here "you" is plural and refers to the Pharisees.

I desire mercy and not sacrifice

Jesus is quoting what the prophet Hosea wrote in the scriptures. Here, "I" refers to God.

For I came

Here "I" refers to Jesus.

the righteous

Jesus is using irony. He does not think there are any people who are righteous and do not need to repent. Alternate translation: "those who think they are righteous"

## Matthew 9:14

Connecting Statement:

The disciples of John the Baptist question the fact that Jesus's disciples do not fast.

do not fast

"continue to eat regularly"

## Matthew 9:15

Can the sons of the wedding hall mourn while the bridegroom is still with them?

Jesus uses a question to answer John's disciples. They all knew that people do not mourn and fast at a wedding celebration. Jesus uses this proverb to show that his disciples do not mourn because he is still there with them. Alternate translation: "The sons of the wedding hall never mourn while the bridegroom is still with them."

sons of the wedding hall

This is an idiom that refers to the men who serve a bridegroom during a wedding. Alternate translation: "bridegroom's attendants"

the days will come when

This is a way of referring to some time in the future. Alternate translation: "the time will come when" or "someday"

the bridegroom will be taken away from them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the bridegroom will not be able to be with them any longer" or "someone will take the bridegroom away from them"

will be taken away

Jesus is probably referring to his own death, but this should not be made explicit here in the translation. To maintain the imagery of a wedding, it is best to just state that the bridegroom will not be there any longer.

Matthew 9:16

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to answer the question that the disciples of John had asked. He did this by giving two examples of old things and new things that people do not put together.

No man puts a piece of new cloth on an old garment

"No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old garment" or "People do not sew a piece of new cloth as a patch on an old garment"

an old garment ... the garment

"old clothing ... the clothing"

the patch will tear away from the garment

If someone were to wash the garment, the patch of new cloth would shrink, but the old garment would not shrink. This would tear the patch off the garment and leave a bigger hole.

the patch

"the piece of new cloth." This is the piece of cloth used to cover a hole in the old garment.

a worse tear will be made

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "this will make the tear worse"

Matthew 9:17

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to answer the question that disciples of John had asked.

Neither do people put new wine into old wineskins

Jesus uses another proverb to answer John's disciples. This means the same as the proverb in Matthew 9:16.

Neither do people put

"Neither does anyone pour" or "People never put"

new wine

This refers to wine that has not fermented yet. If grapes are unknown in your area, use the general term for fruit. Alternate translation: "grape juice"

old wineskins

This refers to wineskins that have stretched and dried out because they were already used for fermenting wine.

wineskins

"wine bags" or "skin bags." These were bags made out of animal skins.

the wine will be spilled, and the wineskins will be destroyed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "and this will ruin the wineskins and spill the wine"

the skins will burst

When the new wine ferments and expands, the skins tear open because they can no longer stretch out.

fresh wineskins

"new wineskins" or "new wine bags." This refers to wineskins that no one has used.

both will be preserved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "this will keep safe both the wineskins and the wine"

Matthew 9:18

Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of Jesus bringing to life the daughter of a Jewish official after she had died.

these things

This refers to the answer Jesus gave John's disciples about fasting.

behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

bowed down to him

This is a way someone would show respect in Jewish culture.

come and lay your hand on her, and she will live

This shows that the Jewish official believed Jesus had the power to bring his daughter back to life.

Matthew 9:19

his disciples

"Jesus's disciples"

Matthew 9:20

Connecting Statement:

This describes how Jesus healed another woman while he was on the way to the Jewish official's house.

Behold

The word "Behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

who suffered from a discharge of blood

"who had been bleeding" or "who frequently had a flow of blood." She was probably bleeding from her womb even when it was not the normal time for it. Some cultures may have a polite way of referring to this condition.

twelve years

"12 years"

his garment

"his robe" or "what he was wearing"

Matthew 9:21

For she had said to herself, "If only I touch his clothes, I will be made well."

She said this to herself before she touched Jesus's garment. This tells why she touched Jesus's garment.

If only I touch his clothes

According to Jewish law, because she was bleeding she was not supposed to touch anyone. She touches his clothes so that Jesus's power would heal her and yet

Matthew 9:22

But Jesus

"The woman was hoping she could touch him secretly, but Jesus"

Daughter

The woman was not Jesus's real daughter. Jesus was speaking to her politely. If this is confusing, it can also be translated "Young woman" or even omitted.

your faith has made you well

"because you believed in me, I will heal you"

the woman was healed from that hour

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus healed her at that moment"

Matthew 9:23

Connecting Statement:

This returns to the account of Jesus bringing the daughter of the Jewish official back to life.

the flute players and the crowd making a commotion

This was a common way to mourn for someone who has died.

flute players

"people who play flutes"

and the crowd making a commotion

The phrase "making a commotion" applies only to "the crowd" and does not include the flute players.

Alternation translation: "and the crowd making a lot of noise" or "and the noisy crowd"

Matthew 9:24

Go away

Jesus was speaking to many people, so use the plural command form if your language has one.

the girl is not dead, but she is asleep

Jesus is using a play on words. It was common in Jesus's day to refer to a dead person as one who "sleeps." But here the dead girl will get up, as though she had only been sleeping.

Matthew 9:25

When the crowd had been put outside

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After Jesus had sent the crowd outside" or "After the family had sent the people outside"

got up

"got out of bed." This is the same meaning as in Matthew 8:15.

Matthew 9:26

General Information:

This is a summary statement that describes the result of Jesus raising this girl from the dead.

Connecting Statement:

This completes the account of Jesus bringing the daughter of the Jewish official back to life.

The news about this spread into all that region

"The people of that whole region heard about it" or "The people who saw that the girl was alive started telling everyone in the whole area about it"

Matthew 9:27

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus healing two blind men.

As Jesus passed by from there

As Jesus was leaving the region

passed by

"was leaving" or "was going"

followed him

This means they were walking behind Jesus, not necessarily that they had become his disciples.

Have mercy on us

It is implied that they wanted Jesus to heal them.

Son of David

Jesus was not David's literal son, so this may be translated as "Descendant of David." However, "Son of David" is also a title for the Messiah, and the men were probably calling Jesus by this title.

Matthew 9:28

When Jesus had come into the house

This could be either Jesus's own house or the house in Matthew 9:10.

Yes, Lord

The full content of their answer is not stated, but it is understood. Alternate translation: "Yes, Lord, we believe you can heal us"

Matthew 9:29

touched their eyes and said

It is not clear whether he touched both men's eyes at the same time or used only his right hand to touch one then the other. As the left hand was customarily used for unclean purposes, it is most likely that he used only his right hand. It is also not clear whether he spoke as he was touching them or touched them first and then spoke to them.

Let it be done to you according to your faith

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will do as you have believed" or "Because you believe, I will heal you"

Matthew 9:30

their eyes were opened

This means they were able to see. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God healed their eyes" or "the two blind men were able to see"

See that no one knows about this

Here "See" means "be sure." Alternate translation: "Be sure no one finds out about this" or "Do not tell anyone that I healed you"

Matthew 9:31

But the two men

"The two men did not do what Jesus told them to do. They"

spread the news

"told many people what had happened to them"

Matthew 9:32

Connecting Statement:

This is the account of Jesus healing a demon-possessed man who could not speak, and how people responded.

behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

a mute man ... was brought to Jesus

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone brought a mute man ... to Jesus"

mute

not able to talk

possessed by a demon

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom a demon had possessed" or "whom a demon was controlling"

Matthew 9:33

When the demon had been driven out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After Jesus had forced the demon out" or "After Jesus had commanded the demon to leave"

the mute man spoke

"the mute man began to speak" or "the man who had been mute spoke" or "the man, who was no longer mute, spoke"

The crowds were astonished

"The people were amazed"

This has never been seen

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This has never happened before" or "No one has ever done anything like this before"

Matthew 9:34

he drives out demons

"he forces demons to leave"

he drives

The pronoun "he" refers to Jesus.

Matthew 9:35

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story that began in [Matthew 8:1]

all the cities

The word "all" is an exaggeration to emphasize how very many cities Jesus went to. He did not necessarily go to every one of them. Alternate translation: "many of the cities"

cities ... villages

"large villages ... small villages" or "large towns ... small towns"

the gospel of the kingdom

Here "kingdom" refers to God's rule as king. See how you translated this in [Matthew 4:23]

all kinds of disease and all kinds of sickness

"every disease and every sickness." The words "disease" and "sickness" are closely related but should be translated as two different words if possible. "Disease" is what causes a person to be sick. "Sickness" is the physical weakness or affliction that results from having a disease.

Matthew 9:36

General Information:

This begins a new part of the story where Jesus teaches his disciples and sends them to preach and heal as he has done.

They were like sheep without a shepherd

This simile means they did not have a leader to take care of them. Alternate translation: "The people did not have a leader"

Matthew 9:37

General Information:

Jesus uses a proverb about harvesting to tell his disciples how they should respond to the needs of the crowds mentioned in the previous section.

The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few

Jesus uses a proverb to respond to what he is seeing. Jesus means there are a lot of people who are ready to believe God but only few people to teach them God's truth.

The harvest is plentiful

"There is plenty of ripe food for someone to collect"

laborers

"workers"

Matthew 9:38

pray to the Lord of the harvest

"pray to God, because he is in charge of the harvest"

10 <sup>1</sup>Jesus called his twelve disciples together and gave them authority over unclean spirits, to drive them out, and to heal all kinds of disease and all kinds of sickness.

<sup>2</sup>Now the names of the twelve apostles were these. The first, Simon (whom he also called Peter), and Andrew his brother; James son of Zebedee, and John his brother; <sup>3</sup>Philip, and Bartholomew; Thomas, and Matthew the tax collector; James son of Alphaeus, and Thaddaeus; <sup>4</sup>Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot, who would betray him.

<sup>5</sup>These twelve Jesus sent out. He instructed them and said, "Do not go to any place where Gentiles live, and do not enter any town of the Samaritans. <sup>6</sup>Go instead to the lost sheep of the house of Israel; <sup>7</sup>and as you go, preach and say, 'The kingdom of heaven is near.'

<sup>8</sup>Heal the sick, raise the dead, cleanse the lepers, and cast out demons. Freely you have received, freely give. <sup>9</sup>Do not carry any gold, silver, or copper in your belts. <sup>10</sup>Do not take a traveling bag for your journey, or an extra tunic, or sandals, or a staff, for a laborer deserves his food.

<sup>11</sup>Whatever city or village you enter, find who is worthy in it, and stay there until you leave. <sup>12</sup>As you enter into the house, greet it. <sup>13</sup>If the house is worthy, let your peace come upon it. But if it is not worthy, let your peace return to you.

<sup>14</sup>As for those who do not receive you or listen to your words, when you depart from that house or city, shake off the dust from your feet. <sup>15</sup>Truly I say to you, it will be more bearable for the land of Sodom and Gomorrah in the day of judgment than for that city.

<sup>16</sup>"See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, so be as wise as serpents and innocent as doves. <sup>17</sup>Watch out for people! They will deliver you up to councils, and they will whip you in their synagogues. <sup>18</sup>Then you will be brought before governors and kings for my sake, as a testimony to them and to the Gentiles.

<sup>19</sup>When they deliver you up, do not be anxious about how or what you will speak, for what to say will be given to you at that time. <sup>20</sup>For it is not you who will speak, but the Spirit of your Father who will speak in you.

<sup>21</sup>Brother will deliver up brother to death, and a father his child. Children will rise up against their parents and cause them to be put to death. <sup>22</sup>You will be hated by everyone because of my name. But whoever endures to the end, that person will be saved. <sup>23</sup>When they persecute you in this city, flee to the next, for truly I say to you, you will not have gone through the cities of Israel before the Son of Man has come.

<sup>24</sup>"A disciple is not greater than his teacher, nor a servant above his master. <sup>25</sup>It is enough for the disciple that he should be like his teacher, and the servant like his master. If they have called the master of the house Beelzebul, how much worse will be the names they call the members of his household!

<sup>26</sup>Therefore do not fear them, for there is nothing concealed that will not be revealed, and nothing hidden that will not be known. <sup>27</sup>What I tell you in the darkness, say in the daylight, and what you hear softly in your ear, proclaim upon the housetops.

<sup>28</sup>"Do not be afraid of those who kill the body but are unable to kill the soul. Instead, fear him who is able to destroy both soul and body in hell. <sup>29</sup>Are not two sparrows sold for a small coin? Yet not one of them falls to the ground without your Father's knowledge. <sup>30</sup>But even the hairs of your head are all numbered. <sup>31</sup>Do not fear. You are more valuable than many sparrows.

<sup>32</sup>Therefore everyone who confesses me before men, I will also confess before my Father who is in heaven. <sup>33</sup>But he who denies me before men, I will also deny before my Father who is in heaven.

<sup>34</sup>"Do not think that I came to bring peace upon the earth. I did not come to bring peace, but a sword. <sup>35</sup>For I came to set

a man against his father,  
and a daughter against her mother,  
and a daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law.

<sup>36</sup>A man's enemies will be those of his own household.

<sup>37</sup>He who loves father or mother more than me is not worthy of me; he who loves son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me. <sup>38</sup>He who does not pick up his cross and follow after me is not worthy of me. <sup>39</sup>He who finds his life will lose it. But he who loses his life for my sake will find it.



<sup>40</sup>"He who welcomes you welcomes me, and he who welcomes me also welcomes him who sent me."<sup>41</sup> He who welcomes a prophet in the name of a prophet will receive a prophet's reward, and he who welcomes a righteous man in the name of a righteous man will receive a righteous man's reward.

<sup>42</sup>Whoever gives to one of these little ones even a cup of cold water to drink in the name of a disciple, truly I say to you, he will in no way lose his reward."

---

## Matthew 10 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

The sending of the twelve disciples

Many verses in this chapter describe how Jesus sent the twelve disciples out. He sent them to tell his message about the kingdom of heaven. They were to tell his message only in Israel and not to share it with the Gentiles.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

The twelve disciples

The following are the lists of the twelve disciples:

In Matthew:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James son of Zebedee, John son of Zebedee, Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.

In Mark:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James the son of Zebedee and John the son of Zebedee (to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder), Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot.

In Luke:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon (who was called the Zealot), Judas the son of James, and Judas Iscariot.

Thaddaeus is probably the same person as Jude, the son of James.

"The kingdom of heaven has come near"

No one knows for sure whether the "kingdom of heaven" was present or still coming when Jesus spoke these words. English translations often use the phrase "at hand," but these words can be difficult to translate. Other versions use the phrases "is coming near" and "has come near."

### Links:

- [Matthew 10:1 Notes](#)
-

## Matthew 10:1

Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of Jesus sending out his twelve disciples to do his work.

called his twelve disciples together

"summoned his 12 disciples"

gave them authority

Be sure that the text clearly communicates that this authority was 1) to drive out unclean spirits and 2) to heal disease and sickness.

to drive them out

"to make the unclean spirits leave"

all kinds of disease and all kinds of sickness

"every disease and every sickness." The words "disease" and "sickness" are closely related but should be translated as two different words if possible. "Disease" is what causes a person to be sick. "Sickness" is the physical weakness or affliction that results from having a disease.

## Matthew 10:2

General Information:

Here the author provides the names of the twelve apostles as background information.

Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here Matthew tells the names of the twelve apostles.

twelve apostles

This is the same group as the "twelve disciples" in Matthew 10:1.

first

This is first in order, not in rank.

## Matthew 10:3

Matthew the tax collector

"Matthew, who was a tax collector"

## Matthew 10:4

the Zealot

Possible meanings are 1) "the Zealot" is a title that shows that he was part of the group of people who wanted to free the Jewish people from Roman rule. Alternate translation: "the patriot" or "the nationalist" or 2) "the Zealot" is a description that shows that he was zealous for God to be honored. Alternate translation: "the zealous one" or "the passionate one"

who would betray him

"who would betray Jesus"

## Matthew 10:5

General Information:

Although verse 5 begins by saying that he sent out the twelve, Jesus gave these instructions before he sent them out.

Connecting Statement:

Here Jesus begins to give instructions to his disciples about what they should do and expect when they go to preach.

These twelve Jesus sent out

"Jesus sent out these twelve men" or "It was these twelve men whom Jesus sent out"

sent out

Jesus sent them out for a particular purpose.

He instructed them

"He told them what they needed to do" or "He commanded them"

## Matthew 10:6

lost sheep of the house of Israel

This is a metaphor comparing the entire nation of Israel to sheep who have strayed from their shepherd.

house of Israel

This refers to the nation of Israel. Alternate translation: "people of Israel" or "descendants of Israel"

## Matthew 10:7

as you go

Here "you" is plural and refers to the twelve apostles.

The kingdom of heaven is near

The phrase "kingdom of heaven" refers to God ruling as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use the word "heaven" in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 3:2]

## Matthew 10:8

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about what they should do when they go to preach.

Heal ... raise ... cleanse ... cast out ... you have received ... give

These verbs and pronouns are plural and refer to the twelve apostles.

raise the dead

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "cause the dead to live again"

Freely you have received, freely give

Jesus did not state what the disciples had received or were to give. Some languages may require this information in the sentence. Here "freely" means that there was no payment. Alternate translation: "Freely you have received these things, freely give them to others" or "You received these things without paying, so give them to others without making them pay"

Freely you have received, freely give

Here "received" is a metaphor that represents being made able to do things, and "give" is a metaphor that represents doing things for others. Alternate translation: "Freely you have received the ability to do these things, freely do them for others" or "Freely I have made you able to do these things, freely do them for others"

## Matthew 10:9

your

This refers to the twelve apostles and so is plural.

gold, silver, or copper

These are metals out of which coins were made. This list is a metonym for money, so if the metals are unknown in your area, translate the list as "money."

belts

"money belts." A belt is a long strip of cloth or leather worn around the waist. It was often wide enough that it could be folded and used to carry money. Alternate translation: "purses" or "pouches"

## Matthew 10:10

traveling bag

This could either be any bag used to carry things on a journey, or a bag used by someone to collect food or money.

an extra tunic

Use the same word you used for "tunic" in Matthew 5:40.

laborer

worker

his food

Here "food" refers to anything a person needs. Alternate translation: "what he needs"

## Matthew 10:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about what they should do when they go out to preach.

Whatever city or village you enter

"Whenever you enter a city or village" or "When you go into any city or village"

city ... village

"large village ... small village" or "large town ... small town." See how you translated this in Matthew 9:35.

you

This is plural and refers to the twelve apostles.

worthy

A "worthy" person is a person who is willing to welcome the disciples.

stay there until you leave

The full meaning of the statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "stay in that person's house until you leave the town or village"

## Matthew 10:12

As you enter into the house, greet it

The phrase "greet it" means greet the house. A common greeting in those days was "Peace be to this house!" Here "house" represents the people who live in the house. Alternate translation: "As you enter the house, greet the people who live in it"

you

This is plural and refers to the twelve apostles.

## Matthew 10:13

your ... your

These are plural and refer to the twelve apostles.

the house is worthy ... not worthy

Here "the house" represents those who live in the house. A "worthy" person is a person who is willing to welcome the disciples. Jesus compares this person to one who is "not worthy," a person who does not welcome the disciples. Alternate translation: "the people who live in that house receive you well" or "the people who live in that house treat you well"

let your peace come upon it

The word "it" refers to the house, which represents the people who live in the house. Alternate translation: "let them receive your peace" or "let them receive the peace that you greeted them with"

if it is not worthy

The word "it" means the house. Here "house" refers to the people who live in the house. Alternate translation: "if they do not receive you well" or "if they do not treat you well"

let your peace return to you

Possible meanings are 1) if the household was not worthy, then God would hold back peace or blessings from that household or 2) if the household was not worthy, then the apostles were supposed to do something, such as asking God not to honor their greeting of peace. If your language has a similar meaning of taking back a greeting or its effects, that should be used here.

## Matthew 10:14

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about what they should do when they go to preach.

As for those who do not receive you or listen

"If no people in that house or city will receive you or listen"

you ... your

This is plural and refers to the twelve apostles.

listen to your words

Here "words" refers to what the disciples say. Alternate translation: "listen to your message" or "listen to what you have to say"

city

You should translate this the same way you did in Matthew 10:11.

shake off the dust from your feet

"shake the dust off your feet as you leave." This is a sign that God has rejected the people of that house or city.

Matthew 10:15

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

it will be more bearable

"the suffering will be less"

the land of Sodom and Gomorrah

This refers to the people who lived in Sodom and Gomorrah. Alternate translation: "the people who lived in the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah"

that city

This refers to the people in the city that does not receive the apostles or listen to their message. Alternate translation: "the people of the city that does not receive you"

Matthew 10:16

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples. Here he begins to tell them about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

See, I send

The word "See" here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: "Look, I send" or "Listen, I send" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you. I send"

I send you out

Jesus is sending them out for a particular purpose.

as sheep in the midst of wolves

Sheep are defenseless animals that wolves often attack. Jesus is stating that people may harm the disciples. Alternate translation: "as sheep among people who are like dangerous wolves" or "as sheep among people who act the way dangerous animals act"

be as wise as serpents and innocent as doves

Jesus is telling the disciples they must be cautious and harmless among the people. If comparing the disciples to serpents or doves is confusing, it might be better not to state the similes. Alternate translation: "act with understanding and caution, as well as with innocence and virtue"

Matthew 10:17

Watch out for people! They will

You can translate with "because" to show how these two statements relate. Alternate translation: "Watch out for people because they will"

will deliver you up to

"will put you under the control of"

councils

local religious leaders or elders who together keep peace in the community

whip you

"beat you with a whip"

Matthew 10:18

you will be brought

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will bring you" or "they will drag you"

for my sake

"because you belong to me" or "because you follow me"

to them and to the Gentiles

The pronoun "them" refers either to the "governors and kings" or to the Jewish accusers.

Matthew 10:19

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

When they deliver you up

"When people take you to the councils." The "people" here are the same "people" as in Matthew 10:17.

you ... you

These are plural and refer to the twelve apostles.

do not be anxious

"do not worry"

how or what you will speak

"how you are to speak or what you are to say." The two ideas may be combined: "what you are to say"

for what to say will be given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for the Holy Spirit will tell you what to say"

at that time

"right then" or "at that time"

Matthew 10:20

you ... your

These are plural and refer to the twelve apostles.

the Spirit of your Father

If necessary, this can be translated as "the Spirit of God your heavenly Father" or a footnote can be added to make it clear that this refers to God the Holy Spirit and not to the spirit of an earthly father.

Father

This is an important title for God.

in you

"through you"

Matthew 10:21

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

Brother will deliver up brother to death

"One brother will deliver up his brother to death" or "Brothers will deliver up their brothers to death." Jesus speaks of something that will happen many times.

deliver up brother to death

The abstract noun "death" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "hand brother over to authorities who will execute him"

a father his child

These words can be translated as a complete sentence. Alternate translation: "fathers will deliver up their children to death"

rise up against

"rebel against" or "turn against"

cause them to be put to death

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "have them put to death" or "have the authorities execute them"

Matthew 10:22

You will be hated by everyone

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Everyone will hate you" or "All people will hate you"

You

This is plural and refers to the twelve disciples.

because of my name

Here "name" refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: "because of me" or "because you trust in me"

whoever endures

"whoever stays faithful"

to the end

It is not clear whether the "end" means when a person dies, when the persecution ends, or the end of the age when God shows himself to be king. The main point is that they endure as long as necessary.

that person will be saved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will deliver that person"

Matthew 10:23

in this city

Here "this" does not refer to a specific city. Alternate translation: "in one city"

flee to the next

"flee to the next city"

truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

before the Son of Man has

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "before I, the Son of Man, have"

has come

"arrives"

Matthew 10:24

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

A disciple is not greater than his teacher, nor a servant above his master

Jesus is using a proverb to teach his disciples a general truth. Jesus is emphasizing that the disciples should not expect people to treat them any better than the people treat Jesus.

A disciple is not greater than his teacher

"A disciple is always less important than his teacher" or "A teacher is always more important than his disciple"

nor a servant above his master

"and a servant is always less important than his master" or "and a master is always more important than his servant"

Matthew 10:25

It is enough for the disciple that he should be like his teacher

"The disciple should be satisfied to become like his teacher"

be like his teacher

If necessary, you can make explicit how the disciple becomes like the teacher. Alternate translation: "know as much as his teacher knows"

the servant like his master

If necessary, you can make explicit how the servant becomes like the master. Alternate translation: "the servant should be satisfied to become only as important as his master"

If they have called the master ... how much worse ... they call ... the members of his household

Again Jesus is emphasizing that since people have mistreated him, his disciples should expect people to treat them the same or worse.

how much worse will be the names they call the members of his household

"the names that they call the members of his household will certainly be much worse" or "they will certainly call the members of his household much worse names"

If they have called

"Since people have called"

the master of the house

Jesus is using this as a metaphor for himself.

Beelzebul

This name can either be 1) transcribed directly as "Beelzebul" or 2) translated with its original, intended meaning of "Satan."

his household

This is a metaphor for Jesus's disciples.

Matthew 10:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

do not fear them

Here "them" refers to the people who mistreat followers of Jesus.

there is nothing concealed that will not be revealed, and nothing hidden that will not be known

Both of these statements mean the same thing. Being concealed or hidden represents being kept secret, and being revealed represents being made known. Jesus is emphasizing that God will make all things known. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will reveal the things that people hide"

Matthew 10:27

What I tell you in the darkness, say in the daylight, and what you hear softly in your ear, proclaim upon the housetops

Both of these statements mean the same thing. Jesus is emphasizing that the disciples should tell everyone what he tells the disciples in private. Alternate translation: "Tell people in the daylight what I tell you in the darkness, and proclaim upon the housetops what you hear softly in your ear"

What I tell you in the darkness, say in the daylight

Here "darkness" is a metonym for "night" which is a metonym for "private." Here "daylight" is a metonym for "public." Alternate translation: "What I tell you privately at night, say in public in the daylight"

what you hear softly in your ear

This is a way of referring to whispering. Alternate translation: "what I whisper to you"

proclaim upon the housetops

Housetops where Jesus lived were flat, and people far away could hear anyone speaking with a loud voice from one. Here "housetops" refers to any place where all people can hear. Alternate translation: "speak loudly in a public place for all to hear"

Matthew 10:28

General Information:

Here Jesus also begins to give reasons why his disciples should not be afraid of the persecution they might experience.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go to preach.

Do not be afraid of those who kill the body but are unable to kill the soul

This is not distinguishing between people who cannot kill the soul and people who can kill the soul. No person can kill the soul. Alternate translation: "Do not be afraid of people. They can kill the body, but they cannot kill the soul"

kill the body

This means to cause physical death. If these words are awkward, they can be translated as "kill you" or "kill other people."

body

the part of a person that can be touched, as opposed to the soul or spirit

kill the soul

This means to harm people after they have physically died.

soul

the part of a person that cannot be touched and that lives on after the physical body dies



fear him who is able

You can add "because" to clarify why people should fear God. Alternate translation: "fear God because he is able"

Matthew 10:29

Are not two sparrows sold for a small coin?

Jesus states this proverb as a question to teach his disciples. Alternate translation: "Think about the sparrows. They have so little value that you can buy two of them for only one small coin."

sparrows

These are very small, seed-eating birds. Alternate translation: "small birds"

a small coin

This is often translated as the least valuable coin available in your country. It refers to a copper coin worth about one-sixteenth of a day's wage for a laborer. Alternate translation: "very little money"

not one of them falls to the ground without your Father's knowledge

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "your Father knows when every one of them falls to the ground"

Father

This is an important title for God.

Matthew 10:30

even the hairs of your head are all numbered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God knows even how many hairs are on your head"

numbered

"counted"

Matthew 10:31

You are more valuable than many sparrows

"God values you more than many sparrows"

Matthew 10:32

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the reasons why they should not be afraid of the persecution that they might experience.

everyone who confesses me ... I will also confess before my Father

"whoever confesses me ... I will also confess before my Father" or "if anyone confesses me ... I will also confess him before my Father"

confesses me before men

"tells others that he is my disciple" or "acknowledges before other people that he is loyal to me"

I will also confess before my Father who is in heaven

You can make explicit the information that is understood. Alternate translation: "I will also acknowledge before my Father who is in heaven that that person belongs to me"

my Father who is in heaven

"my heavenly Father"

Father

This is an important title for God.

Matthew 10:33

he who denies me ... I will also deny before my Father

"whoever denies me ... I will also deny before my Father" or "if anyone denies me ... I will also deny him before my Father"

denies me before men

"denies to other people that he is loyal to me" or "refuses to acknowledge to others that he is my disciple"

I will also deny before my Father who is in heaven

You can make explicit the information that is understood. Alternate translation: "I will deny before my Father who is in heaven that this person belongs to me"

## Matthew 10:34

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the reasons why they should not be afraid of the persecution that they might experience.

Do not think

"Do not suppose" or "You must not think"

upon the earth

This refers to the people who live on the earth. Alternate translation: "to the people of the earth" or "to people"

a sword

This refers to division, fighting, and killing among people.

## Matthew 10:35

to set ... against

"to cause ... to fight against"

a man against his father

"a son against his father"

## Matthew 10:36

A man's enemies

"A person's enemies" or "A person's worst enemies"

those of his own household

"members of his own family"

## Matthew 10:37

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the reasons why they should not be afraid of the persecution that they might experience.

He who loves ... is not worthy

Here "he" means any person in general. Alternate translation: "Those who love ... are not worthy" or "If you love ... you are not worthy"

loves

The word for "love" here refers to "brotherly love" or "love from a friend." Alternate translation: "cares for" or "is devoted to" or "is fond of"

worthy of me

"deserve to belong to me" or "worthy to be my disciple"

## Matthew 10:38

pick up his cross and follow after me

"carry his cross and follow me." The cross represents suffering and death. Taking up the cross represents being willing to suffer and die. Alternate translation: "obey me even to the point of suffering and dying"

pick up

"take up" or "pick up and carry"

## Matthew 10:39

He who finds his life will lose it. But he who loses ... will find it

Jesus uses a proverb to teach his disciples. This should be translated with as few words as possible. Alternate translation: "Those who find their lives will lose them. But those who lose their lives ... will find them" or "If you find your life you will lose it. But if you lose your life ... you will find it"

finds

This is a metaphor for "keeps" or "saves." Alternate translation: "tries to keep" or "tries to save"

will lose it

This does not mean the person will die. It is a metaphor that means the person will not experience spiritual life with God. Alternate translation: "will not have true life"

who loses his life

This does not mean to die. It is a metaphor that means a person considers obeying Jesus more important than

his own life. Alternate translation: "who denies himself"

for my sake

"because he trusts me" or "on my account" or "because of me." This is the same idea as "for my sake" in Matthew 10:18.

will find it

This metaphor means the person will experience spiritual life with God. Alternate translation: "will find true life"

Matthew 10:40

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the reasons why they should not be afraid of the persecution that they might experience.

He who welcomes

This means he receives someone as a guest.

He who

The word "He" refers to anyone in general. Alternate translation: "Whoever" or "Anyone who" or "The one who"

you

This is plural and refers to the twelve apostles to whom Jesus is speaking.

He who welcomes you welcomes me

Jesus means that when someone welcomes you, it is like welcoming him. Alternate translation: "When someone welcomes you, it is like he is welcoming me" or "If someone welcomes you, it is as if he were welcoming me"

he who welcomes me also welcomes him who sent me

This means that when someone welcomes Jesus, it is like welcoming God. Alternate translation: "When someone welcomes me, it is like he is welcoming God the Father who sent me" or "If someone welcomes me, it is as if he were welcoming God the Father who sent me"

Matthew 10:41

in the name of a prophet

"because that prophet is a prophet" or "because he knows that that person is a prophet." That is, the one who welcomes will receive the reward because he knew that the person he was welcoming was a prophet.

a prophet's reward

This refers to the reward that God gives the prophet, not to the reward that a prophet gives to another person.

in the name of a righteous man

"because that righteous man is a righteous man" or "because he knows that that person is righteous." That is, the one who welcomes will receive the reward because he knew that the person he was welcoming was a righteous man.

a righteous man's reward

This refers to the reward God gives to a righteous person, not a reward that a righteous person gives to another person.

Matthew 10:42

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes instructing his disciples about what they should do and expect when they go to preach.

Whoever gives

"Anyone who gives"

one of these little ones

"one of these lowly ones" or "the least important of these." The phrase "one of these" here refers to one of Jesus's disciples.

in the name of a disciple

"because that disciple" or "because he knows that that person is a disciple." That is, the one who welcomes will receive the reward because he knew that the person he was welcoming was a disciple.

truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

he will ... his reward

Here "he" and "his" refer to the one who is giving.

---

he will in no way lose

"God will not deny him." This has nothing to do with having a possession taken away. It can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "God will certainly give him"

**11** <sup>1</sup>It came about that when Jesus had finished instructing his twelve disciples, he departed from there to teach and preach in their cities.<sup>2</sup> Now when John heard in the prison about the deeds of the Christ, he sent a message by his disciples<sup>3</sup> and said to him, "Are you the one who is coming, or should we look for another?"

<sup>4</sup>Jesus answered and said to them, "Go and report to John what you see and hear.<sup>5</sup> The blind are receiving sight, the lame are walking, lepers are being cleansed, the deaf are hearing again, the dead are being raised back to life, and the gospel is being preached to the poor.<sup>6</sup> Blessed is anyone who does not stumble because of me."

<sup>7</sup>As these men went on their way, Jesus began to say to the crowds about John, "What did you go out in the desert to see—a reed being shaken by the wind?<sup>8</sup> But what did you go out to see—a man dressed in soft clothing? Really, those who wear soft clothing live in kings' houses.

<sup>9</sup>But what did you go out to see—a prophet? Yes, I say to you, and much more than a prophet.<sup>10</sup> This is he of whom it was written,

'See, I am sending my messenger before your face,  
who will prepare your way before you.'

<sup>11</sup>Truly I say to you that among those born of women, there has not arisen anyone greater than John the Baptist. Yet the least important person in the kingdom of heaven is greater than he is.<sup>12</sup> From the days of John the Baptist until now, the kingdom of heaven suffers violence, and men of violence take it by force.

<sup>13</sup>For all the prophets and the law have been prophesying until John;<sup>14</sup> and if you are willing to accept it, he is Elijah who was to come.<sup>15</sup> He who has ears to hear, let him hear.

<sup>16</sup>To what should I compare this generation? It is like children sitting in the marketplaces calling out to the others,<sup>17</sup> saying:

'We played a flute for you,  
and you did not dance.  
We mourned,  
and you did not weep.'

<sup>18</sup>For John came not eating bread or drinking wine, and they say, 'He has a demon.'<sup>19</sup> The Son of Man came eating and drinking and they say, 'Look, he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!' But wisdom is justified by her deeds."

<sup>20</sup>Then Jesus began to denounce the cities in which most of his miracles were done, because they had not repented.<sup>21</sup> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the miracles had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.<sup>22</sup> But I tell you it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you.

<sup>23</sup>You, Capernaum, do you think you will be exalted to heaven? No, you will be brought down to Hades. For if in Sodom there had been done the miracles that were done in you, it would still have remained until today.<sup>24</sup> But I say to you that it will be easier for the land of Sodom in the day of judgment than for you."

<sup>25</sup>At that time Jesus said, "I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because you concealed these things from the wise and understanding, and revealed them to little children."<sup>26</sup> Yes, Father, for this was pleasing in your sight.

<sup>27</sup>All things have been entrusted to me from my Father; and no one knows the Son except the Father, and no one knows the Father except the Son and anyone to whom the Son chooses to reveal him.

<sup>28</sup>Come to me, all you who labor and are heavy burdened, and I will give you rest.<sup>29</sup> Take my yoke on you and learn from me, for I am meek and lowly in heart, and you will find rest for your souls.<sup>30</sup> For my yoke is easy and my burden is light."

---

# Matthew 11 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted material in 11:10.

Some scholars believe that [Matthew 11:20](#) begins a new stage in the ministry of Christ because of Israel's rejection of him.

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Hidden revelation

After [Matthew 11:20](#) Jesus begins to reveal information about himself and about the plans of God the Father, while hiding this information from those who reject him ([Matthew 11:25](#)).

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"The kingdom of heaven is near"

No one knows for sure whether the "kingdom of heaven" was present or still coming when John spoke these words. English translations often use the phrase "at hand," but these words can be difficult to translate. Other versions use the phrases "is coming near" and "has come near."

## Links:

- [Matthew 11:1 Notes](#)

Matthew 11:1	in their cities
General Information:	Here "their" refers to all the Jews in general.
This is the beginning of a new part of the story where Matthew tells of how Jesus responded to disciples of John the Baptist.	Matthew 11:2  Now
It came about that when	This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.
This phrase shifts the story from Jesus's teachings to what happened next. Alternate translation: "Then when" or "After"	when John heard in the prison about  This is the first mention of John being in prison. Some languages may need to state that he had been put in prison or that he was in prison. Alternate translation: "Now John had been put in prison. When he heard about" or "When John, who was in prison, heard about"
had finished instructing	
"had finished teaching" or "had finished commanding."	
his twelve disciples	he sent a message by his disciples
This refers to the twelve chosen apostles of Jesus.	John the Baptist sent his own disciples with a message to Jesus.

### Matthew 11:3

said to him

The pronoun "him" refers to Jesus.

Are you the one who is coming

"Are you the one whom we are expecting to come." This is another way to refer to the Messiah or Christ.

should we look for another

"should we be expecting someone else." The pronoun "we" refers to all Jews, not only John's disciples.

### Matthew 11:4

report to John

"tell John"

### Matthew 11:5

lepers are being cleansed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am healing lepers"

the dead are being raised back to life

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people who have died are being caused to live again" or "I am causing those who have died to become alive again" and

the gospel is being preached to the poor

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am preaching good news to the poor"

the poor

This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase. Alternate translation: "poor people"

### Matthew 11:6

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Matthew 11:7

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to talk to the crowds about John the Baptist.

What did you go out in the desert to see—a reed ... wind?

Jesus uses a question to cause the people to think about what kind of person John the Baptist is. Alternate translation: "Surely you did not go out to the desert to see a reed ... wind!"

a reed being shaken by the wind

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus mean the literal plants by the Jordan River or 2) Jesus is using a metaphor to mean a kind of person. Alternate translation: "a man who easily changes his mind and is like a reed blowing back and forth in the wind"

being shaken by the wind

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "swaying in the wind" or "blowing in the wind"

### Matthew 11:8

But what did you go out to see—a man ... clothing?

Jesus uses a question to cause the people to think about what kind of person John the Baptist is. Alternate translation: "And surely you did not go out to the desert to see a man ... clothing!"

dressed in soft clothing

"wearing expensive clothing." Rich people wore this kind of clothing.

Really

This word adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: "Indeed"

kings' houses

"kings' palaces"

Matthew 11:9

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to talk to the crowds about John the Baptist.

But what did you go out to see—a prophet?

Jesus uses a question to make the people think about what kind of man John the Baptist is. Alternate translation: "But surely you went out to the desert to see a prophet!"

Yes, I say to you,

"I say to you yes,"

much more than a prophet

This can be translated as a complete sentence. Alternate translation: "the person you saw was much more than a prophet"

much more than

much more important than

Matthew 11:10

General Information:

Here, Jesus quotes the prophet Malachi to show that the life and ministry of John the Baptist fulfilled prophecy.

This is he of whom it was written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This is what the prophet Malachi wrote long ago about John the Baptist"

I am sending my messenger

The pronouns "I" and "my" refer to God. Malachi is quoting what God said.

before your face

Here "your" is singular, because God was speaking to the Messiah in the quotation. Also, "face" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "in front of you" or "to go ahead of you"

prepare your way before you

This is a metaphor that means the messenger will prepare the people to receive the Messiah's message.

Matthew 11:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to talk to the crowds about John the Baptist.

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

among those born of women, there has not arisen anyone greater than John the Baptist

The word "arisen" is a metaphor for being active, referring here to John's activity as a prophet. Alternate translation: "no one born of women has been a greater prophet than John the Baptist"

among those born of women

Even though Adam and Eve were not born of a woman, this is a way of referring to all humans. Alternate translation: "out of all people who have ever lived"

the least important person in the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in Matthew. If possible, try to keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "the least important person under the rule of our God in heaven"

is greater than he is

"is more important than John is"

Matthew 11:12

From the days of John the Baptist

"From the time John began preaching his message." The word "days" probably refers here to a period of months or even years.

the kingdom of heaven suffers violence, and men of violence take it by force

There are various possible interpretations of this verse. The UDB assumes that it means that some people want



to use God's kingdom for their own selfish purposes and that they are willing to use force against other people to accomplish this. Other versions assume a positive interpretation, that the call to enter the kingdom of God has become so urgent that people must act in an extreme manner in order to answer that call and to resist the temptation to sin further. A third interpretation is that violent people are harming God's people and trying to stop God from ruling.

Matthew 11:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to talk to the crowds about John the Baptist.

all the prophets and the law have been prophesying until John

Here "prophets and the law" refer to the things that the prophets and Moses wrote in scripture. Alternate translation: "these are the things that the prophets and Moses have prophesied through the scriptures until the time of John the Baptist"

Matthew 11:14

if you

Here "you" is plural and refers to the crowd.

he is Elijah who was to come

The word "he" refers to John the Baptist. This does not mean John the Baptist is literally Elijah. Jesus means John the Baptist fulfills the prophecy about "Elijah, who is to come" or the next Elijah. Alternate translation: "when the prophet Malachi said that Elijah would return, he was speaking about John the Baptist"

Matthew 11:15

He who has ears to hear, let him hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "ears to hear" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. Alternate translation: "Let the one who is willing to listen, listen" or "The one who is willing to understand, let him understand and obey"

He who has ... let him hear

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. Alternate translation: "You who have ... listen"

Matthew 11:16

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to talk to the crowds about John the Baptist.

To what should I compare this generation?

Jesus uses a question to introduce a comparison between the people of that day and what children might say in the marketplace. Alternate translation: "This is what this generation is like"

this generation

"the people living now" or "these people" or "you people of this generation"

marketplaces

large, open-air areas where people buy and sell items

Matthew 11:17

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues the parable that begins with the words "It is like" in verse 16.

saying ... and you did not weep

Jesus uses a parable to describe the people who were alive at that time. He compares them to a group of children who are trying to get the other children to play with them. However, no matter what they do, the other children will not join them. Jesus means that it does not matter if God sends someone like John the Baptist, who lives in the desert and fasts, or someone like Jesus, who celebrates with sinners and does not fast. The people, most specifically the Pharisees and religious leaders, still remain stubborn and refuse to accept God's truth.

We played a flute for you

"We" refers to the children sitting in the marketplace. Here "you" is plural and refers to the other group of children.

and you did not dance

"but you did not dance to the happy music"

We mourned

This means they sang sad songs like women did at funerals.

and you did not weep

"but you did not cry with us"

Matthew 11:18

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes talking to the crowds about John the Baptist.

not eating bread or drinking wine

Here "bread" refers to food. It does not mean that John never ate food. It means he fasted often, and when he ate, he did not eat good, expensive food. Alternate translation: "frequently fasting and not drinking alcohol" or "not eating fancy food and not drinking wine"

they say, 'He has a demon.'

This can be translated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "they say that he has a demon." or "they accuse him of having a demon."

they say

All occurrences of "they" refer to the people of that generation, and most specifically to the Pharisees and religious leaders.

Matthew 11:19

The Son of Man came

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, came"

came eating and drinking

This is the opposite of John's behavior. This means more than just consuming the normal amount of food and drink. It means Jesus celebrated and enjoyed good food and drink like other people did.

they say, 'Look, he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard ... sinners!'

This can be translated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "they say that he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard ... sinners." or "they accuse him of eating and drinking too much and of being ... sinners." If you translated "The Son of Man" as "I, the Son of man," you can state this as an indirect statement and use the first person. Alternate translation: "they say that I am a gluttonous man and a drunkard ... sinners."

he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard

"he is a greedy eater and a drunk" or "he continually eats too much food and drinks too much alcohol"

But wisdom is justified by her deeds

This is a proverb that Jesus applies to this situation, because the people who rejected both him and John were not being wise. Jesus and John the Baptist are the wise ones, and the results of their deeds prove it.

wisdom is justified by her deeds

Here "wisdom" is described as a woman who is proven to be right by what she does. Jesus means that the results of a wise person's actions prove that he is truly wise. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the results of a wise person's deeds prove that he is wise"

Matthew 11:20

General Information:

Jesus begins to denounce the people of the cities where he previously did miracles.

denounce the cities

Here "the cities" refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: "rebuked the people of the cities" or "accuse the people of the cities of doing wrong"

cities

"towns"

in which most of his miracles were done

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "in which he did most of his miracles"

miracles

"mighty works" or "works of power"

Matthew 11:21

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida!

Jesus speaks as if the people of the cities of Chorazin and Bethsaida were there listening to him, but they were not.

Woe to you

"How terrible it will be for you." Here "you" is singular and refers to the city. If it is more natural to refer to the people instead of a city, you could translate with a plural "you."

Chorazin ... Bethsaida ... Tyre ... Sidon

The names of these cities are used as metonyms for the people living in these cities.

If the miracles ... in sackcloth and ashes

Jesus is describing a situation that could have happened in the past, but it did not.

If the miracles had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you

This can be translated with active forms. Alternate translation: "If I had done the miracles among the people of Tyre and Sidon that I have done among you"

which were done in you

Here the "you" is plural and refers to Chorazin and Bethsaida. If it is more natural for your language, you could use a dual "you" to refer to the two cities, or a plural "you" to refer to the people of the cities.

they would have repented long ago

The pronoun "they" refers to the people of Tyre and Sidon.

would have repented

"would have shown they were sorry for their sins"

Matthew 11:22

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you

Here "Tyre and Sidon" refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: "God will show more mercy to the people of Tyre and Sidon in the day of judgment than to you" or "God will punish you more severely at the day of judgment than the people of Tyre and Sidon"

than for you

Here the "you" is plural and refers to Chorazin and Bethsaida. If it is more natural for your language, you could use a dual "you" to refer to the two cities, or a plural "you" to refer to the people of the cities. The implied information can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "than for you, because you did not repent and believe in me, even though you saw me do miracles"

Matthew 11:23

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to rebuke the people of the cities where he previously did miracles.

You, Capernaum

Jesus now speaks to the people in the city of Capernaum as if they were listening to him, but they were not. The pronoun "you" is singular and refers to Capernaum throughout these two verses.

You

All occurrences of "you" are singular. If it is more natural to refer to the people of the city, you could translate with a plural "you."

Capernaum ... Sodom

The names of these cities refer to the people living in Capernaum and in Sodom.

do you think you will be exalted to heaven?

"do you think you will be raised up to heaven?" Jesus uses a rhetorical question to rebuke the people of Capernaum for their pride. It can be stated in active form: Alternate translation: "you cannot raise yourself up to heaven!" or "the praise of other people will not

raise you up to heaven!" or "God will not bring you up to heaven like you think he will!"

Father

you will be brought down to Hades

This is an important title for God.

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will send you down to Hades"

Lord of heaven and earth

For if in Sodom ... it would still have remained until today

"Lord who rules over heaven and earth." The phrase "heaven and earth" is a merism that refers to all people and things in the universe. Alternate translation: "Lord who rules over the whole universe"

Jesus is describing a situation that could have happened in the past, but it did not.

you concealed these things ... and revealed them

if in Sodom there had been done the miracles that were done in you

It is not clear what is meant by "these things." If your language needs to specify what is meant, an alternative translation might be best. Alternate translation: "you concealed these truths ... and revealed them"

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "if I had done the miracles among the people of Sodom that I have done among you"

you concealed these things from

miracles

"you hid these things from" or "you have not made these things known to." This verb is the opposite of "revealed."

"mighty works" or "works of power"

it would still have remained

from the wise and understanding

The pronoun "it" refers to the city of Sodom.

These nominal adjectives can be translated as adjectives. Alternate translation: "from people who are wise and understanding"

Matthew 11:24

I say to you

the wise and understanding

This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

Jesus is using irony. He does not think these people are really wise. Alternate translation: "people who think they are wise and understanding"

it will be easier for the land of Sodom in the day of judgment than for you

revealed them

Here "land of Sodom" refer to the people who lived there. Alternate translation: "God will show more mercy to the people of Sodom in the day of judgment than to you" or "God will punish you more severely in the day of judgment than the people of Sodom"

"made them known." The pronoun "them" refers to "these things" earlier in this verse.

than for you

to little children

The implicit information can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "than for you, because you did not repent and believe in me, even though you saw me do miracles"

Jesus compares ignorant people to little children. Jesus is emphasizing that many of those who believe him either are not well educated or do not think of themselves as wise.

Matthew 11:25

Matthew 11:26

General Information:

General Information:

Here, Jesus prays to his heavenly Father while still in the presence of the crowd.

Here, Jesus continues praying to his heavenly Father while still in the presence of the crowd.

for this was pleasing in your sight

The phrase "in your sight" is a metonym that stands for how a person considers something. Alternate translation: "for you considered it good to do this"

Matthew 11:27

General Information:

Here, Jesus begins to address the people again.

All things have been entrusted to me from my Father

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "My Father has entrusted all things to me" or "My Father has given everything over to me"

All things

Possible meanings are 1) God the Father has revealed everything about himself and his kingdom to Jesus or 2) God has given all authority to Jesus.

my Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

no one knows the Son except the Father

This double negative emphasizes that the Father is the only one who knows the Son. Alternate translation: "the only one who knows the Son is the Father"

no one knows

The word "knows" here means more than just being acquainted with someone. It means knowing someone intimately because of having a special relationship with him.

the Son

Jesus was referring to himself in the third person.

Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

no one knows the Father except the Son

"only the Son knows the Father"

Matthew 11:28

all you

All occurrences of "you" are plural.

who labor and are heavy burdened

Jesus speaks of people being discouraged in their attempts to obey all the laws as if those laws were heavy burdens and the people were laboring to carry them. Alternate translation: "who are discouraged from trying so hard" or "Who are discouraged from trying so hard to obey the laws perfectly"

I will give you rest

"I will allow you to rest from your labor and burden"

Matthew 11:29

Take my yoke on you

Jesus continues the metaphor. Jesus is inviting the people to become his disciples and follow him.

I am meek and lowly in heart

Here "meek" and "lowly in heart" mean basically the same thing. Jesus combines them to emphasize that he will be much kinder than the religious leaders. Alternate translation: "I am gentle and humble" or "I am very gentle"

lowly in heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's inner being. The phrase "lowly in heart" is an idiom that means "humble." Alternate translation: "humble"

you will find rest for your souls

Here "soul" refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: "you will find rest for yourselves" or "you will be able to rest"

Matthew 11:30

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes speaking to the crowd.

For my yoke is easy and my burden is light

my burden is light

Both of these phrases mean the same thing. Jesus is emphasizing that it is easier to obey him than it is the Jewish law. Alternate translation: "For what I place on you, you will be able to carry because it is light"

---

The word "light" here is the opposite of heavy, not the opposite of dark.

**12** <sup>1</sup>At that time Jesus went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. His disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them.<sup>2</sup>But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to Jesus, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath."

<sup>3</sup>But Jesus said to them, "Have you never read what David did when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?<sup>4</sup>He went into the house of God and ate the bread of the presence, which was unlawful for him to eat and unlawful for those who were with him, but lawful only for the priests.

<sup>5</sup>Have you not read in the law that on the Sabbath the priests in the temple profane the Sabbath but are guiltless?

<sup>6</sup>But I say to you that one greater than the temple is here.

<sup>7</sup>If you had known what this meant, 'I desire mercy and not sacrifice,' you would not have condemned the guiltless.<sup>8</sup>For the Son of Man is Lord of the Sabbath."

<sup>9</sup>Then Jesus left from there and went into their synagogue.<sup>10</sup>Behold, there was a man who had a withered hand. The Pharisees asked Jesus, saying, "Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath?" so that they might accuse him of sinning.

<sup>11</sup>Jesus said to them, "What man would there be among you, who, if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a pit on the Sabbath, would not take hold of it and raise it out?<sup>12</sup>How much more valuable, then, is a man than a sheep! Therefore it is lawful to do good on the Sabbath."

<sup>13</sup>Then Jesus said to the man, "Stretch out your hand." He stretched it out, and it was restored to health, just like the other hand.<sup>14</sup>But the Pharisees went out and plotted against him. They were seeking how they might destroy him.

<sup>15</sup>Jesus, knowing this, withdrew from there. Many people followed him, and he healed them all.<sup>16</sup>He commanded them not to make him known to others,<sup>17</sup>that it might be fulfilled, what had been said through Isaiah the prophet, saying,

<sup>18</sup> "See, my servant whom I have chosen;  
my beloved one, in whom my soul is well pleased.  
I will put my Spirit upon him,  
and he will proclaim justice to the Gentiles.

<sup>19</sup> He will not strive nor cry aloud;  
neither will anyone hear his voice in the streets.

<sup>20</sup> He will not break any bruised reed;  
he will not quench any smoking flax,  
until he leads justice to victory,

<sup>21</sup> and in his name the Gentiles will have hope."

<sup>22</sup>Then someone blind and mute, possessed by a demon, was brought to Jesus. He healed him, with the result that the mute man spoke and saw.<sup>23</sup>All the crowds were amazed and said, "Can this man be the Son of David?"

<sup>24</sup>But when the Pharisees heard of this miracle, they said, "This man does not cast out demons except by Beelzebul, the prince of the demons."

<sup>25</sup>But Jesus knew their thoughts and said to them, "Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate, and every city or house divided against itself will not stand.

<sup>26</sup>If Satan drives out Satan, he is divided against himself. How then will his kingdom stand?<sup>27</sup>And if I drive out demons by Beelzebul, by whom do your sons drive them out? For this reason they will be your judges.

<sup>28</sup>But if I drive out demons by the Spirit of God, then the kingdom of God has come upon you.<sup>29</sup>How can anyone enter the house of the strong man and take away his belongings without tying up the strong man first? Then he will steal his belongings from his house.<sup>30</sup>The one who is not with me is against me, and the one who does not gather with me scatters.

<sup>31</sup>Therefore I say to you, every sin and blasphemy will be forgiven men, but the blasphemy against the Spirit will not be forgiven.<sup>32</sup>Whoever speaks any word against the Son of Man, that will be forgiven him. But whoever speaks against the Holy Spirit, that will not be forgiven him, neither in this world, nor in that which is to come.

<sup>33</sup>Make a tree good and its fruit good, or make the tree bad and its fruit bad, for a tree is recognized by its fruit.

<sup>34</sup>You offspring of vipers, since you are evil, how can you say good things? For out of the abundance of the heart

the mouth speaks.<sup>35</sup> The good man from the good treasure of his heart produces what is good, and the evil man from the evil treasure of his heart produces what is evil.

<sup>36</sup>“I say to you that in the day of judgment people will give an account for every idle word they will have said.”<sup>37</sup> For by your words you will be justified, and by your words you will be condemned.”

<sup>38</sup>Then certain scribes and Pharisees answered Jesus and said, “Teacher, we wish to see a sign from you.”

<sup>39</sup>But Jesus answered and said to them, “An evil and adulterous generation seeks for a sign. But no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah the prophet.”<sup>40</sup> For as Jonah was three days and three nights in the stomach of the big fish, so will the Son of Man be three days and three nights in the heart of the earth.

<sup>41</sup>The men of Nineveh will stand up at the judgment with this generation of people and will condemn it. For they repented at the preaching of Jonah, and see, someone greater than Jonah is here.

<sup>42</sup>The Queen of the South will rise up at the judgment with the men of this generation and condemn them. She came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon, and see, someone greater than Solomon is here.

<sup>43</sup>When an unclean spirit has gone away from a man, it passes through waterless places and looks for rest, but does not find it.<sup>44</sup> Then it says, ‘I will return to my house from which I came.’ Having returned, it finds the house empty—it had been swept clean and put in order.<sup>45</sup> Then it goes and takes along with it seven other spirits more evil than itself, and they all come in to live there. Then the final condition of that man becomes worse than the first. It will be just like that with this evil generation.”

<sup>46</sup>While Jesus was still speaking to the crowds, behold, his mother and his brothers stood outside, seeking to speak to him.<sup>47</sup> Someone said to him, “Look, your mother and your brothers stand outside, seeking to speak to you.”

<sup>48</sup>But Jesus answered and said to him who told him, “Who is my mother and who are my brothers?”<sup>49</sup> Then he stretched out his hand toward his disciples and said, “See, here are my mother and my brothers!”<sup>50</sup> For whoever does the will of my Father who is in heaven, that person is my brother, and sister, and mother.”

---

## Matthew 12 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 12:18-21, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The Sabbath

This chapter has much to say about how God's people are to obey the Sabbath. Jesus said that the rules that the Pharisees made up did not help people obey the Sabbath the way God wanted them to. (See: sabbath)

#### "Blasphemy against the Spirit"

No one knows for sure what actions people perform or what words they say when they commit this sin. However, they probably insult the Holy Spirit and his work. Part of the Holy Spirit's work is to make people understand that they are sinners and that they need to have God forgive them. Therefore, anyone who does not try to stop sinning is probably committing blasphemy against the Spirit. (See: blasphemy and holyspirit)

### Links:

- [Matthew 12:1 Notes](#)



## Matthew 12:1

### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story where Matthew tells of growing opposition to Jesus's ministry. Here, the Pharisees criticize his disciples for picking grain on the Sabbath.

At that time

This marks a new part of the story. Alternate translation: "A little later"

grainfields

This is a place to plant grain. If wheat is unknown and "grain" is too general, then you can use "fields of the plant they made bread from."

pluck heads of grain and eat them

Picking grain in others' fields and eating it was not considered stealing. The question was whether one could do this otherwise lawful activity on the Sabbath.

to pluck heads of grain and eat them

"to pick some of the wheat and eat it" or "to pick some of the grain and eat it"

heads of grain

The heads of grain are the topmost part of the wheat plant. It holds the mature grain or seeds of the plant.

## Matthew 12:2

do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath

Picking grain in others' fields and eating it was not considered stealing. The question was whether one could do this otherwise lawful activity on the Sabbath.

the Pharisees

This does not mean all of the Pharisees. Alternate translation: "some Pharisees"

See, your disciples

"Look, your disciples." The Pharisees use this word to draw attention to what the disciples are doing.

## Matthew 12:3

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus responds to the Pharisees' criticism.

to them

"to the Pharisees"

Have you never read ... with him?

Jesus uses a question to respond to the criticism of the Pharisees. Jesus is challenging them to think about the meaning of the scriptures they have read. Alternate translation: "I know you have read about ... with him"

when he was hungry, and the men who were with him

The phrase "were hungry" is understood from the phrase "was hungry." Alternate translation: "when he was hungry and the men who were with him were hungry" or "when he and those with him were hungry"

## Matthew 12:4

the house of God

During the time of David there was no temple yet. Alternate translation: "the tabernacle" or "the place for worshipping God"

bread of the presence

This is sacred bread that priests placed before God in the tabernacle. Alternate translation: "bread that the priest placed before God" or "sacred bread"

those who were with him

"the men who were with David"

but lawful only for the priests

"but, according to the law, only the priests could eat it"

## Matthew 12:5

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to respond to the Pharisees.

Have you not read in the law that ... but are guiltless?

Jesus uses a question to respond to the criticism of the Pharisees. Jesus is challenging them to think about the meaning of what they have read in the scriptures.

Alternate translation: "Surely you have read in the law of Moses that ... but are guiltless." or "You should know that the law teaches that ... but are guiltless."

profane the Sabbath

"do on the Sabbath what the law forbids them to do on that day"

are guiltless

"God will not punish them" or "God does not consider them guilty"

Matthew 12:6

I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

one greater than the temple

"someone who is more important than the temple." Jesus was referring to himself as the one greater.

Matthew 12:7

General Information:

Here Jesus quotes the prophet Hosea to rebuke the Pharisees.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to respond to the Pharisees.

If you had known what this meant, 'I desire mercy and not sacrifice,' you would not have condemned the guiltless

Here Jesus quotes scripture. Alternate translation: "The prophet Hosea wrote this long ago: 'I desire mercy and not sacrifice.' If you had understood what this meant, you would not have condemned the guiltless"

I desire mercy and not sacrifice

In the law of Moses, God did command the Israelites to offer sacrifices. This means God considers mercy more important than the sacrifices.

I desire

The pronoun "I" refers to God.

the guiltless

This can be translated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "those who are not guilty"

Matthew 12:8

the Son of Man is

Jesus was referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, am"

is Lord of the Sabbath

"rules over the Sabbath" or "makes the laws about what people can do on the Sabbath"

Matthew 12:9

General Information:

Here the scene shifts to a later time when the Pharisees criticize Jesus for healing a man on the Sabbath.

Then Jesus left from there

"Jesus left the grainfields" or "Then Jesus left"

their synagogue

Possible meanings are 1) the word "their" refers to the Jews of that town. Alternate translation: "the synagogue" or 2) the word "their" refers to the Pharisees that Jesus had just spoken to, and this was the synagogue that they and other Jews in that town attended. The word "their" does not mean that the Pharisees owned the synagogue. Alternate translation: "the synagogue that they attended"

Matthew 12:10

Behold

The word "Behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

a man who had a withered hand

"a man who had a paralyzed hand" or "a man with a crippled hand"

The Pharisees asked Jesus, saying, "Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath?" so that they might accuse him of sinning.

"The Pharisees wanted to accuse Jesus of sinning, so they asked him, 'Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath?'"

Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath

"According to the law of Moses, may a person heal another person on the Sabbath"

so that they might accuse him of sinning

They did not just want to accuse Jesus in front of the people. The Pharisees wanted Jesus to give an answer that contradicted the law of Moses so they could take him before a judge and legally charge him with breaking the law.

Matthew 12:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus responds to the Pharisees' criticism.

What man would there be among you, who, if he had just one sheep ... would not take hold of it and raise it out?

Jesus uses a question to respond to the Pharisees. He is challenging them to think about what kind of work they do on the Sabbath. Alternate translation: "Every one of you, if you only had one sheep ... would grab the sheep and raise it out."

raise

lift

Matthew 12:12

How much more valuable, then, is a man than a sheep!

The phrase "how much more" adds emphasis to the statement. Alternate translation: "Obviously, a man is much more valuable than a sheep!" or "Just think about how much more important a man is than a sheep"

it is lawful to do good on the Sabbath

"those who do good on the Sabbath are obeying the law"

Matthew 12:13

Then Jesus said to the man, "Stretch out your hand."

This can be translated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Then Jesus commanded the man to stretch out his hand."

to the man

"to the man with the paralyzed hand" or "to the man with the crippled hand"

Stretch out your hand

"Hold out your hand" or "Extend your hand"

He stretched

"The man stretched"

it was restored to health

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it was healthy again" or "it became well again"

Matthew 12:14

plotted against him

"planned to harm Jesus"

were seeking how they might destroy him

"were discussing how they might kill Jesus"

Matthew 12:15

General Information:

This account explains how the actions of Jesus fulfilled one of the prophecies of Isaiah.

Jesus, knowing this, withdrew

"Jesus was aware of what the Pharisees were planning, so he withdrew"

withdrew from

"departed from" or "left"

## Matthew 12:16

not to make him known to others

"not to tell anyone else about him"

## Matthew 12:17

that it might be fulfilled, what

The phrase "that it might be fulfilled" can be translated as the beginning of a new sentence. If so, the previous verse should end with a period. Alternate translation: "This was to fulfill what"

what had been said through Isaiah the prophet, saying,

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what God had said long ago through the prophet Isaiah:"

## Matthew 12:18

Connecting Statement:

Here Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus's ministry fulfilled scripture.

See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

my ... I

All occurrences of these words refer to God. Isaiah is quoting what God said to him.

my beloved one, in whom my soul is well pleased

"he is my beloved one, and I am very pleased with him"

in whom my soul is well pleased

Here "soul" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "with whom I am very pleased"

he will proclaim justice to the Gentiles

The means that God's servant will tell the Gentiles that there will be justice. It can be stated clearly that God is the one who will bring about justice, and the abstract noun "justice" can be expressed as "what is right." Alternate translation: "he will announce to the nations that God will do for them what is right"

## Matthew 12:19

Connecting Statement:

Matthew continues to quote the prophet Isaiah.

neither will anyone hear his voice in the streets

Here people not hearing his voice represents him not speaking loudly. And, "in the street" is an idiom that means "publicly." Alternate translation: "he will not he shout in the cities and towns"

He ... his

All occurrences of these words refer to God's chosen servant.

## Matthew 12:20

He

All occurrences of "he" refer to God's chosen servant.

He will not break any bruised reed; he will not quench any smoking flax

Both of these statements mean the same thing. They are metaphors emphasizing that God's servant will be gentle and kind. Both "bruised reed" and "smoking flax" represent weak and hurting people. If the metaphor is confusing, you could translate the literal meaning. Alternate translation: "He will be kind to weak people, and he will be gentle to those who are hurting"

bruised reed

"damaged plant"

he will not quench any smoking flax

"he will not put out any smoking flax" or "he will not stop any smoking flax from burning"

smoking flax

This refers to a lamp wick after the flame has gone out and when it is only smoking.

flax, until

This can be translated with a new sentence: "flax. This is what he will do until"

he leads justice to victory

Leading someone to victory represents causing him to be victorious. Causing justice to be victorious represents making things right that had been wrong. Alternate translation: "he makes everything right"

Matthew 12:21

in his name the Gentiles will have hope

The Gentiles will trust him to fulfill his promises. The abstract noun "hope" can be translated here with the verbs "trust" or "confidently wait" or "confidently expect." Alternate translation: "the Gentiles will trust in his name" or "the Gentiles will confidently wait for him to fulfill his promises"

in his name

The word "his" refers to God's servant who was spoken of in [Matthew 12:18]

Matthew 12:22

General Information:

Here the scene shifts to a later time when the Pharisees accuse Jesus of healing a man by the power of Satan.

Then someone blind and mute, possessed by a demon, was brought to Jesus

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then someone brought to Jesus a man who was blind and mute because a demon was controlling him"

someone blind and mute

"someone who could not see and could not talk"

Matthew 12:23

All the crowds were amazed

"All the people who had seen Jesus heal the man were greatly surprised"

the Son of David

This is a title for the Christ or Messiah.

Son of

Here this means "descendant of."

Matthew 12:24

this miracle

This refers to the miracle of the healing of a blind, deaf, and demon-possessed man.

This man does not cast out demons except by Beelzebul ... demons

This double negative emphasizes that they think that the power of Beelzebul is the only thing that makes it possible for Jesus casts out demons. Alternate translation: "This man is only able to cast out demons because he is a servant of Beelzebul"

This man

The Pharisees avoid calling Jesus by name to show they reject him.

the prince of the demons

"the chief of the demons"

Matthew 12:25

General Information:

Here Jesus begins to respond to the Pharisees' accusation that he healed the man by the power of Satan.

Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate, and every city or house divided against itself will not stand

Jesus uses a proverb to respond to the Pharisees. Both of these statements mean the same thing. They emphasize that it would not make sense for Beelzebul to use his power to fight other demons.

Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate

Here "kingdom" refers to those who live in the kingdom. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "A kingdom will not last when its people fight among themselves"

every city or house divided against itself will not stand

Here "city" refers to the people who live there, and "house" refers to a family. Being "divided against itself" represents its people fighting each other. Alternate translation: "it ruins a city or a family when the people fight each other"

## Matthew 12:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to respond to the Pharisees' accusation that he healed the man by the power of Satan.

If Satan drives out Satan

The second use of Satan refers to the demons that serve Satan. Alternate translation: "If Satan works against his own demons"

How then will his kingdom stand?

Jesus uses this question to show the Pharisees that what they were saying was illogical. Alternate translation: "His kingdom would not be able to stand!" or "His kingdom would not last!"

## Matthew 12:27

Beelzebul

This name refers to the same person as "Satan" (verse 26).

by whom do your sons drive them out?

Jesus uses another question to challenge the Pharisees. Alternate translation: "then you must say your followers also drive out demons by the power of Beelzebul. But you know this is not true."

your sons

Jesus was speaking to the Pharisees. The phrase "your sons" refers to their followers. This was a common way of referring to those who follow teachers or leaders. Alternate translation: "your followers"

For this reason they will be your judges

"Because your followers cast out demons by the power of God, they prove that you are wrong about me."

## Matthew 12:28

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to respond to the Pharisees.

But if I

Here "if" does not mean Jesus is questioning how he drives out demons. Here Jesus uses the word to introduce a true statement. Alternate translation: "But because I"

then the kingdom of God has come upon you

"then the kingdom of God has arrived among you." Here "kingdom" refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "this means God is establishing his rule among you"

come upon you

Here "you" is plural and refers to the people of Israel.

## Matthew 12:29

How can anyone enter the house ... belongings from his house

Jesus uses a parable to continue his response to the Pharisees. Jesus means he can drive out demons because he is more powerful than Satan.

How can anyone enter ... without tying up the strong man first?

Jesus uses a question to teach the Pharisees and the crowd. Alternate translation: "No one can enter ... without tying up the strong man first." or "If a person wants to enter ... he must first tie up the strong man."

without tying up the strong man first

"without taking control of the strong man first"

Then he will steal

"The he can steal" or "Then he will be able to steal"

## Matthew 12:30

who is not with me

"who does not support me" or "who does not work with me"

is against me

"opposes me" or "works against me"

the one who does not gather with me scatters

Jesus is using a metaphor that refers to a person either gathering the flock of sheep to a shepherd or making them scatter away from the shepherd. Jesus means that a person is either helping to make people become disciples of Jesus or he is making people reject Jesus.

Matthew 12:31

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to respond to the Pharisees.

I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

say to you

Here "you" is plural. Jesus is speaking directly to the Pharisees, but he is also teaching the crowd.

every sin and blasphemy will be forgiven men

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will forgive every sin that people commit and every evil thing they say" or "God will forgive every person who sins or says evil things"

blasphemy against the Spirit will not be forgiven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will not forgive the person who speaks evil things about the Holy Spirit"

Matthew 12:32

Whoever speaks any word against the Son of Man

Here "word" refers to what someone says. Alternate translation: "If a person says anything bad about the Son of Man"

the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

that will be forgiven him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will forgive a person for that"

that will not be forgiven him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will not forgive that person"

neither in this world, nor in that which is to come

Here "this world" and "that which is to come" refer to the present life and the next life. Alternate translation: "in this life or in the next life" or "now or ever"

Matthew 12:33

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to respond to the Pharisees.

Make a tree good and its fruit good, or make the tree bad and its fruit bad

Possible meanings are 1) "If you make a tree good, its fruit will be good, and if you make the tree bad, its fruit will be bad" or 2) "If a tree is good, it will have good fruit, and if a tree is bad, it will have bad fruit." This was a proverb. People were to apply its truth to how they can know whether a person is good or bad.

good ... bad

"healthy ... diseased"

a tree is recognized by its fruit

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "people recognize a tree by its fruit" or "people know whether a tree is good or bad by looking at its fruit"

Matthew 12:34

You offspring of vipers

Here "offspring" means "having the characteristic of." Vipers are poisonous snakes that are dangerous and represent evil. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Matthew 3:7]

You ... you

These are plural and refer to the Pharisees.

how can you say good things?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the Pharisees. Alternate translation: "you cannot say good things." or "you can only say evil things."

out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks

Here "heart" is a metonym for the thoughts in a person's mind. Here "mouth" is a synecdoche that represents a person as a whole. Alternate translation: "what a person says with his mouth reveals what is in his mind"

Matthew 12:35

The good man from the good treasure of his heart produces what is good, and the evil man from the evil treasure of his heart produces what is evil

Jesus speaks about the "heart" as if it were a container that a person fills with good or evil things. This is a metaphor that means what a person says reveals what the person is truly like. If you want to keep this imagery, see the UDB. You can also translate the literal meaning. Alternate translation: "A man who is truly good will speak good things, and the man who is truly evil will speak evil things"

Matthew 12:36

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes his response to the Pharisees' accusation that he healed the man by the power of Satan.

I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

people will give an account for

"God will ask people about" or "people will have to explain to God"

every idle word they will have said

Here "word" refers to something that someone says. This refers to statements that do no good. This is a metonym for statements made by people who are lazy or otherwise not doing anything good. Alternate translation: "every idle thing they will said"

idle

empty, useless, careless

Matthew 12:37

you will be justified ... you will be condemned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will justify you ... God will condemn you"

Matthew 12:38

Connecting Statement:

The dialogue in these verses happens immediately after Jesus responded to the Pharisees' accusation that he healed a man by the power of Satan.

we wish

"we want"

to see a sign from you

You can make explicit why they want to see a sign. Alternate translation: "to see a sign from you that proves what you say is true"

Matthew 12:39

General Information:

Here Jesus begins to rebuke the scribes and Pharisees.

An evil and adulterous generation seeks for a sign ... given to it

Jesus is speaking to the Jews of his generation. Alternate translation: "You are an evil and adulterous generation who demands signs from me ... given to you"

adulterous generation

Here "adulterous" is a metaphor for people who are not faithful to God. Alternate translation: "unfaithful generation" or "godless generation"

no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah

This double negative emphasizes that the sign of Jonah is the only sign that will be given. Alternate translation: "The only sign that will be given to it is the sign of Jonah"



no sign will be given to it

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will not give it a sign"

the sign of Jonah

"what happened to Jonah" or "the miracle that God did for Jonah"

Matthew 12:40

three days and three nights

This means complete 24-hour periods. Alternate translation: "three complete days"

the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

in the heart of the earth

This means inside a physical grave.

Matthew 12:41

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to rebuke the scribes and Pharisees.

The men of Nineveh

"The citizens of Nineveh"

at the judgment

"on judgment day" or "when God judges people"

this generation of people

This refers to the Jews living during the time Jesus was preaching.

and will condemn it

Possible meanings are 1) "condemn" here represents accusing. Alternate translation: "and will accuse this generation of people" or 2) God will condemn this generation of people because they did not repent as the people of Nineveh had. Alternate translation: "and God will condemn this generation"

and see

"and look." This emphasizes what Jesus says next.

someone greater

"someone more important"

someone

Jesus is speaking about himself.

than Jonah is here

You can make explicit the implicit meaning of Jesus's statement. Alternate translation: "than Jonah is here, yet you still have not repented, which is why God will condemn you"

Matthew 12:42

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to rebuke the scribes and Pharisees.

Queen of the South

This refers to the Queen of Sheba. Sheba was a land south of Israel.

will rise up at the judgment

"will stand up at the judgment"

at the judgment

"on judgment day" or "when God judges people." See how you translated this in Matthew 12:41.

this generation

This refers to the Jews living during the time Jesus was preaching.

and condemn them

See how you translated a similar statement in [Matthew 12:41]

She came from the ends of the earth

Here "ends of the earth" is an idiom that means "far away." Alternate translation: "She came from very far away"

She came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon

This statement explains why the Queen of the South will condemn the people of Jesus's generation.  
Alternate translation: "For she came"

and see

"and look." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.  
someone greater

"someone more important"

someone

Jesus is speaking about himself.

than Solomon is here

You can make explicit the implicit meaning of Jesus's statement. Alternate translation: "than Solomon is here, yet you do not listen. That is why God will condemn you"

Matthew 12:43

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to rebuke the scribes and Pharisees. He begins to tell a parable.

waterless places

"dry places" or "places where no people live"

does not find it

Here "it" refers to rest.

Matthew 12:44

Then it says, 'I will return to my house from which I came.'

This can be translated as a statement rather than a quotation. Alternate translation: "So, the unclean spirit decides to return to the house from which it came."

to my house from which I came

This is a metaphor for the person in whom the unclean spirit was living. Alternate translation: "to the place I left"

it finds the house empty

Again, "house" is a metaphor for the person in whom the unclean spirit was living. Here, "empty" suggests that no one is living in the house. There is no other spirit living in the person.

it had been swept clean and put in order.

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone had swept the house clean and has put everything in the house where it belongs"

Matthew 12:45

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes the parable that he began with the words "When an unclean spirit" in verse 43.

It will be just like that with this evil generation

This means that if the people of Jesus's generation do not believe him and become his disciples, they will be in a worse situation than they were before he came.

Matthew 12:46

General Information:

The arrival of Jesus's mother and brothers becomes an opportunity for him to describe his spiritual family.

behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new people in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

his mother

This is Mary, Jesus's human mother.

his brothers

These are probably other children born to Mary, but it is possible that the word "brothers" here refers to Jesus's cousins.

seeking to speak

"wanting to speak"

#### Matthew 12:47

Someone said to him, "Look, your mother and your brothers stand outside, seeking to speak to you."

This can be translated as an indirect quotation.  
Alternate translation: "Someone told Jesus that his mother and brothers were outside and wanted to speak to him."

#### Matthew 12:48

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story that began in Matthew 12:1, where Matthew tells of growing opposition to Jesus's ministry.

who told him

The details of the message the person told Jesus are understood and not repeated here. Alternate translation: "who told him that his mother and brothers wanted to speak to him"

Who is my mother and who are my brothers?

Jesus uses these questions to teach the people.  
Alternate translation: "I will tell you who are really my mother and brothers"

#### Matthew 12:49

See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

here are my mother and my brothers

This is a metaphor that means Jesus's disciples belong to Jesus's spiritual family. This is more important than belonging to his physical family.

#### Matthew 12:50

whoever does

"anyone who does"

Father

This is an important title for God.

that person is my brother, and sister, and mother

This is a metaphor meaning that those who obey God belong to Jesus's spiritual family. This is more important than belonging to his physical family.

**13** <sup>1</sup>On that day Jesus went out of the house and sat beside the sea. <sup>2</sup>A very large crowd gathered around him, so he got into a boat and sat in it while the whole crowd stood on the beach.

<sup>3</sup>Then Jesus said many things to them in parables. He said, "Behold, a farmer went out to sow seed. <sup>4</sup>As he sowed, some seeds fell beside the road, and the birds came and devoured them. <sup>5</sup>Other seeds fell on rocky ground, where they did not have much soil. Immediately they sprang up because the soil had no depth. <sup>6</sup>But when the sun had risen, they were scorched because they had no root, and they withered away.

<sup>7</sup>Other seeds fell among the thorn plants. The thorn plants grew up and choked them. <sup>8</sup>Other seeds fell on good soil and produced a crop, some one hundred times as much, some sixty, and some thirty. <sup>9</sup>He who has ears, let him hear."

<sup>10</sup>The disciples came and said to Jesus, "Why do you talk to the crowd in parables?"

<sup>11</sup>Jesus answered and said to them, "You have been given the privilege of understanding mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it is not given. <sup>12</sup>For whoever has will be given more, and he will have an abundance. But whoever does not have, even what he has will be taken away from him.

<sup>13</sup>This is why I talk to them in parables:

Though they are seeing,  
they do not see;  
and though they are hearing,  
they do not hear, or understand.

<sup>14</sup>To them the prophecy of Isaiah is fulfilled, that which says,

'Listening, you will hear, but you will never understand;  
seeing, you will see, but you will never know.

<sup>15</sup> For the heart of this people has become dull,  
and with their ears they hardly hear,  
and they have shut their eyes.

Otherwise they might see with their eyes,  
and hear with their ears,  
and understand with their heart and turn again,  
and I would heal them.'

<sup>16</sup>But blessed are your eyes, for they see; and your ears, for they hear. <sup>17</sup>Truly I say to you that many prophets and righteous men desired to see the things that you see and did not see them. They desired to hear the things that you hear and did not hear them.

<sup>18</sup>Listen then to the parable of the farmer who sowed his seed. <sup>19</sup>When anyone hears the word of the kingdom but does not understand it, the evil one comes and snatches away what has been sown in his heart. This is the seed that was sown beside the road.

<sup>20</sup>What was sown on rocky ground is the person who hears the word and immediately receives it with joy, <sup>21</sup>yet he has no root in himself and he endures for a while. When tribulation or persecution arises because of the word, he quickly falls away.

<sup>22</sup>What was sown among the thorn plants, this is the person who hears the word, but the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of riches choke the word, and he becomes unfruitful. <sup>23</sup>The seed that was sown on the good soil, this is the person who hears the word and understands it. He bears fruit and produces a crop, yielding in one case a hundred, in another sixty, and in another thirty times as much as was planted."

<sup>24</sup>Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a man who sowed good seed in his field. <sup>25</sup>But while people slept, his enemy came and also sowed weeds among the wheat and then went away.

<sup>26</sup>When the blades sprouted and then produced their crop, then the weeds appeared also.

<sup>27</sup>The servants of the landowner came and said to him, 'Sir, did you not sow good seed in your field? How does it now have weeds?'

<sup>28</sup>"He said to them, 'An enemy has done this.'

"The servants said to him, 'So do you want us to go and pull them out?'"

<sup>29</sup>"The landowner said, 'No. Because while you are pulling out the weeds, you might uproot the wheat with them.

<sup>30</sup>Let both grow together until the harvest. At the time of the harvest I will say to the reapers, "First pull out the weeds and tie them in bundles to burn them, but gather the wheat into my barn.'"

<sup>31</sup>Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. <sup>32</sup>This seed is indeed the smallest of all seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants. It becomes a tree, so that the birds of the sky come and nest in its branches."

<sup>33</sup>Jesus then told them another parable. "The kingdom of heaven is like yeast that a woman took and mixed with three measures of flour until all the dough had risen."

<sup>34</sup>All these things Jesus said to the crowds in parables; and he said nothing to them without a parable. <sup>35</sup>This was in order that what had been said through the prophet might be fulfilled, when he said,

"I will open my mouth in parables.

I will say things that were hidden from the foundation of the world."

<sup>36</sup>Then Jesus left the crowds and went into the house. His disciples came to him and said, "Explain to us the parable of the weeds of the field."

<sup>37</sup>Jesus answered and said, "He who sows the good seed is the Son of Man. <sup>38</sup>The field is the world; and the good seed, these are the sons of the kingdom. The weeds are the sons of the evil one, <sup>39</sup>and the enemy who sowed them is the devil. The harvest is the end of the age, and the reapers are angels.

<sup>40</sup>Therefore, as the weeds are gathered up and consumed by fire, so will it be at the end of the age. <sup>41</sup>The Son of Man will send out his angels, and they will gather out of his kingdom all stumbling blocks and those who commit lawlessness. <sup>42</sup>They will throw them into the furnace of fire, where there will be weeping and grinding of teeth.

<sup>43</sup>Then will the righteous people shine like the sun in the kingdom of their Father. He who has ears, let him hear.

<sup>44</sup>"The kingdom of heaven is like a treasure hidden in a field. A man found it and hid it. In his joy he goes, sells everything he possesses, and buys that field. <sup>45</sup>Again, the kingdom of heaven is like a man who is a merchant looking for valuable pearls. <sup>46</sup>When he found one very valuable pearl, he went and sold everything that he possessed and bought it.

<sup>47</sup>"Again, the kingdom of heaven is like a net that was cast into the sea, and that gathered all kinds of fish. <sup>48</sup>When it was filled, the fishermen drew it up on the beach. Then they sat down and gathered the good ones into containers, but the bad ones they threw away.

<sup>49</sup>It will be this way at the end of the age. The angels will come and separate the wicked from among the righteous.

<sup>50</sup>They will throw them into the furnace of fire, where there will be weeping and grinding of teeth.

<sup>51</sup>"Have you understood all these things?"

The disciples said to him, "Yes."

<sup>52</sup>Then Jesus said to them, "Therefore every scribe who has become a disciple to the kingdom of heaven is like a man who is the owner of a house, who draws out old and new things from his treasure." <sup>53</sup>Then it came about that when Jesus had finished these parables, he departed from that place.

<sup>54</sup>Then Jesus entered his own region and taught the people in their synagogue. The result was that they were astonished and said, "Where does this man get his wisdom and these miraculous powers from? <sup>55</sup>Is not this man the carpenter's son? Is not his mother called Mary? Are not his brothers James, Joseph, Simon, and Judas? <sup>56</sup>Are not all his sisters with us? Where did he get all these things?"

<sup>57</sup>They were offended by him.

But Jesus said to them, "A prophet is not without honor except in his own country and in his own family."

<sup>58</sup>He did not do many miracles there because of their unbelief.

# Matthew 13 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 13:14-15, which is from the Old Testament.

This chapter begins a new section. It contains some of Jesus's parables about the kingdom of heaven.

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

### Metonymy

Jesus often says the word "heaven" when he wants his hearers to think of God, who lives in heaven ([Matthew 13:11](#)).

### Implicit information

Speakers usually do not say things that they think their hearers already understand. When Matthew wrote that Jesus "sat beside the sea"

### Metaphor

Speakers often use words for things that can be touched to speak of things that cannot be touched. Jesus spoke of a bird eating a seed to describe how Satan kept people from understanding Jesus's message ([Matthew 13:19](#)).

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Passive voice

Many sentences in this chapter tell that a person had something happen to him without saying who caused that something to happen. For example, "they were scorched"

### Parables

The parables were short stories that Jesus told so that people would easily understand the lesson he was trying to teach them. He also told the stories so that those who did not want to believe in him would not understand the truth ([Matthew 13:11-13](#)).

## Links:

- [Matthew 13:1 Notes](#)

---

### Matthew 13:1

#### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story where Jesus begins to teach the crowds, using parables, about the kingdom of heaven.

On that day

These events happened on the same day as those in the previous chapter.

out of the house

It is not mentioned at whose house Jesus was staying.

sat beside the sea

It is implied that he sat down to teach the people.

Matthew 13:2

so he got into a boat

It is implied that Jesus got into a boat because it would make it easier to teach the people.

a boat

This was probably an open, wooden fishing boat with a sail.

Matthew 13:3

Connecting Statement:

Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about a person who sows seeds.

Jesus said many things to them in parables

"Jesus told them many things in parables"

to them

"to the people in the crowd"

Behold

"Look" or "Listen." This word calls attention to what is to be said next. Alternate translation: "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

a farmer went out to sow seed

"a farmer went out to scatter seeds in a field"

Matthew 13:4

As he sowed

"As the farmer scattered the seed"

beside the road

This refers to a "path" next to the field. The ground there would have been hard from people walking on it.

devoured them

"ate all the seeds"

Matthew 13:5

rocky ground

This is ground full of rocks with just a thin layer of soil on top of the rocks.

Immediately they sprang up

"The seeds quickly sprouted and grew"

Matthew 13:6

they were scorched

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the sun scorched the plants, and they became too hot"

they withered away

"the plants became dry and died"

Matthew 13:7

fell among the thorn plants

"fell where plants with thorns grew"

choked them

"choked the new sprouts." Use your word for the way weeds prevent other plants from growing well.

Matthew 13:8

produced a crop

"grew more seeds" or "gave fruit"

some one hundred times as much, some sixty, and some thirty

The words "seeds," "produced," and "crop" are understood from the previous phrase. These can be expressed clearly. Alternate translation: "some seeds produced one hundred times as much crop, some seeds produced sixty times as much crop, and some seeds produced thirty times as much crop"

one hundred ... sixty ... thirty

"100 ... 60 ... 30"

## Matthew 13:9

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes telling a parable about a person who sows seeds.

He who has ears, let him hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "has ears" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Matthew 11:15]

He who ... let him

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Matthew 11:15]

## Matthew 13:10

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Matthew 13:11

General Information:

Jesus explains to his disciples why he teaches with parables.

You have been given the privilege of understanding mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but to them it is not given

This can be translated with the active form and with implied information expressed clearly. Alternate translation: "God has given you the privilege of understanding mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but God has not given it to these people" or "God has made you able to understand mysteries of the kingdom of heaven, but he has not enabled these people to understand"

You have been given the privilege

The word "You" is plural here and refers to the disciples.

mysteries of the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" occurs only in the book of Matthew. If possible, try to keep it in your translation. Alternate translation: "the secrets about our God in heaven and his rule"

## Matthew 13:12

has will be given more

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "has understanding, God will give him more understanding"

whoever does not have

"whoever does not have understanding" or "whoever does not receive what I teach"

even what he has will be taken away from him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will take away even what he has"

## Matthew 13:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to explain to his disciples why he teaches in parables.

to them ... they

All occurrences of "them" and "they" refer to the people in the crowd.

Though they are seeing, they do not see; and though they are hearing, they do not hear, or understand.

Jesus uses this parallelism to tell and emphasize to the disciples that the crowd refuses to understand God's truth.

Though they are seeing

These words could refer to 1) them seeing what Jesus does. Alternate translation: "Though they see what I do" or 2) their ability to see with their eyes. Alternate translation: "Though they are able to see"



they do not see

Here "see" represents understanding. Alternate translation: "they do not understand"

though they are hearing

These words could refer to 1) them hearing what Jesus teaches. Alternate translation: "Though they hear what I say" or 2) their ability to hear with their ears. Alternate translation: "Though they are able to hear"

they do not hear

Here "hear" represents listening well. Alternate translation: "they do not listen well" or "they do not pay attention"

Matthew 13:14

General Information:

Here Jesus quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that the people's failure to understand Jesus's teaching is a fulfillment of prophecy.

To them the prophecy of Isaiah is fulfilled, that which says

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They are fulfilling what God said long ago through the prophet Isaiah"

Listening, you will hear, but you will never understand; seeing, you will see, but you will never know

This begins a quote from the prophet Isaiah about the unbelieving people of Isaiah's day. Jesus uses this quote to describe the very crowd that was listening to him. These statements are again parallel and emphasize that the people refused to understand God's truth.

Listening, you will hear, but you will never understand

"You will hear things, but you will not understand them." You can make explicit what the people will hear. Alternate translation: "You will hear what God says through the prophets, but you will not understand its true meaning"

seeing, you will see, but you will never know

You can make explicit what the people will see. Alternate translation: "you will see what God does through the prophets, but you will not understand it"

Matthew 13:15

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes quoting the prophet Isaiah.

For the heart of this people ... I would heal them

God describes the people of Israel as if they had physical diseases that cause them to be unable to learn, to see, and to hear. God wants them to come to him so he will heal them. This is all a metaphor describing the people's spiritual condition. It means the people are stubborn and refuse to receive and understand God's truth. If they would, then they would repent and God would forgive them and welcome them back as his people. If the meaning is clear, keep the metaphor in your translation.

the heart of this people has become dull

Here "heart" refers to the mind. Alternate translation: "these people's minds are slow to learn" or "these people can no longer learn"

with their ears they hardly hear

They are not physically deaf. Here "hardly hear" means they refuse to listen and learn God's truth. Alternate translation: "they refuse to use their ears to listen"

they have shut their eyes

This means they refuse to understand, not that they have literally closed their eyes. Alternate translation: "they refuse to use their eyes to see"

understand with their heart

The word "heart" here is a metonym for people's innermost being. You may need to use the word in your language for the source of people's thinking and feelings. Alternate translation: "understand with their minds"

turn again

"turn back to me" or "repent"

I would heal them

"have me heal them." This means God would heal them spiritually by forgiving their sins and receiving them again as his people. Alternate translation: "have me receive them again"

## Matthew 13:16

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes explaining to his disciples why he teaches with parables.

But blessed are your eyes, for they see; and your ears, for they hear

Both of these statements mean the same thing. Jesus is emphasizing that they have pleased God because they have believed what Jesus has said and done.

But blessed are your eyes, for they see

Here "eyes" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "You are blessed because your eyes are able to see"

your ... you

All occurrences of these words are plural and refer to the disciples.

your ears, for they hear

Here "ears" refer to the whole person. You can also make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "blessed are your ears, for they hear" "you are blessed because your ears are able to hear"

## Matthew 13:17

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

you

All occurrences of this word are plural and refer to the disciples.

the things that you see

You can make explicit what they have seen. Alternate translation: "the things you have seen me do"

the things that you hear

You can make explicit what they have heard. Alternate translation: "the things you have heard me say"

## Matthew 13:18

Connecting Statement:

Here Jesus begins to explain to his disciples the parable about a person who sows seeds, which he began in Matthew 13:3.

## Matthew 13:19

the word of the kingdom

"the message about God's rule as king"

the evil one comes and snatches away what has been sown in his heart

Jesus speaks of Satan causing the person to forget what he has heard as if Satan were a bird snatching the seed from the ground. Alternate translation: "The evil one causes him to forget the message that he has heard just as a bird snatches away seed from the ground"

the evil one

This refers to Satan.

snatches away

Try to use a word that means to grab something away from someone who is the rightful owner.

what has been sown in his heart

This can be translated in active form: Alternate translation: "the message that God sowed in his heart" or "the message that he heard"

in his heart

Here "heart" refers to the mind of the hearer.

This is the seed that was sown beside the road

"This is the meaning of the seed that was sown beside the road" or "The road where seed was sown represents this person"

beside the road

See how you translated this in Matthew 13:4.

## Matthew 13:20

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to explain to his disciples the parable about a person who sows seeds.

What was sown on rocky ground

The phrase "what was sown" refers to seed that fell.  
Alternate translation: "The seed that fell on rocky ground"

What was sown on rocky ground is

"The rocky ground where seed was sown represents" or  
"The rocky ground where seed fell represents"

the person who hears the word

In the parable, the seed represents the word.

the word

This represents God's message. Alternate translation:  
"the message" or "God's teaching"

receives it with joy

Believing the word is spoken of as receiving it.  
Alternate translation: "joyfully believes it"

## Matthew 13:21

yet he has no root in himself and he endures for a while

"yet he has shallow roots and only lasts for a little while." The root represents what makes a person continue to believe God's message. Alternate translation: "But like a plant that does not grow deep roots, he only endures for a little while"

he quickly falls away

Here "falls away" means stops believing. Alternate translation: "immediately he falls away" or "he quickly stops believing the message"

## Matthew 13:22

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to explain to his disciples the parable about a person who sows seeds.

What was sown

This refers to seed that was sown or that fell. Alternate translation: "The seed that was sown" or "The seed that fell"

What was sown among the thorn plants

"The ground with the thorn plants where seed was sown"

this is the person

"this represents the person"

the word

"the message" or "God's teaching"

the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of riches choke the word

Jesus speaks about the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of riches distracting a person from obeying God's word as if they were weeds that could wind around a plant and keep it from growing. Alternate translation: "as weeds prevent good plants from growing, the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of riches keep this person from listening to God's word"

cares of the world

"the things in this world that people worry about"

the deceitfulness of riches

Jesus describes "riches" as if it were a person who could deceive someone. This means people think having more money will make them happy, but it will not. Alternate translation: "the love of money"

he becomes unfruitful

The person is spoken of as if he were a plant. Being unfruitful represents being unproductive. Alternate translation: "he becomes unproductive" or "he does not do what God wants"

## Matthew 13:23

The seed that was sown on the good soil

You may have to consider "the seed" as a metonym for the soil on which the seed was sown. Alternate translation: "The good soil where seeds were sown"

He bears fruit and produces a crop

The person is spoken of as if he were a plant. Alternate translation: "Like a healthy plant that bears a crop of fruit, he is productive"

a crop, yielding in one case a hundred, in another sixty, and in another thirty times as much as was planted

See how you translated similar phrases in [Matthew 13:8]

a hundred ... sixty ... thirty

100 ... 60 ... 30

## Matthew 13:24

Connecting Statement:

Here Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about a field with both wheat and weeds growing in it.

Jesus presented another parable

This metaphor speaks of Jesus telling the people the parable as if he were putting a tangible object in front of them so they could examine it. Alternate translation: "Jesus told them another parable"

The kingdom of heaven is like a man

The translation should not equate the kingdom of heaven to a man, but rather the kingdom of heaven is like the situation described in the parable.

The kingdom of heaven is like

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in Matthew. If possible, use "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "When our God in heaven shows himself to be king, it will be like"

good seed

"good food seeds" or "good grain seeds." The audience probably thought that Jesus was talking about wheat.

## Matthew 13:25

his enemy came

"his enemy came to the field"

weeds

These weeds look like food plants when they are young, but their grain is poison. Alternate translation: "bad seed" or "weed seeds"

## Matthew 13:26

When the blades sprouted

"When the wheat seeds sprouted" or "When the plants came up"

produced their crop

"produced grain" or "produced the wheat crop"

then the weeds appeared also

"then people could see there were weeds in the field also"

## Matthew 13:27

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to tell a parable about a field with both wheat and weeds growing in it.

the landowner

This is the same person who sowed good seed in his field.

did you not sow good seed in your field?

The servants used a question to emphasize their surprise. Alternate translation: "you sowed good seed in your field!"

did you not sow

The landowner probably had his servants plant the seeds. Alternate translation: "did we not sow"

#### Matthew 13:28

He said to them

"The landowner said to the servants"

So do you want us

The word "us" refers to the servants.

#### Matthew 13:29

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes the parable about a field with both wheat and weeds growing in it.

The landowner said

"The landowner said to his servants"

#### Matthew 13:30

I will say to the reapers, "First pull out the weeds and tie them in bundles to burn them, but gather the wheat into my barn."

You can translate this as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "I will tell the reapers to first gather up the weeds and tie them in bundles to burn them, and then gather the wheat into my barn."

barn

a farm building that can be used for storing grain

#### Matthew 13:31

Connecting Statement:

Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about a very small seed that grows into a very big plant.

The kingdom of heaven is like

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in Matthew. If possible, use "heaven" in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 13:24]

mustard seed

a very small seed that grows into a large plant

#### Matthew 13:32

This seed is indeed the smallest of all seeds

Mustard seeds were the smallest seeds known to the original hearers.

But when it has grown

"But when the plant has grown"

it is greater than

"it is larger than"

becomes a tree

A mustard plant can grow about 2 to 4 meters tall.

birds of the sky

"birds"

#### Matthew 13:33

Connecting Statement:

Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about the effect that yeast has on flour.

The kingdom of heaven is like yeast

The kingdom is not like the yeast, but the spread of the kingdom is like the spreading of the yeast.

The kingdom of heaven is like

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in Matthew. If possible, use "heaven" in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 13:24]

three measures of flour

Say "a large amount of flour" or use a term that your culture uses for measuring large amounts of flour.

until all the dough had risen

The implied information is that the yeast and the three measures of flour were made into dough for baking.

### Matthew 13:34

All these things Jesus said to the crowds in parables; and he said nothing to them without a parable

Both sentences mean the same thing. They are combined to emphasize that Jesus taught the crowds only with parables.

All these things

This refers to what Jesus taught beginning at Matthew 13:1.

he said nothing to them without a parable

"he taught them nothing except by parables." The double negative can be expressed in a positive way. Alternate translation: "everything he taught them he said in parables"

### Matthew 13:35

General Information:

Here the author quotes from the Psalms to show that Jesus's teaching in parables fulfilled prophecy.

what had been said through the prophet might be fulfilled, when he said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what God told one of the prophets to write long ago might come true"

when he said

"when the prophet said"

I will open my mouth

This is an idiom that means to speak. Alternate translation: "I will speak"

things that were hidden

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "things that God has kept hidden"

from the foundation of the world

The author speaks of the world as if it were a building set on a foundation. Alternate translation: "since the beginning of the world" or "since God created the world"

### Matthew 13:36

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to the house where Jesus and his disciples were staying. Jesus begins to explain to them the parable of the field that had both wheat and weeds, which he told beginning in Matthew 13:24.

went into the house

"went indoors" or "went into the house where he was staying"

### Matthew 13:37

He who sows the good seed

"The one who sows the good seed" or "The sower of the good seed"

the Son of Man

Jesus is referring to himself.

### Matthew 13:38

the sons of the kingdom

The idiom "sons of" refers to those who belong to or to have the same character as someone or something. Alternate translation: "the people who belong to the kingdom"

of the kingdom

Here "kingdom" refers to God the king. Alternate translation: "of God"

the sons of the evil one

The idiom "sons of" refers those who belong to or to have the same character as someone or something. Alternate translation: "the people who belong to the evil one"

### Matthew 13:39

the enemy who sowed them

"the enemy who sowed the weeds"

## Matthew 13:40

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes explaining to his disciples the parable of the field with both wheat and weeds.

Therefore, as the weeds are gathered up and consumed by fire

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Therefore, as people gather up weeds and burn them in the fire"

## Matthew 13:41

The Son of Man will send out his angels

Here Jesus is speaking of himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, will send out my angels"

all stumbling blocks

everything that causes people to sin

those who commit lawlessness

"those who are lawless" or "evil people"

## Matthew 13:42

furnace of fire

This is a metaphor for the fires of hell. If the term "furnace" is not known, "oven" can be used. Alternate translation: "fiery furnace"

weeping and grinding of teeth

"Grinding of teeth" here is a symbolic act, representing extreme sadness and suffering. See how you translated this in [Matthew 8:12]

## Matthew 13:43

shine like the sun

If this simile is not understandable in your language, you can use: "be as easy to see as the sun."

Father

This is an important title for God.

He who has ears, let him hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "has ears" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Matthew 11:15]

He who has ... let him hear

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. See how you translated this in [Matthew 11:15]

## Matthew 13:44

General Information:

In this parable, Jesus uses a simile to teach his disciples what the kingdom of heaven is like.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about a person who sold his possessions to purchase something of great value.

The kingdom of heaven is like

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in Matthew. If possible, use "heaven" in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 13:24]

like a treasure hidden in a field

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "a treasure that someone had hidden in a field"

treasure

a very valuable and precious thing or collection of things

hid it

"covered it up"

sells everything he possesses, and buys that field

The implied information is that the person buys the field to take possession of the hidden treasure.

## Matthew 13:45

### General Information:

In this parable, Jesus uses a simile to teach his disciples what the kingdom of heaven is like.

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about a person who sold his possessions to purchase something of great value.

like a man who is a merchant looking for valuable pearls

The implied information is that the man was looking for valuable pearls that he could buy.

a merchant

a trader or wholesale dealer who often obtains merchandise from distant places

valuable pearls

A "pearl" is a smooth, hard, shiny, white or light-colored bead formed inside mollusks in the sea and highly prized as a gem or to make into valuable jewelry.

Alternate translation: "fine pearls" or "beautiful pearls"

## Matthew 13:46

### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Matthew 13:47

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about fishermen who use a large net to catch fish.

the kingdom of heaven is like a net

The kingdom is not like the net, but the kingdom draws all kinds of people like a net catches all kinds of fish.

the kingdom of heaven is like

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in Matthew. If possible, use "heaven" in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 13:24]

like a net that was cast into the sea

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "like a net that some fishermen cast into the sea"

was cast into the sea

"was thrown into the sea"

## Matthew 13:48

drew it up on the beach

"pulled the net up onto the beach" or "pulled the net ashore"

the good ones

Sometimes other creatures go into nets, but fishermen usually cast nets to catch fish, so most modern translations read, "the good fish."

the bad ones

Sometimes other creatures go into nets, but fishermen usually cast nets to catch fish, so most modern translations read, "the bad fish."

threw away

"did not keep"

## Matthew 13:49

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus explains the parable about fishermen who use a large net to catch fish.

will come

"will come out" or "will go out" or "will come from heaven"

the wicked from among the righteous

These nominal adjectives can be stated as adjectives. Alternate translation: "the wicked people from the righteous people"

## Matthew 13:50

They will throw them

"The angels will throw the wicked people"



furnace of fire

This is a metaphor for the fires of hell. If the term "furnace" is not known, "oven" can be used. See how you translated this in [Matthew 13:42]

weeping and grinding of teeth

"Grinding of teeth" here is a symbolic act, representing extreme sadness and suffering. See how you translated this in [Matthew 8:12]

Matthew 13:51

Connecting Statement:

Jesus describes the kingdom of heaven by telling a parable about a person who manages a household. This is the end of the part of the story about Jesus teaching the crowds about the kingdom of heaven through using parables.

Have you understood all these things?" The disciples said to him, "Yes."

If necessary, both direct quotations can be translated as indirect quotations. Alternate translation: "Jesus asked them if they had understood all this, and they said that they did understand."

Matthew 13:52

has become a disciple to the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "has learned the truth about our God in heaven, who is king" or "has submitted himself to God's rule"

is like a man who is the owner of a house, who draws out old and new things from his treasure

Jesus speaks another parable. He compares scribes, who know very well the scriptures that Moses and the prophets wrote, and who also now accept Jesus's teachings, to a house owner who uses both old and new treasures.

treasure

A treasure is a very valuable and precious thing or a collection of things. Here it may refer to the place

where these things are stored, the "treasury" or "storeroom."

Matthew 13:53

Then it came about that when

This phrase shifts the story from Jesus's teachings to what happened next. Alternate translation: "Then when" or "After"

Matthew 13:54

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story that runs through Matthew 17:27, where Matthew tells of continued opposition to Jesus's ministry and teaching about the kingdom of heaven. Here, the people of Jesus's home town reject him.

his own region

"his hometown." This refers to the town of Nazareth, where Jesus grew up.

in their synagogue

The pronoun "their" is referring to the people of the region.

they were astonished

"they were amazed"

Where does this man get his wisdom and these miraculous powers from?

The people believed that Jesus was just an ordinary man. They use this question to express their amazement that he was so wise and was able to do miracles. Alternate translation: "How can an ordinary man like this be so wise and do such great miracles?" or "It is strange that he is able to speak with such wisdom and do these miracles!"

Matthew 13:55

Is not this man the carpenter's son? Is not his mother called Mary? Are not his brothers James, Joseph, Simon, and Judas?

The crowd uses these questions to express their belief that they know who Jesus is and that he is just an ordinary man. Alternate translation: "He is just the son of a carpenter. We know his mother Mary, and his brothers James, Joseph, Simon, and Judas."

the carpenter's son

A carpenter is someone who makes things with wood or stone. If "carpenter" is not known, "builder" can be used.

Matthew 13:56

Are not all his sisters with us?

The crowd uses these questions to express their belief that they know who Jesus is and that he is just an ordinary man. Alternate translation: "And all his sisters are with us, too."

Where did he get all these things?

The crowd uses this question to show their understanding that Jesus must have gotten his abilities from somewhere. They were probably expressing their doubt that he got his abilities from God. Alternate translation: "He must have gotten his ability to do these things from somewhere!" or "We do not know where he got these abilities!"

all these things

This refers to Jesus's wisdom and ability to do miracles.

Matthew 13:57

They were offended by him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The people of Jesus's hometown took offense at him" or "The people rejected Jesus"

A prophet is not without honor

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "A prophet receives honor everywhere" or "People everywhere honor a prophet"

his own country

"his own region" or "his own hometown"

in his own family

"in his own home"

Matthew 13:58

He did not do many miracles there

"Jesus did not do many miracles in his own hometown"

**14** <sup>1</sup>About that time, Herod the tetrarch heard the news about Jesus.<sup>2</sup>He said to his servants, "This is John the Baptist; he has risen from the dead. Therefore these powers are at work in him."

<sup>3</sup>For Herod had arrested John, bound him, and put him in prison because of Herodias, his brother Philip's wife.

<sup>4</sup>For John had said to him, "It is not lawful for you to have her as your wife."<sup>5</sup>Herod would have killed him, but he feared the people, because they regarded him as a prophet.

<sup>6</sup>But when Herod's birthday came, the daughter of Herodias danced in the midst and pleased Herod.<sup>7</sup>In response, he promised with an oath to give her whatever she should ask.

<sup>8</sup>After being instructed by her mother, she said, "Give me here, on a platter, the head of John the Baptist."<sup>9</sup>The king was grieved by her request, but because of his oath and because of all those at dinner with him, he ordered that it should be done.

<sup>10</sup>He sent and beheaded John in the prison.<sup>11</sup>Then his head was brought on a platter and given to the girl, and she took it to her mother.<sup>12</sup>Then his disciples came, took up the corpse, and buried it. After this, they went and told Jesus.

<sup>13</sup>Now when Jesus heard this, he withdrew from there in a boat to a deserted place. When the crowds heard of it, they followed him on foot from the cities.<sup>14</sup>Then Jesus came before them and saw the large crowd. He had compassion on them and healed their sick.

<sup>15</sup>When the evening had come, the disciples came to him and said, "This is a deserted place, and the hour has already passed. Dismiss the crowds, so that they can go into the villages and buy food for themselves."

<sup>16</sup>But Jesus said to them, "They have no need to go away. You give them something to eat."

<sup>17</sup>They said to him, "We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish."

<sup>18</sup>Jesus said, "Bring them to me."

<sup>19</sup>Then Jesus ordered the crowd to sit down on the grass. He took the five loaves and the two fish. Looking up to heaven, he blessed and broke the loaves and gave them to the disciples, and the disciples gave them to the crowd.

<sup>20</sup>They all ate and were filled. Then they took up what remained of the broken pieces of food—twelve baskets full.

<sup>21</sup>Those who ate were about five thousand men, besides women and children.

<sup>22</sup>Immediately he made the disciples get into the boat and go before him to the other side, while he sent away the crowds.<sup>23</sup>After he had sent away the crowds, he went up on the mountain by himself to pray. When evening came, he was there alone.<sup>24</sup>But the boat was now a long way from land, being tossed about by the waves, for the wind was blowing against them.

<sup>25</sup>In the fourth watch of the night Jesus approached them, walking on the sea.<sup>26</sup>When the disciples saw him walking on the sea, they were troubled and said, "It is a ghost," and they cried out in fear.

<sup>27</sup>But Jesus spoke to them right away and said, "Be brave! It is I! Do not be afraid."

<sup>28</sup>Peter answered him and said, "Lord, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water."

<sup>29</sup>Jesus said, "Come."

So Peter got out from the boat and walked on the water to go to Jesus.

<sup>30</sup>But when Peter saw the strong wind, he became afraid. As he began to sink, he cried out and said, "Lord, save me!"

<sup>31</sup>Jesus immediately stretched out his hand, took hold of Peter, and said to him, "You of little faith, why did you doubt?"

<sup>32</sup>Then when Jesus and Peter went into the boat, the wind ceased blowing.<sup>33</sup>Then the disciples in the boat worshiped Jesus and said, "Truly you are the Son of God."

<sup>34</sup>When they had crossed over, they came to land at Gennesaret.<sup>35</sup>When the men in that place recognized Jesus, they sent messages everywhere into the surrounding area, and they brought to him everyone who was sick.  
<sup>36</sup>They begged him that they might just touch the edge of his garment, and as many as touched it were healed.

---

## Matthew 14 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Verses 1 and 2 continue the account from chapter 13. Verses 3-12 stop the account and speak of things that happened earlier, possibly soon after Satan tempted Jesus

### Possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Passive voice

Many sentences in this chapter tell that a person had something happen to him without saying who caused that something to happen. For example, the writer does not tell who brought John's head to Herodias's daughter

### Links:

- [Matthew 14:1 Notes](#)
- 

#### Matthew 14:1

##### General Information:

These verses explain Herod's reaction when he heard about Jesus. This event happens some time after the events that follow in the narrative.

##### About that time

"In those days" or "While Jesus was ministering in Galilee"

heard the news about Jesus

"heard reports about Jesus" or "heard about the fame of Jesus"

#### Matthew 14:2

He said

"Herod said"

has risen from the dead

The words "the dead" speak of all dead people together in the underworld. To rise from the dead speaks of coming alive again.

Therefore these powers are at work in him

Some Jews at that time believed if a person came back from the dead he would have powers to do mighty things.

#### Matthew 14:3

##### General Information:

Matthew recounts the story of John the Baptist's death in order to show why Herod reacted the way he did when he heard about Jesus.

##### Connecting Statement:

Here the author begins to tell about how Herod had executed John the Baptist. These events occur some time before the event in the previous verses.

Herod had arrested John, bound him, and put him in prison

It says that Herod did these things although he actually ordered others to do them for him. Alternate translation: "Herod ordered his soldiers to arrest and bind John the Baptist and put him in prison"

Philip's wife

Philip was Herod's brother. Herod had taken Philip's wife to be his own wife.

Matthew 14:4

For John ... as your wife

If needed, you can present the events of 14:3-4 in the order that they happened, as in the UDB.

For John had said to him, "It is not lawful for you to have her as your wife."

This can be expressed as an indirect quote, if needed. Alternate translation: "For John had said to Herod that it was not lawful for Herod to have Herodias as his wife."

For John had said to him

"For John had kept saying to Herod"

It is not lawful

Philip was still alive when Herod married Herodias.

Matthew 14:5

would have killed him

"wanted to kill John"

he feared

"Herod feared"

they regarded him

"they regarded John"

Matthew 14:6

in the midst

You can make explicit the implicit information. Alternate translation: "in the midst of the guests attending the birthday celebration"

Matthew 14:7

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 14:8

After being instructed by her mother

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After her mother instructed her"

instructed

"coached" or "told"

she said

"the daughter of Herodias said to Herod"

platter

a very large plate

Matthew 14:9

The king was grieved by her request

The abstract noun "request" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "The king was grieved because she had asked him to kill John"

The king

"King Herod"

grieved

sad and upset, as when a friend or family member dies

he ordered that it should be done

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he ordered his men to do what she said"

Matthew 14:10

Connecting Statement:

This concludes the account of how Herod executed John the Baptist.

Matthew 14:11

his head was brought on a platter and given to the girl

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone brought his head on a platter and gave it to the girl"

platter

a very large plate

girl

Use the word for a young, unmarried girl.

Matthew 14:12

his disciples

"the disciples of John"

the corpse

"the dead body"

they went and told Jesus

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "the disciples of John went and told Jesus what had happened to John the Baptist"

Matthew 14:13

Now

This word is used here to mark a change in the main story. Here Matthew returns to telling about Jesus.

heard this

"heard what happened to John" or "heard the news about John"

he withdrew

"he left" or "he went away"

from there

"from that place"

When the crowds heard of it

"When the crowds heard where Jesus had gone" or "When the crowds heard that he had left"

the crowds

"the crowds of people" or "the huge group of people" or "the people"

on foot

This means that the people in the crowd were walking.

Matthew 14:14

Then Jesus came before them and saw the large crowd

"When Jesus came ashore, he saw a large crowd"

Matthew 14:15

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus feeding five thousand people with only five small loaves of bread and two small fish.

the disciples came to him

"Jesus's disciples came to him"

the hour has already passed

Possible meanings of the words "the hour" are 1) they refer to the time for teaching. Alternate translation: "there is no more time for you to teach" Or 2) they refer to the day. Alternate translation: "the day is already over."

Matthew 14:16

They have no need

"The people in the crowd have no need"

You give them

The word "You" is plural, referring to the disciples.

Matthew 14:17

They said to him

"The disciples said to Jesus"

five loaves of bread

Loaves of bread are lumps of dough that have been shaped and baked.

Matthew 14:18

Bring them to me

"Bring the loaves and fish to me"

Matthew 14:19

Connecting Statement:

This concludes the account of Jesus feeding five thousand people.

sit down

"lie down." Use the verb for the position people in your culture usually are in when they eat.

He took

"He held in his hands." He did not steal them.

broke the loaves

"tore the loaves"

loaves

"loaves of bread" or "whole breads"

Looking up

Possible meanings are 1) "While looking up" or 2) "After looking up"

Matthew 14:20

and were filled

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "until they were full" or "until they were no longer hungry"

they took up

"the disciples gathered up" or "some people gathered up"

twelve baskets full

"12 baskets full"

Matthew 14:21

Those who ate

"Those who ate the bread and the fish"

five thousand men

"5,000 men"

Matthew 14:22

Connecting Statement:

The following verses describe events that happened right after Jesus fed the five thousand people.

Immediately he

"As soon as Jesus had finished feeding all the people, he"

Matthew 14:23

When evening came

"Late in the evening" or "When it became dark"

Matthew 14:24

being tossed about by the waves

"and the disciples could not control the boat because of the large waves"

Matthew 14:25

In the fourth watch of the night

The fourth watch is between 3 a.m. and sunrise. Alternate translation: "Just before dawn"

walking on the sea

"walking on top of the water"

Matthew 14:26

they were troubled

"they were very afraid"

ghost

a spirit that has left the body of a person who has died

#### Matthew 14:27

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 14:28

Peter answered him

"Peter answered Jesus"

#### Matthew 14:29

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 14:30

when Peter saw the strong wind

Here "saw the strong wind" means he became aware of the wind. Alternate translation: "when Peter saw that the wind was tossing the waves back and forth" or "when he realized how strong the wind was"

#### Matthew 14:31

You of little faith, why

"You who have such little faith, why." Jesus addressed Peter this way because Peter became afraid. It can also be translated as an exclamation. Alternate translation: "You have so little faith! Why"

why did you doubt?

Jesus uses a question to tell Peter than he should not have doubted. You can make explicit what Peter should not have doubted. Alternate translation: "you should not have doubted that I could keep you from sinking."

#### Matthew 14:32

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 14:33

Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

#### Matthew 14:34

Connecting Statement:

Matthew describes in 14:34-36 what happened after Jesus walked on the water. He summarizes how the people were responding to Jesus's ministry.

When they had crossed over

"When Jesus and his disciples had crossed over the lake"

Gennesaret

This is a small town on the northwest shore of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Matthew 14:35

they sent messages

"the men of that area sent messages"

#### Matthew 14:36

They begged him

"The sick people begged him"

his garment

"his robe" or "what he was wearing"

were healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "became well"



15 <sup>1</sup>Then some Pharisees and scribes came to Jesus from Jerusalem. They said, <sup>2</sup>"Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat bread."

<sup>3</sup>He answered and said to them, "Then why do you violate the commandment of God for the sake of your traditions?"

<sup>4</sup>For God said, 'Honor your father and your mother,' and 'He who speaks evil of his father or mother will surely die.'<sup>5</sup>But you say, 'Whoever says to his father or mother, "Whatever help you would have received from me is now a gift given to God,"<sup>6</sup>that person does not need to honor his father.' In this way you have made void the word of God <sup>1</sup> for the sake of your traditions.

<sup>7</sup>You hypocrites! Well did Isaiah prophesy about you when he said,

<sup>8</sup> 'This people honors me with their lips,  
but their heart is far from me.

<sup>9</sup> They worship me in vain  
because they teach as their doctrines the commandments of people.'"

<sup>10</sup>Then he called the crowd to himself and said to them, "Listen and understand—<sup>11</sup>Nothing that enters into the mouth defiles a person. Instead, what comes out of the mouth, this is what defiles a person."

<sup>12</sup>Then the disciples came and said to Jesus, "Do you know that the Pharisees were offended when they heard this statement?"

<sup>13</sup>Jesus answered and said, "Every plant that my heavenly Father has not planted will be rooted up.<sup>14</sup>Let them alone; they are blind guides. If a blind person guides another blind person, both will fall into a pit."

<sup>15</sup>Peter responded and said to Jesus, "Explain this parable to us."

<sup>16</sup>Jesus said, "Are you also still without understanding?<sup>17</sup>Do you not understand that whatever goes into the mouth passes into the stomach and then goes out into the latrine?"

<sup>18</sup>But the things that come out of the mouth come from the heart. They are the things that defile a person.<sup>19</sup>For from the heart proceed evil thoughts, murder, adultery, sexual immorality, theft, false witness, and slander.

<sup>20</sup>These are the things that defile a person. But to eat with unwashed hands does not defile a person."

<sup>21</sup>Then Jesus went away from there and withdrew toward the regions of the cities of Tyre and Sidon.<sup>22</sup>Behold, a Canaanite woman came out from that region. She shouted out and said, "Have mercy on me, Lord, Son of David! My daughter is severely demon-possessed."

<sup>23</sup>But Jesus answered her not a word. His disciples came and begged him, saying, "Send her away, for she is shouting after us."

<sup>24</sup>But Jesus answered and said, "I was not sent to anyone except to the lost sheep of the house of Israel."

<sup>25</sup>But she came and bowed down before him, saying, "Lord, help me."

<sup>26</sup>He answered and said, "It is not proper to take the children's bread and throw it to the dogs."

<sup>27</sup>She said, "Yes, Lord, but even the dogs eat some of the crumbs that fall from their masters' tables."

<sup>28</sup>Then Jesus answered and said to her, "Woman, great is your faith; let it be done for you just as you wish." Her daughter was healed from that hour.

<sup>29</sup>Jesus left that place and went near to the Sea of Galilee. Then he went up a hill and sat there.<sup>30</sup>Large crowds came to him. They brought with them lame, blind, mute, and crippled people, and many others who were sick. They presented them at Jesus' feet, and he healed them.<sup>31</sup>So the crowd marveled when they saw the mute persons speak, the crippled made well, the lame walking, and the blind seeing. They glorified the God of Israel.

<sup>32</sup>Jesus called his disciples to him and said, "I have compassion on the crowd because they have stayed with me for three days already and have nothing to eat. I do not want to send them away without eating, or they may faint on the way."

<sup>33</sup>The disciples said to him, "Where can we get enough loaves of bread in such a deserted place to satisfy so large a crowd?"

<sup>34</sup>Jesus said to them, "How many loaves do you have?"

They said, "Seven, and a few small fish."

<sup>35</sup>Then Jesus commanded the crowd to sit down on the ground.

<sup>36</sup>He took the seven loaves and the fish, and after giving thanks, he broke the loaves and gave them to the disciples. The disciples gave them to the crowd.<sup>37</sup> The people all ate and were satisfied. Then they gathered up seven baskets full of the broken pieces that were left over.<sup>38</sup> Those who ate were four thousand men, besides women and children.<sup>39</sup> Then Jesus sent the crowds away and got into the boat and went into the region of Magadan.

---

<sup>1</sup>The best ancient copies have the word of God ; some other ancient copies have the commandment. It is difficult to choose the better reading.

---

## Matthew 15 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 15:8-9, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

The "traditions of the elders"

The "traditions of the elders" were oral laws that the Jewish religious leaders developed because they wanted to make sure that everyone obeyed the law of Moses. However, they often worked harder to obey these rules than to obey the law of Moses itself. Jesus rebuked the religious leaders for this, and they became angry as a result. (See: lawofmoses)

Jews and Gentiles

The Jews of Jesus's time thought that only Jews could please God by the way they lived. Jesus healed a Canaanite Gentile woman's daughter to show his followers that he would accept both Jews and Gentiles as his people.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Sheep

The Bible often speaks of people as if they were sheep because sheep need someone to take care of them. This is because they do not see well and they often go to where other animals can kill them easily.

### Links:

- [Matthew 15:1 Notes](#)

## Matthew 15:1

### General Information:

The scene shifts to events that occur some time after events of the previous chapter. Here Jesus responds to the criticisms of the Pharisees.

## Matthew 15:2

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders?

The Pharisees and scribes use this question to criticize Jesus and his disciples. Alternate translation: "Your disciples do not respect the rules that our ancestors have given us."

traditions of the elders

This is not the same as the law of Moses. This refers to later teachings and interpretations of the law given by religious leaders after Moses.

they do not wash their hands

This washing is not only to clean hands. This refers to a ceremonial washing according to the tradition of the elders. Alternate translation: "they do not wash their hands properly"

when they eat bread

The word "bread" here is a synecdoche for any kind of food, and the word "when" refers to what people generally do before eating meals. Alternate translation: "before they eat"

## Matthew 15:3

Then why do you violate the commandment of God for the sake of your traditions?

Jesus answers with a question to criticize what the religious leaders do. Alternate translation: "And I see that you refuse to obey God's commands just so that you can follow what your ancestors taught you!"

## Matthew 15:4

### General Information:

Jesus quotes twice from Exodus to show how God expects people to treat their parents.

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to respond to the Pharisees.

He who speaks evil of his father or mother will surely die

"The people should execute anyone who speaks evil of his father or mother"

## Matthew 15:5

But you say

Here "you" is plural and refers to the Pharisees and scribes.

## Matthew 15:6

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to rebuke the Pharisees.

that person does not need to honor his father

The words beginning with "But you say"

does not need to honor his father

It is implied that "his father" means "his parents." This means the religious leaders taught that a person does not need to show respect to his parents by taking care of them.

you have made void the word of God

Here "the word of God" refers specifically to God's commands. Alternate translation: "you have treated the word of God as if it were invalid" or "you have ignored God's commands"

for the sake of your traditions

"because you want to follow your traditions"

## Matthew 15:7

### General Information:

Here Jesus quotes the prophet Isaiah to rebuke the Pharisees and scribes.

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes his response to the Pharisees and scribes.

Well did Isaiah prophesy about you

"Isaiah told the truth in this prophecy about you"

when he said

It is implied that Isaiah is speaking what God told him.  
Alternate translation: "when he told what God said"

Matthew 15:8

General Information:

Jesus continues to quote the prophet Isaiah to rebuke the Pharisees and scribes.

This people honors me with their lips

Here "lips" refers to speaking. Alternate translation: "These people say all the right things to me"

me

All occurrences of this word refer to God.

but their heart is far from me

Here "heart" refers to a person's thoughts or emotions. This phrase is a way of saying the people are not truly devoted to God. Alternate translation: "but they do not really love me"

Matthew 15:9

They worship me in vain

"Their worship means nothing to me" or "They only pretend to worship me"

the commandments of people

"the rules that people make up"

Matthew 15:10

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach the crowd and his disciples about what defiles a person and why the Pharisees and scribes were wrong to criticize him.

Matthew 15:11

enters into the mouth ... comes out of the mouth

Jesus is contrasting what a person eats to what a person says. Jesus means that God is concerned with what a person says rather than what a person eats.

Matthew 15:12

the Pharisees were offended when they heard this statement

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "this statement made the Pharisees angry" or "this statement offended the Pharisees"

Matthew 15:13

Every plant that my heavenly Father has not planted will be rooted up

This is a metaphor. Jesus means that the Pharisees do not actually belong to God, so God will remove them.

my heavenly Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

will be rooted up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "my Father will uproot" or "he will take out of the ground" or "he will remove"

Matthew 15:14

Let them alone

The word "them" refers to the Pharisees.

blind guides ... both will fall into a pit

Jesus uses another metaphor to describe the Pharisees. Jesus means that the Pharisees do not understand God's commands or how to please him. Therefore, they cannot teach others how to please God.

Matthew 15:15

Connecting Statement:

Peter wants Jesus to explain the parable that Jesus told in [Matthew 15:13-14](#).

to us

"to us disciples"

Matthew 15:16

Connecting Statement:

Jesus explains the parable that he told in [Matthew 15:13-14](#).

Are you also still without understanding?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the disciples for not understanding the parable. Also, the word "you" is emphasized. Jesus cannot believe his own disciples do not understand. Alternate translation: "I am disappointed that you, my disciples, still do not understand what I teach!"

Matthew 15:17

Do you not understand ... into the latrine?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the disciples for not understanding the parable. Alternate translation: "Surely you understand ... into the latrine."

passes into the stomach

"goes into the stomach"

latrine

This a polite term for the place where people bury body waste.

Matthew 15:18

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to explain the parable that he told in [Matthew 15:13-14](#).

things that come out of the mouth

This refers to what a person says. Alternate translation: "words that a person says"

from the heart

Here "heart" refers to a person's mind or innermost being. Alternate translation: "from inside the person" or "from a person's mind"

Matthew 15:19

murder

the act of killing innocent people

Matthew 15:20

to eat with unwashed hands

This refers to eating without first ceremonially washing one's hands according to the traditions of the elders. Alternate translation: "eating without first washing one's hands"

Matthew 15:21

General Information:

This begins an account of Jesus healing the daughter of a Canaanite woman.

Jesus went away

It is implied that the disciples went with Jesus. Alternate translation: "Jesus and his disciples went away"

Matthew 15:22

Behold, a Canaanite woman came

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: "There was a Canaanite woman who came"

a Canaanite woman came out from that region

"a woman who was from that region and who belonged to the group of people called Canaanites came." The country of Canaan no longer existed by this time. She was a part of a people group that lived near the cities of Tyre and Sidon.

Have mercy on me

This phrase implies that she is requesting that Jesus heal her daughter. Alternate translation: "Have mercy and heal my daughter"

Son of David

Jesus was not David's literal son, so this may be translated as "Descendant of David." However, "Son of

David" is also a title for the Messiah, and the woman may have been calling Jesus by this title.

My daughter is severely demon-possessed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "A demon is controlling my daughter terribly" or "A demon is tormenting my daughter severely"

Matthew 15:23

answered her not a word

Here "word" refers to what a person says. Alternate translation: "said nothing to her"

Matthew 15:24

I was not sent to anyone except to the lost sheep ... Israel

This double negative emphasizes that the lost sheep are the only ones to whom Jesus was sent. Alternate translation: "I was sent only to the lost sheep ... Israel"

I was not sent to anyone

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God did not send me to anyone"

to the lost sheep of the house of Israel

This is a metaphor comparing the entire nation of Israel to sheep who have gone away from their shepherd. See how you translated this in [Matthew 10:6]

Matthew 15:25

she came

"the Canaanite woman came"

bowed down before him

This shows that the woman humbled herself before Jesus.

Matthew 15:26

It is not proper to take the children's bread and throw it to the little dogs

Jesus responds to the woman with a proverb. The basic meaning is that it is not right to take what is supposed to belong to Jews and give it to non-Jews.

the children's bread

Here "bread" refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "the children's food"

the little dogs

The Jews considered dogs to be unclean animals. Here they are used as an image for non-Jews.

Matthew 15:27

even the little dogs eat some of the crumbs that fall from their masters' tables

The woman responds by using the same imagery as Jesus used in the proverb he just spoke. She means non-Jews should be able to have a small amount of the good things Jews are throwing away.

little dogs

Use words here for dogs of any size that people keep as pets. See how you translated this in Matthew 15:26.

Matthew 15:28

let it be done

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will do"

Her daughter was healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus healed her daughter" or "Her daughter became well"

from that hour

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "at exactly the same time" or "immediately"

Matthew 15:29

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 15:30

lame, blind, mute, and crippled people

"those who could not walk, those who could not see, those who could not talk, and those whose arms or legs did not function"

They presented them at Jesus' feet

Apparently some of these sick or crippled people were unable to stand up, so when their friends brought them to Jesus, they placed them on the ground in front of him. Alternate translation: "The crowds placed the sick people on the ground in front of Jesus"

#### Matthew 15:31

the crippled made well

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the crippled become well"

the crippled ... the lame ... the blind

These nominal adjectives can be stated as adjectives. Alternate translation: "the crippled persons ... the lame persons ... the blind persons"

#### Matthew 15:32

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus feeding four thousand people with seven loaves of bread and a few small fish.

without eating, or they may faint on the way

"without eating because they might faint on the way"

#### Matthew 15:33

Where can we get enough loaves of bread in such a deserted place to satisfy so large a crowd?

The disciples use a question to state that there is nowhere to get food for the crowd. Alternate translation: "There is nowhere nearby that we can get enough bread for such a large crowd."

#### Matthew 15:34

Seven, and a few small fish

The understood information can be made clear. Alternate translation: "We have seven loaves of bread, and we also have a few small fish"

#### Matthew 15:35

sit down on the ground

Use your language's word for how people customarily eat when there is no table, whether sitting or lying down.

#### Matthew 15:36

He took the seven loaves and the fish

"Jesus held the seven loaves and the fish in his hands"

he broke the loaves

"he tore the loaves"

gave them

"gave the bread and the fish"

#### Matthew 15:37

they gathered

"the disciples gathered" or "some people gathered"

#### Matthew 15:38

Those who ate

"The people who ate"

four thousand men

"4,000 men"

#### Matthew 15:39

the region

"the area"

Magadan

This region is sometimes called "Magdala."





16 <sup>1</sup>The Pharisees and Sadducees came and tested him by asking him to show them a sign from the sky.<sup>2</sup>But he answered and said to them, "When it is evening, you say, 'It will be fair weather, for the sky is red.'

<sup>3</sup>When it is morning, you say, 'It will be foul weather, for the sky is red and overcast.' You know how to interpret the appearance of the sky, but you cannot interpret the signs of the times.<sup>4</sup>An evil and adulterous generation seeks for a sign, but no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah." Then Jesus left them and went away.

<sup>5</sup>When the disciples reached the other side, they had forgotten to take bread.<sup>6</sup>Jesus said to them, "Watch out and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees."

<sup>7</sup>The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread."

<sup>8</sup>Jesus was aware of this and said, "You of little faith, why do you reason among yourselves and say that it is because you have taken no bread?

<sup>9</sup>Do you not understand? Do you not remember the five loaves for the five thousand, and how many baskets you gathered up?<sup>10</sup>Or the seven loaves for the four thousand, and how many baskets you took up?

<sup>11</sup>How is it that you do not understand that I was not speaking to you about bread? Watch out and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees."<sup>12</sup>Then they understood that he was not telling them to beware of yeast in bread, but to beware of the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees.

<sup>13</sup>Now when Jesus came to the regions near Caesarea Philippi, he asked his disciples, saying, "Who do people say that the Son of Man is?"

<sup>14</sup>They said, "Some say John the Baptist; some, Elijah; and others, Jeremiah, or one of the prophets."

<sup>15</sup>He said to them, "But who do you say that I am?"

<sup>16</sup>Answering, Simon Peter said, "You are the Christ, the Son of the living God."

<sup>17</sup>Jesus answered and said to him, "Blessed are you, Simon son of Jonah, for flesh and blood have not revealed this to you, but my Father who is in heaven."<sup>18</sup>I also say to you that you are Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church. The gates of Hades will not prevail against it.

<sup>19</sup>I will give to you the keys of the kingdom of heaven. Whatever you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven."<sup>20</sup>Then Jesus commanded the disciples not to tell anyone that he was the Christ.

<sup>21</sup>From that time Jesus started to tell his disciples that he must go to Jerusalem, suffer many things at the hands of the elders and chief priests and scribes, be killed, and be raised back to life on the third day.

<sup>22</sup>Then Peter took him aside and rebuked him, saying, "May this be far from you, Lord! May this never happen to you!"

<sup>23</sup>But Jesus turned and said to Peter, "Get behind me, Satan! You are a stumbling block to me, for you do not think about the things of God, but about the things of people."

<sup>24</sup>Then Jesus said to his disciples, "If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.<sup>25</sup>For whoever wants to save his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake will find it.<sup>26</sup>For what does it profit a person if he gains the whole world but forfeits his life? What can a person give in exchange for his life?

<sup>27</sup>For the Son of Man will come in the glory of his Father with his angels. Then he will reward every person according to his deeds."<sup>28</sup>Truly I say to you, there are some of you standing here who will not taste death until they see the Son of Man coming in his kingdom."

---

# Matthew 16 General Notes

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Yeast

Jesus spoke of the way people thought about God as if it were bread, and he spoke of what people taught about God as if it were the yeast that makes bread dough become larger and the baked bread taste good. He did not want his followers to listen to what the Pharisees and Sadducees taught. This was because if they did listen, they would not understand who God is and how he wants his people to live.

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

### Metaphor

Jesus told his people to obey his commands. He did this by telling them to "follow" him. It is as if he were walking on a path and they were walking after him.

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Background information

Matthew continues his account from chapter 15 in verses 1-20. The account stops in verse 21 so Matthew can tell the reader that Jesus told his disciples again and again that people would kill him after he arrived in Jerusalem. Then the account continues in verses 22-27 with what happened the first time Jesus told the disciples that he would die.

### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus uses a paradox when he says, "Whoever wants to save his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake will find it" ([Matthew 16:25](#)).

## Links:

- [Matthew 16:1 Notes](#)

---

### Matthew 16:1

#### General Information:

This begins an encounter between Jesus and the Pharisees and Sadducees.

tested him

Here "tested" is used in a negative sense. Alternate translation: "challenged him" or "wanted to trap him"

### Matthew 16:2

When it is evening

The situation can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: "If the sky is red in the evening" or "If the sky is red when the sun is setting"

When it is evening

"When the sun is setting"

fair weather

This means clear, calm, and pleasant weather.

for the sky is red

As the sun is setting, Jews knew that if the color of the sky changes to red, it is a sign the next day will be clear and calm.

Matthew 16:3

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues his response to the Pharisees and Sadducees.

When it is morning

The situation can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: "If the sky is red in the morning" or "If the sky is red when the sun is rising"

foul weather

"cloudy, stormy weather"

red and overcast

"red and cloudy"

You know how to interpret the appearance of the sky

"You know how to look at the sky and understand what kind of weather you will have"

but you cannot interpret the signs of the times

"but you do not know how to look at what is happening right now and understand what it means"

Matthew 16:4

An evil and adulterous generation seeks for a sign ... given to it

Jesus is speaking to his present generation. Alternate translation: "You are an evil and adulterous generation who demands signs from me ... given to you" See how you translated this in [Matthew 12:39]

An evil and adulterous generation

Here "adulterous" is a metaphor for people who are not faithful to God. See how you translated this in [Matthew 12:39]

no sign will be given to it except the sign of Jonah

This double negative emphasizes that the sign of Jonah is the only sign that will be given. Alternate translation: "The only sign that will be given to it is the sign of Jonah"

no sign will be given to it

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will not give it a sign"

the sign of Jonah

"what happened to Jonah" or "the miracle that God did for Jonah." See how you translated this in Matthew 12:39.

Matthew 16:5

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a later time. Jesus uses an opportunity to warn his disciples about the Pharisees and Sadducees.

the other side

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "the other side of the lake" or "the other side of the Sea of Galilee"

Matthew 16:6

the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees

Here "yeast" is a metaphor that refers to evil ideas and wrong teaching. Translate as "yeast" here and do not explain its meaning in your translation. This meaning will be made clear in 16:12.

Matthew 16:7

reasoned among themselves

"discussed this with each other" or "thought about this"

Matthew 16:8

You of little faith

"You who have such little faith." Jesus addresses his disciples this way because their concern about not bringing bread shows they have little faith in Jesus to

provide for them. See how you translated this in Matthew 6:30.

why do you reason ... taken no bread?

Jesus uses a question to rebuke his disciples for not understanding what he just said. Alternate translation: "I am disappointed that you think it was because you forgot to bring bread that I talked about the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees."

Matthew 16:9

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to warn his disciples about the Pharisees and Sadducees.

Do you not understand? Do you not remember ... you gathered up?

Jesus use questions to rebuke the disciples. Alternate translation: "Surely you understand and remember ... you gathered up!" or "You should understand. You should remember ... you gathered up."

five thousand

"5,000"

Matthew 16:10

four thousand

"4,000"

Or the seven loaves ... you took up?

"Do you also not remember the seven loaves ... you took up?" Jesus uses a question to rebuke his disciples. Alternate translation: "Surely you also remember the seven loaves ... you took up!"

Matthew 16:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to warn his disciples about the Pharisees and Sadducees.

How is it that you do not understand that I was not speaking to you about bread?

Jesus uses this question to rebuke the disciples. Alternate translation: "You should have understood that I was not really speaking about bread."

the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees

Here "yeast" represents evil ideas and wrong teaching. Translate as "yeast" and do not explain the meaning in your translation. In 16:12 the disciples will understand the meaning.

Matthew 16:12

they ... them

These refer to the disciples.

Matthew 16:13

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a later time. Jesus asks his disciples if they understand who he is.

Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

the Son of Man

Jesus is referring to himself.

Matthew 16:14

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 16:15

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 16:16

the Son of the living God

This is an important title for Jesus that shows his relationship to God.

the living God

Here "living" contrasts the God of Israel to all the false gods and idols that people worshiped. Only the God of Israel is alive and has power to act.

#### Matthew 16:17

flesh and blood have not revealed

Here "flesh and blood" refers to a human being.  
Alternate translation: "a human did not reveal"

this to you

Here "this" refers to Peter's statement that Jesus is the Christ and the Son of the Living God.

but my Father who is in heaven

The understood information can be made clear.  
Alternate translation: "but it was my Father in heaven who revealed this to you"

my Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

#### Matthew 16:18

I also say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

you are Peter

The name Peter means "rock."

upon this rock I will build my church

Here "build my church" is a metaphor for uniting the people who believe in Jesus into a community. Possible meanings are 1) "this rock" represents Peter, or 2) "this rock" represents the truth that Peter had just said in [Matthew 16:16]

The gates of Hades will not prevail against it

Here "Hades" is spoken of as if it were a city surrounded by walls with gates that keep dead people in and other people out. Here "Hades" represents death, and its "gates" represent its power. Possible meanings are 1) "the powers of death will not overcome my church" or 2) "my church will break down the power of death the way an army breaks into a city."

#### Matthew 16:19

I will give to you

Here "you" is singular and refers to Peter.

the keys of the kingdom of heaven

Keys are objects that are used to lock or unlock doors. Here they represent authority.

the kingdom of heaven

This refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use "heaven" in your translation.

Whatever you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven

Here "bind" is a metaphor meaning to forbid something, and "loose" is a metaphor meaning to allow something. Also, "in heaven" is a metonym that represents God himself. Alternate translation: "God in heaven will approve whenever you forbid or allow something on earth"

#### Matthew 16:20

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 16:21

Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells his disciples for the first time that he will die soon.

suffer many things at the hands of the elders ... scribes

Here "hands" represents power. Alternate translation: "suffer many things because of the elders ... scribes"

scribes, be killed, and be raised back to life on the third day

Here to raise back to life is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. This can be stated in active form. The elders and chief priests would accuse Jesus so that others would kill him. Alternate translation: "scribes. People will then kill him, and on the third day God will make him become alive again"

third day

"Third" is the ordinal form of "three."

Matthew 16:22

Then Peter took him aside

Jesus tells them for the first time that he will die soon

Peter took him aside

"Peter spoke to Jesus when no one else could hear them"

May this be far from you

This is an idiom that means "may this never happen." Alternate translation: "No" or "Never" or "May God forbid this"

Matthew 16:23

Get behind me, Satan! You are a stumbling block to me

Jesus means that Peter is acting like Satan because Peter is trying to prevent Jesus from accomplishing what God sent him to do. Alternate translation: "Get behind me, because you are acting like Satan! You are a stumbling block to me" or "Get behind me, Satan! I call you Satan because you are a stumbling block to me"

Get behind me

"Get away from me"

you do not think about the things of God, but about the things of people

"you do not think about what God thinks is important; instead, you only think about the things that people think are important"

Matthew 16:24

to follow me

Following Jesus here represents being one of his disciples. Alternate translation: "to be my disciple" or "to be one of my disciples"

must deny himself

"must not give in to his own desires" or "must forsake his own desires"

take up his cross, and follow me

"carry his cross, and follow me." The cross represents suffering and death. Taking up the cross represents being willing to suffer and die. Alternate translation: "and obey me even to the point of suffering and dying" or "and he must obey me even to the point of suffering and dying"

and follow me

Following Jesus here represents obeying him. Alternate translation: "and obey me"

Matthew 16:25

For whoever wants

"For anyone who wants"

will lose it

This does not mean the person must necessarily die. It is a metaphor that means the person will consider obeying Jesus as being more important than his own life.

for my sake

"because he trusts me" or "on my account" or "because of me"

will find it

This metaphor means the person will experience spiritual life with God. Alternate translation: "will find true life"

Matthew 16:26

For what does it profit a person ... his life?

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. Alternate translation: "It does not profit a person ... his life."

if he gains the whole world

The words "the whole world" are an exaggeration for great riches. Alternate translation: "if he gains everything he desires"

but forfeits his life

"but he loses his life"

What can a person give in exchange for his life?

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. Alternate translation: "There is nothing that a person can give to regain his life."

Matthew 16:27

the Son of Man ... his Father ... Then he

Here Jesus refers to himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of man ... my Father ... Then I"

will come in the glory of his Father

"will come, having the same glory as his Father." This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: "will come, having the same glory as my Father"

with his angels

Possible meanings are 1) Alternate translation: "with his Father's angels" or "with my Father's angels" or 2) Alternate translation: "with the Son of Man's angels" or "with my angels." You do not have to specify in your translations to whom the angels belong. Alternate translation: "and the angels will be with him" or "and the angels will be with me"

his Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and the Son of Man, Jesus.

according to his deeds

"according to what that person has done"

Matthew 16:28

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

you

All occurrences of this word are plural and refer to the disciples.

will not taste death

Here "taste" means to experience. Alternate translation: "will not experience death" or "will not die"

until they see the Son of Man coming in his kingdom

Here "his kingdom" represents him being King. Alternate translation: "until they see the Son of Man coming as King" or "until they see the evidence that the Son of Man is King"

<sup>17</sup> Six days later Jesus took with him Peter, James, and John his brother, and brought them up a high mountain by themselves.<sup>2</sup> He was transfigured before them. His face shone like the sun, and his garments became as brilliant as the light.

<sup>3</sup> Behold, there appeared to them Moses and Elijah talking with him.<sup>4</sup> Peter answered and said to Jesus, "Lord, it is good for us to be here. If you desire, I will make here three shelters—one for you, and one for Moses, and one for Elijah."

<sup>5</sup> While he was still speaking, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them, and behold, there was a voice out of the cloud, saying, "This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. Listen to him."

<sup>6</sup> When the disciples heard it, they fell facedown and were very afraid.<sup>7</sup> Then Jesus came and touched them and said, "Get up and do not be afraid."<sup>8</sup> Then they looked up but saw no one except Jesus only.

<sup>9</sup> As they were coming down the mountain, Jesus commanded them, saying, "Report this vision to no one until the Son of Man has risen from the dead."

<sup>10</sup> His disciples asked him, saying, "Why then do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?"

<sup>11</sup> Jesus answered and said, "Elijah will indeed come and restore all things.<sup>12</sup> But I tell you, Elijah has already come, but they did not recognize him. Instead, they did whatever they wanted to him. In the same way, the Son of Man will also suffer at their hands."<sup>13</sup> Then the disciples understood that he was speaking to them about John the Baptist.

<sup>14</sup> When they had come to the crowd, a man came to him, knelt before him, and said,<sup>15</sup> "Lord, have mercy on my son, for he is epileptic and suffers severely. For he often falls into the fire or the water."<sup>16</sup> I brought him to your disciples, but they could not cure him."

<sup>17</sup> Jesus answered and said, "Unbelieving and perverse generation, how long will I have to stay with you? How long must I bear with you? Bring him here to me."<sup>18</sup> Jesus rebuked the demon, and it came out of him, and the boy was healed from that hour.

<sup>19</sup> Then the disciples came to Jesus privately and said, "Why could we not cast it out?"

<sup>20</sup> Jesus said to them, "Because of your small faith. For I truly say to you, if you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard seed, you can say to this mountain, 'Move from here to there,' and it will move, and nothing will be impossible for you."<sup>21</sup>

<sup>22</sup> While they stayed in Galilee, Jesus said to his disciples, "The Son of Man will be given over into the hands of people,<sup>23</sup> and they will kill him, and the third day he will be raised up." The disciples were deeply grieved.

<sup>24</sup> When they had come to Capernaum, the men who collected the two-drachma tax came to Peter and said, "Does not your teacher pay the two-drachma tax?"

<sup>25</sup> He said, "Yes."

When Peter came into the house, Jesus spoke to him first and said, "What do you think, Simon? From whom do the kings of the earth collect tolls or taxes? From their sons or from others?"

<sup>26</sup> "From others," Peter answered.

"Then the sons are free," Jesus said.

<sup>27</sup> "But so that we do not cause the tax collectors to stumble, go to the sea, throw in a hook, and draw in the fish that comes up first. When you have opened its mouth, you will find a shekel. Take it and give it to the tax collectors for me and you."

---

<sup>1</sup> The best ancient copies do not have v. 21, But this kind of demon does not go out except with prayer and fasting .



# Matthew 17 General Notes

## Special concepts in this chapter

Elijah

The Old Testament prophet Malachi lived many years before Jesus was born. Malachi had said that before the Messiah came a prophet named Elijah would return. Jesus explained that Malachi had been talking about John the Baptist. Jesus said this because John the Baptist had done what Malachi had said that Elijah would do. (See: prophet and christ)

"transfigured"

Scripture often speaks of God's glory as a great, brilliant light. When people see this light, they are afraid. Matthew says in this chapter that Jesus's body shone with this glorious light so that his followers could see that Jesus truly was God's Son. At the same time, God told them that Jesus was his Son. (See: glory and fear)

## Links:

- [Matthew 17:1 Notes](#)

Matthew 17:1	his garments
General Information:	"what he was wearing"
This begins the account of Jesus's transfiguration.	Matthew 17:3
Peter, James, and John his brother	Behold
"Peter, James, and James's brother John"	This word alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.
Matthew 17:2	to them
He was transfigured before them	This refers to Peter, James, and John.
When they looked at him, his appearance was different from what it had been.	with him
He was transfigured	"with Jesus"
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "His appearance had changed" or "He appeared very different"	Matthew 17:4
before them	answered and said
"in front of them" or "so they could clearly him"	"said." Peter is not responding to a question.
His face shone like the sun, and his garments became as brilliant as the light	it is good for us to be here
These are similes that emphasize how bright Jesus's appearance became.	It is not clear whether "us" refers only to Peter, James, and John, or if it refers to everyone there, including Jesus, Elijah, and Moses. If you can translate so that both options are possible, do so.

#### Matthew 17:5

behold

This alerts the reader to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

overshadowed them

"came over them"

there was a voice out of the cloud

Here "voice" refers to God speaking. Alternate translation: "God spoke to them from out of the cloud"

#### Matthew 17:6

the disciples heard it

"the disciples heard God speak"

#### Matthew 17:7

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 17:8

they ... saw no one except Jesus only

This double negative emphasizes that Jesus was the only thing that they saw. Alternate translation: "they ... saw only Jesus"

#### Matthew 17:9

Connecting Statement:

The following events happen immediately after the three disciples witness Jesus's transfiguration.

As they

"As Jesus and the disciples"

the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

#### Matthew 17:10

Why then do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?

The disciples are referring to the belief that Elijah will come back to life and return to the people of Israel before the Messiah comes.

#### Matthew 17:11

restore all things

"put things in order" or "get the people ready to receive the Messiah"

#### Matthew 17:12

But I tell you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

they ... their

All occurrences of these words may mean either 1) the Jewish leaders or 2) all the Jewish people.

the Son of Man will also suffer at their hands

Here "hands" refers to power. Alternate translation: "they will make the Son of Man suffer"

the Son of Man will

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, will"

#### Matthew 17:13

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 17:14

Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of Jesus healing a boy who had an evil spirit. These events happen immediately after Jesus and his disciples descend from the mountain.

## Matthew 17:15

have mercy on my son

It is implied that the man wants Jesus to heal his son.  
Alternate translation: "have mercy on my son and heal him"

is epileptic

This means that he sometimes had seizures. He would become unconscious and move uncontrollably.  
Alternate translation: "has seizures"

## Matthew 17:16

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Matthew 17:17

Unbelieving and perverse generation, how

"This generation does not believe in God and loves to do evil rather than good. How"

how long will I have to stay with you? How long must I bear with you?

These questions show Jesus is unhappy with the people.  
Alternate translation: "I am tired of being with you! I am tired of your unbelief and corruption!"

## Matthew 17:18

the boy was healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the boy became well"

from that hour

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "immediately" or "at that moment"

## Matthew 17:19

we

Here "we" refers to the disciples and does not include Jesus.

Why could we not cast it out?

"Why could we not make the demon come out of the boy?"

## Matthew 17:20

For I truly say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

if you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard seed

Jesus compares the size of a mustard seed to the amount of faith needed to do a miracle. A mustard seed is very small, but it grows into a large plant. Jesus means it only takes a small amount of faith to do a great miracle.

nothing will be impossible for you

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "you will be able to do anything"

## Matthew 17:21

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Matthew 17:22

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts momentarily, and Jesus foretells his death and resurrection a second time.

they stayed

"Jesus and his disciples stayed"

The Son of Man will be given over

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone will deliver the Son of Man"

given over into the hands of people

The word "hands" here is a metonym for the power that people use hands to exercise. Alternate translation: "taken and put under the power of people" or "taken and given to people who will control him"

The Son of Man

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person.

into the hands of people

Here "hands" refers to power or control. Alternate translation: "to the control of the people" or "to the people"

Matthew 17:23

him ... he

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person.

third day

"Third" is the ordinal form of "three."

he will be raised up

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will raise him up" or "God will cause him to become alive again"

deeply grieved

very sad and upset, as when a friend or family member dies. See how you translated "grieved" in Matthew 14:9.

Matthew 17:24

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts again to a later time when Jesus teaches Peter about paying the temple tax.

When they

"When Jesus and his disciples"

the two-drachma tax

This was a tax that Jewish men paid to support the temple in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "the temple tax"

Matthew 17:25

the house

"the place where Jesus was staying"

What do you think, Simon? From whom do the kings of the earth collect tolls or taxes? From their sons or from others?

Jesus asks these questions to teach Simon, not to gain information for himself. Alternate translation: ""Listen, Simon. When kings collect taxes, they collect it from people who are not members of their own family. Do you agree that this is true?"

their sons

Possible meanings are that this word 1) is a synecdoche that refers to any members of the kings' family or 2) is a metaphor for the people of the kings' own country. Alternate translation: "their own family" or "the people of their own country"

Matthew 17:26

General Information:

This is the end of the part of the story that began in Matthew 13:54, where Matthew tells of continued opposition to Jesus's ministry and teaching about the kingdom of heaven.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach Peter about paying the temple tax.

"From others," Peter answered

If you translated Jesus's questions as statements in [Matthew 17:25]

From others

"From people who are not members of their own family." See how you translated these words in [Matthew 17:25](#).

the sons

Possible meanings are that this word 1) is a synecdoche that refers to any members of the kings' family or 2) is a metaphor for the people of the kings' own country. See how you translated these words in [Matthew 17:25]

Matthew 17:27

But so that we do not cause the tax collectors to stumble, go

Causing people to stumble is a metaphor for offending them. Possible meanings are 1) Jesus was concerned

that the tax collectors would think he had done something very wrong. Alternate translation: "so that we do not cause the tax collectors to think that we do something that is very bad" or 2) Jesus was concerned that the tax collectors might think that he was a sinner and so could not be the Messiah. Alternate translation: "so that we do not cause the tax collectors to reject me"

throw in a hook

Fishermen tied hooks to the end of a line, then threw it in the water to catch fish.

its mouth

"the fish's mouth"

a shekel

a silver coin worth four days' wages

Take it

"Take the shekel"

for me and you

Here "you" is singular and refers to Peter. Each man had to pay a half shekel tax. So one shekel would be enough for Jesus and Peter to pay their taxes.

18<sup>1</sup> At that time the disciples came to Jesus and said, "Who is greatest in the kingdom of heaven?"

<sup>2</sup>Jesus called to himself a little child, set him among them,<sup>3</sup> and said, "Truly I say to you, unless you turn and become like little children, you will in no way enter the kingdom of heaven.

<sup>4</sup>Therefore, whoever humbles himself like this little child is the greatest in the kingdom of heaven.<sup>5</sup>Whoever welcomes a little child like this in my name receives me.<sup>6</sup>But whoever causes one of these little ones who believes in me to stumble, it would be better for him that a large millstone should be hung about his neck, and that he should be sunk into the depths of the sea.

<sup>7</sup>"Woe to the world because of stumbling blocks! For it is necessary that those stumbling blocks come, but woe to the person through whom those stumbling blocks come!<sup>8</sup>If your hand or your foot causes you to stumble, cut it off and throw it away from you. It is better for you to enter into life maimed or lame than to be thrown into the eternal fire having two hands or two feet.

<sup>9</sup>If your eye causes you to stumble, pluck it out and throw it away from you. It is better for you to enter into life with one eye than to be thrown into the fiery hell having both eyes.

<sup>10</sup>See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>12</sup>What do you think? If anyone has a hundred sheep, and one of them goes astray, does he not leave the ninety-nine on the hillside and go off seeking the one that went astray?<sup>13</sup>If he finds it, truly I say to you, he rejoices over it more than over the ninety-nine that did not go astray.<sup>14</sup>In the same way, it is not the will of your Father in heaven that one of these little ones should perish.

<sup>15</sup>"If your brother sins against you, go and rebuke him, between you and him alone. If he listens to you, you will have gained your brother.<sup>16</sup>But if he does not listen to you, take one or two others along with you so that by the mouth of two or three witnesses every word might be confirmed.

<sup>17</sup>And if he refuses to listen to them, tell the matter to the church. If he also refuses to listen to the church, let him be to you as a pagan and a tax collector.

<sup>18</sup>I tell you truly, whatever things you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven.<sup>19</sup>Again I tell you truly, if two of you agree on earth about anything they ask, it will be done for them by my Father who is in heaven.<sup>20</sup>For where two or three are gathered together in my name, there I am in their midst."

<sup>21</sup>Then Peter came and said to Jesus, "Lord, how often will my brother sin against me and I forgive him? Until seven times?"

<sup>22</sup>Jesus said to him, "I do not tell you seven times, but until seventy times seven.

<sup>23</sup>Therefore the kingdom of heaven is similar to a certain king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants.

<sup>24</sup>As he began the settling, one servant was brought to him who owed him ten thousand talents.<sup>25</sup>But since he did not have the means to repay, his master commanded him to be sold, together with his wife and children and everything that he had, and payment to be made.

<sup>26</sup>So the servant fell down, bowed down before him, and said, 'Master, have patience with me, and I will pay you everything.'<sup>27</sup>So the master of that servant, since he was moved with compassion, released him and forgave him the debt.

<sup>28</sup>But that servant went out and found one of his fellow servants, who owed him one hundred denarii. He took hold of him, began to choke him, and said, 'Pay me what you owe.'

<sup>29</sup>"But his fellow servant fell down and pleaded with him, saying, 'Have patience with me, and I will repay you.'

<sup>30</sup>But the first servant refused. Instead, he went and threw him into prison until he should pay him what he owed.

<sup>31</sup>When his fellow servants saw what had happened, they were deeply grieved. They came and told their master everything that had happened.

<sup>32</sup>"Then that servant's master called him and said to him, 'You wicked servant, I forgave you all that debt because you pleaded with me.'<sup>33</sup>Should you not have had mercy on your fellow servant, even as I had mercy on you?"

<sup>34</sup>His master was angry and handed him over to the torturers until he would pay all that was owed.<sup>35</sup>So also my heavenly Father will do to you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."

# Matthew 18 General Notes

## Special concepts in this chapter

What should Jesus's followers do when other followers sin against them?

Jesus taught that his followers must treat each other well and not be angry with each other. They should forgive anyone who is sorry for his sin, even if he has committed the same sin before. If he is not sorry for his sin, Jesus's followers should speak with him alone or in a small group. If he is still not sorry after that, then Jesus's followers can treat him as guilty. (See: repent and sin)

## Links:

- [Matthew 18:1 Notes](#)

---

### Matthew 18:1

#### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story that runs through Matthew 18:35, where Jesus teaches about life in the kingdom of heaven. Here, Jesus uses a little child to teach the disciples.

At that time

Very soon after the events described in the previous verse.

Who is greatest

"Who is the most important" or "Who among us will be the most important"

in the kingdom of heaven

The phrase "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "in God's kingdom" or "when our God in heaven establishes his rule on earth"

### Matthew 18:2

#### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Matthew 18:3

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

unless you turn ... children, you will in no way enter the kingdom of heaven

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "you will enter the kingdom of heaven only if you turn ... children"

become like little children

Jesus uses a simile to teach the disciples that they should not be concerned with who is most important. They should be concerned with becoming humble like a child.

enter the kingdom of heaven

The phrase "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "enter God's kingdom" or "belong to our God in heaven when he establishes his rule on earth"

### Matthew 18:4

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues teaching the disciples that they need to be humble like a child if they want to be important in God's kingdom.

is the greatest

"is the most important" or "will be the most important"

in the kingdom of heaven

The phrase "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "in God's kingdom" or "when our God in heaven establishes his rule on earth"

Matthew 18:5

in my name

Here "my name" refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: "because of me" or "because he is my disciple"

Whoever ... in my name receives me

Jesus means that it is the same as welcoming him. Alternate translation: "When someone ... in my name, it is like he is welcoming me" or "When someone ... in my name, it is as if he were welcoming me"

Matthew 18:6

that a large millstone should be hung about his neck, and that he should be sunk into the depths of the sea

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "if someone put a large millstone around his neck and threw him into the deep sea"

millstone

This is a large, heavy, circular stone used for grinding wheat grain into flour. Alternate translation: "a heavy stone"

Matthew 18:7

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to use a little child to teach the disciples and warns against the terrible consequences of causing children to sin.

to the world

Here "world" refers to people. Alternate translation: "to the people of the world"

stumbling blocks ... those stumbling blocks come ... the person through whom those stumbling blocks come

Here "stumbling" is a metaphor for sin. Alternate translation: "things that cause people to sin ... things come that cause people to sin ... any person who causes others to sin"

Matthew 18:8

If your hand or your foot causes you to stumble, cut it off and throw it away from you

Jesus exaggerates here to emphasize that people must do anything necessary to remove from their lives what causes them to sin.

your ... you

All occurrences of these words are singular. Jesus is speaking to all people in general. It may be more natural for your language to translate with a plural "you."

into life

"into eternal life"

than to be thrown into the eternal fire having two hands or two feet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "than to have both hands and feet when God throws you into the eternal fire"

Matthew 18:9

If your eye causes you to stumble, pluck it out and throw it away from you

The command to destroy the eye, perhaps the most important part of the body, is probably an exaggeration for his hearers to do anything necessary to remove from their lives anything that causes them to sin.

causes you to stumble

Here "stumble" is a metaphor for sin. Alternate translation: "causes you to sin"

your ... you

All occurrences of these words are singular. Jesus is speaking to all people in general. It may be more natural for your language to translate with a plural "you."



into life

"into eternal life"

than to be thrown into the fiery hell having both eyes

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "than to have both eyes when God throws you into the fiery hell"

the fiery hell

"hell, which is full of fire" or "the fire of hell"

Matthew 18:10

See that

"Be careful that" or "Be sure that"

you do not despise any of these little ones

"you do not think of these little ones as being unimportant." This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "you show respect to these little ones"

For I say to you

This add emphasis to what Jesus says next.

that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven

Jewish teachers taught that only the most important angels could be in God's presence. Jesus means that the most important angels speak to God about these little ones.

always look on the face of my Father

This is an idiom that means they are in God's presence. Alternate translation: "are always close to my Father" or "are always in the presence of my Father"

my Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

Matthew 18:11

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 18:12

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to use a little child to teach the disciples and tells a parable to explain God's care for people.

What do you think?

Jesus uses this question to get people's attention. Alternate translation: "Think about how people act." or "Think about this."

you

This word is plural.

a hundred ... ninety-nine

"100 ... 99"

does he not leave ... astray?

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. Alternate translation: "he will always leave ... astray."

Matthew 18:13

If he finds it ... that did not go astray

This is the end of the parable that begins with the words "If anyone" in verse 12.

truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next. The word "you" is plural.

Matthew 18:14

it is not the will of your Father in heaven that one of these little ones should perish

"your Father in heaven does not want any of these little ones to die" or "your Father in heaven does not want even one of these little ones to die"

your

This word is plural.

Father

This is an important title for God.

## Matthew 18:15

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach his disciples about forgiveness and reconciliation.

your brother

This refers to a fellow believer in God, not a physical brother. Alternate translation: "your fellow believer"

you will have gained your brother

"you will have made your relationship with your brother good again"

## Matthew 18:16

so that by the mouth of two or three witnesses every word might be confirmed

Here "mouth" and "word" refer to what a person says. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that two or three witnesses may say that what you say about your brother is true"

## Matthew 18:17

if he refuses to listen to them

"if your fellow believer refuses to listen to the witnesses who came with you"

to the church

"to the whole community of believers"

let him be to you as a pagan and a tax collector

"treat him as you would treat a pagan or tax collector." This implies that they should remove him from the community of believers.

## Matthew 18:18

I tell you truly

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

you

All occurrences of this word are plural.

whatever things you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven

Here "bind" is a metaphor meaning to forbid something, and "loose" is a metaphor meaning to allow something. Also, "in heaven" is a metonym that represents God himself. See how you translated similar phrases in [Matthew 16:19]

## Matthew 18:19

if two of you

It is implied that Jesus means "if at least two of you" or "if two or more of you."

they ... them

These refer to the "two of you." Alternate translation: "you ... you"

my Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

## Matthew 18:20

two or three

It is implied that Jesus means "two or more" or "at least two."

are gathered

"meet"

in my name

Here "name" refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: "because of me" or "because they are my disciples"

## Matthew 18:21

seven times

"7 times"

## Matthew 18:22

seventy times seven

Possible meanings are 1) "70 times 7" or 2) "77 times." If using a number would be confusing, you can translate

it as "more times than you can count" or "you must always forgive him."

Matthew 18:23

Connecting Statement:

Jesus uses a parable to teach about forgiveness and reconciliation.

the kingdom of heaven is similar

This introduces a parable. See how you translated a similar parable introduction in [Matthew 13:24]

to settle accounts with his servants

"his servants to pay him what they owed him" or "to have his servants tell him what they had done with the goods he had entrusted to them"

Matthew 18:24

the settling

This abstract noun can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "to settle accounts"

one servant was brought

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone brought one of the king's servants"

ten thousand talents

"10,000 talents" or "more money than the servant could ever repay"

Matthew 18:25

his master commanded him to be sold ... and payment to be made

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the king commanded his servants to sell the man ... and to pay the debt with the money from the sale"

Matthew 18:26

fell down, bowed down

This shows that the servant approached the king in the most humble way possible.

before him

"before the king"

Matthew 18:27

he was moved with compassion

"he felt compassion for the servant"

released him

"let him go"

Matthew 18:28

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable to his disciples.

one hundred denarii

"100 denarii" or "one hundred days' wages"

He took hold of him

"The first servant took hold of his fellow servant"

Matthew 18:29

fell down

This shows that the fellow servant approached the first servant in the most humble way possible. See how you translated this in [Matthew 18:26]

and pleaded with him

"and begged him"

Matthew 18:30

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable to his disciples.

he went and threw him into prison

"the first servant went and threw his fellow servant into prison"

Matthew 18:31

his fellow servants

"other servants"

told their master

"told the king"

deeply grieved	His master
very sad and upset, as when a friend or family member dies. See how you translated this phrase in Matthew 17:23.	"The king"
Matthew 18:32	handed him over
Connecting Statement:	"gave him over." Most likely the king himself did not take the first servant to the torturers. Alternate translation: "he ordered his servants to give him over"
Jesus continues telling a parable to his disciple.	to the torturers
Then that servant's master called him	"to those who would torture him"
"Then the king called the first servant"	that was owed
you pleaded with me	This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the first servant owed the king"
"you begged me"	Matthew 18:35
Matthew 18:33	my heavenly Father
Should you not have ... you?	This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.
The king uses a question to scold the first servant. Alternate translation: "You should have ... you!"	you ... your
Matthew 18:34	All occurrences of these words are plural. Jesus is speaking to his disciples, but this parable teaches a general truth that applies to all believers.
General Information:	from your heart
This is the end of the part of the story that began in Matthew 18:1, where Jesus teaches about life in the kingdom of heaven.	Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's inner being. The phrase "from your heart" is an idiom that means "sincerely." Alternate translation: "sincerely" or "completely"
Connecting Statement:	
Jesus concludes his parable about forgiveness and reconciliation.	

**19** <sup>1</sup>It came about that when Jesus had finished these words, he departed from Galilee and came to the region of Judea that is beyond the Jordan River. <sup>2</sup>Great crowds followed him, and he healed them there.

<sup>3</sup>Pharisees came to him, testing him, saying to him, "Is it lawful for a man to divorce his wife for any cause?"

<sup>4</sup>Jesus answered and said, "Have you not read that he who made them from the beginning made them male and female?"

<sup>5</sup>He who made them also said, 'For this reason a man will leave his father and mother and join to his wife, and the two will become one flesh.' <sup>6</sup>So they are no longer two, but one flesh. Therefore what God has joined together, let no one tear apart."

<sup>7</sup>They said to him, "Why then did Moses command us to give a certificate of divorce and then to send her away?"

<sup>8</sup>He said to them, "For your hardness of heart, Moses allowed you to divorce your wives, but from the beginning it was not that way. <sup>9</sup>I say to you, whoever divorces his wife, except for sexual immorality, and marries another, commits adultery." <sup>1</sup>

<sup>10</sup>The disciples said to Jesus, "If that is the case of a man with his wife, it is not good to marry."

<sup>11</sup>But Jesus said to them, "Not everyone can accept this saying, but only those to whom it is given. <sup>12</sup>For there are eunuchs who were born that way from their mother's womb, and there are eunuchs who were made eunuchs by men, and there are eunuchs who made themselves eunuchs for the sake of the kingdom of heaven. He who is able to accept this teaching, let him accept it."

<sup>13</sup>Then some little children were brought to him so that he would lay his hands on them and pray, but the disciples rebuked them. <sup>14</sup>But Jesus said, "Permit the little children, and do not forbid them to come to me, for the kingdom of heaven belongs to such ones." <sup>15</sup>He placed his hands on the children, and then he went away from there.

<sup>16</sup>Behold, a man came to Jesus and said, "Teacher, what good thing must I do that I may have eternal life?"

<sup>17</sup>Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? Only one is good, but if you want to enter into life, keep the commandments."

<sup>18</sup>The man said to him, "Which commandments?"

Jesus said, "Do not murder, do not commit adultery, do not steal, do not bear false witness,

<sup>19</sup>honor your father and your mother, and love your neighbor as yourself."

<sup>20</sup>The young man said to him, "All these things I have obeyed. What do I still need?"

<sup>21</sup>Jesus said to him, "If you wish to be perfect, go, sell your possessions, and give to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven; and come, follow me." <sup>22</sup>But when the young man heard what Jesus said, he went away sorrowful, for he had many possessions.

<sup>23</sup>Jesus said to his disciples, "Truly I say to you, it is hard for a rich man to enter the kingdom of heaven. <sup>24</sup>Again I say to you, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of God."

<sup>25</sup>When the disciples heard it, they were very astonished and said, "Who then can be saved?"

<sup>26</sup>Jesus looked at them and said, "With people this is impossible, but with God all things are possible."

<sup>27</sup>Then Peter answered and said to him, "See, we have left everything and followed you. What then will we have?"

<sup>28</sup>Jesus said to them, "Truly I say to you, in the new age when the Son of Man sits on his glorious throne, you who have followed me will also sit upon twelve thrones, judging the twelve tribes of Israel.

<sup>29</sup>Every one who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or land for my name's sake will receive one hundred times as much and will inherit eternal life.<sup>30</sup>But many who are first will be last, and the last will be first.

<sup>1</sup>The best ancient copies do not have and the man who marries a woman who is divorced commits adultery .

# Matthew 19 General Notes

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Divorce

Jesus taught about divorce because the Pharisees wanted people to think Jesus's teachings about divorce were wrong ([Matthew 19:3-12](#)). Jesus talked about what God had first said about marriage when he created it.

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

### Metonymy

Jesus often says the word "heaven" when he wants his hearers to think of God, who lives in heaven ([Matthew 19:12](#)).

## Links:

- [Matthew 19:1 Notes](#)

### Matthew 19:1

#### General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story that runs through [Matthew 22:46]

It came about that when

This phrase shifts the story from Jesus's teachings to what happened next. Alternate translation: "When" or "After"

had finished these words

Here "words" refers to what Jesus taught starting in [Matthew 18:1]

departed from

"walked away from" or "left"

### Matthew 19:2

#### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Matthew 19:3

#### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about marriage and divorce.

came to him

"came to Jesus"

testing him, saying to him

Here "tested" is used in a negative sense. Alternate translation: "and challenged him by asking him" or "and wanted to trap him by asking him"

### Matthew 19:4

Have you not read that he who made them from the beginning made them male and female?

Jesus uses this question to remind the Pharisees of what the scripture says about men, women, and marriage. Alternate translation: "Surely you have read that in the beginning when God created people he made them male and female."

## Matthew 19:5

General Information:

Jesus quotes from Genesis to show that a husband and wife should not divorce.

He who made them also said, 'For this reason ... flesh.'

This is part of what Jesus expected the Pharisees to have understood from the scripture. The direct quotation can be expressed as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "And surely you know that God also said that for this reason ... flesh."

For this reason

This is a part of the quotation from Genesis story about Adam and Eve. In that context the reason a man will leave his father and mother is because God created a woman to be the man's companion.

join to his wife

"stay close to his wife" or "live with his wife"

the two will become one flesh

This is a metaphor that emphasizes the unity of a husband and a wife. Alternate translation: "they will become like one person"

## Matthew 19:6

So they are no longer two, but one flesh

This is a metaphor that emphasizes the unity of a husband and a wife. Alternate translation: "So a husband and wife are no longer like two persons, but they are like one person"

## Matthew 19:7

They said to him

"The Pharisees said to Jesus"

command us

"command us Jews"

certificate of divorce

This is a document that legally ends the marriage.

## Matthew 19:8

For your hardness of heart

The phrase "hardness of heart" is a metaphor that means "stubbornness." Alternate translation: "Because of your stubbornness" or "Because you are stubborn"

your hardness ... allowed you ... your wives

Here "you" and "your" are plural. Jesus is speaking to the Pharisees, but Moses gave this command many years earlier to their ancestors. Moses's command applied to all Jewish men in general.

from the beginning

Here "beginning" refers to when God first created man and woman.

## Matthew 19:9

I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

marries another

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "marries another woman"

## Matthew 19:10

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Matthew 19:11

to whom it is given

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to whom God gives it" or "whom God enables to follow it"

## Matthew 19:12

there are eunuchs who were made eunuchs by men

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "there are men whom other men have made eunuchs"

eunuchs who made themselves eunuchs

Possible meanings are 1) "men who have made themselves eunuchs by removing their private parts" or 2) "men who choose to remain unmarried and sexually pure."

for the sake of the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is found only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "so they can better serve our God in heaven"

Matthew 19:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus receives and blesses little children.

some little children were brought to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "some people brought little children to Jesus"

Matthew 19:14

Permit

allow

do not forbid them to come to me

"do not stop them from coming to me"

for the kingdom of heaven belongs to such ones

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is found only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "for when our God in heaven establishes his rule on earth, he will be king over such as these" or "for God will allow such as these into his kingdom"

belongs to such ones

"belongs to those who are like children." This is a simile that means those who are humble like children will enter God's kingdom.

Matthew 19:15

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 19:16

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a different time when Jesus explains to a rich man what it will cost to follow him.

Behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

good thing

This means a thing that pleases God.

Matthew 19:17

Why do you ask me about what is good?

Jesus uses this rhetorical question to encourage the man to think about his reason for asking Jesus about what is good. Alternate translation: "You ask me about what is good" or "Think about why you ask me about what is good."

Only one is good

"God alone is completely good"

to enter into life

"to receive eternal life"

Matthew 19:18

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 19:19

love your neighbor as yourself

The Jewish people believed that their neighbors were only other Jews. Jesus is extending that definition to include all people. Alternate translation: "love every other person as much as you love yourself"



#### Matthew 19:20

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 19:21

If you wish

"If you want"

to the poor

This nominal adjective can be stated as an adjective.  
Alternate translation: "to those who are poor"

you will have treasure in heaven

The phrase "treasure in heaven" is a metaphor that refers to a reward from God. Alternate translation: "God will reward you in heaven"

#### Matthew 19:22

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 19:23

Connecting Statement:

Jesus explains to his disciples the rewards of giving up material possessions and relationships to follow him.

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

to enter the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is found only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "to accept our God in heaven as their king" or "to enter God's kingdom"

#### Matthew 19:24

it is easier ... kingdom of God

Jesus uses an exaggeration to illustrate how very difficult it is for rich people to enter the kingdom of God.

the eye of a needle

the hole near one end of a needle, through which thread is passed

#### Matthew 19:25

they were very astonished

"the disciples were amazed." It is implied that they were astonished because they believed having riches was proof that God approved of someone.

Who then can be saved?

The disciples use a question to emphasize their surprise. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then there is no one whom God will save!" or "Then there is no one who will receive eternal life!"

#### Matthew 19:26

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 19:27

we have left everything

"we have left all our wealth" or "we have given up all our possessions"

What then will we have?

"What good thing will God give us?"

#### Matthew 19:28

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

in the new age

"in the new time." This refers to when God restores all things. Alternate translation: "at the time when God makes all things new"

the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

sits on his glorious throne

Sitting on his throne represents ruling as a king. His throne being glorious represents his rule being glorious. Alternate translation: "sits as king on his glorious throne" or "rules gloriously as king"

sit upon twelve thrones

Here sitting on thrones refers to ruling as kings. The disciples will not be equal to Jesus who is also on a throne. They will receive authority from him. Alternate translation: "sit as kings on 12 thrones"

the twelve tribes of Israel

Here "tribes" refers to people from those tribes. Alternate translation: "the people of the 12 tribes of Israel"

Matthew 19:29

for my name's sake

Here "name" refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: "because of me" or "because he believes in me"

receive one hundred times as much

"receive from God 100 times as many good things as they gave up"

will inherit eternal life

This is an idiom that means "God will bless them with eternal life" or "God will cause them to live forever."

Matthew 19:30

But many who are first will be last, and the last will be first

Here "first" and "last" refer to people's status or importance. Jesus is contrasting people's status now with their status in the kingdom of heaven. Alternate translation: "But many who seem to be important now will be the least important, and many who seem to be unimportant now will be very important"

---

20 <sup>1</sup>"For the kingdom of heaven is like a landowner who went out early in the morning to hire laborers for his vineyard. <sup>2</sup>After he had agreed with the laborers for one denarius a day, he sent them into his vineyard.

<sup>3</sup>He went out again about the third hour and saw other laborers standing idle in the marketplace. <sup>4</sup>To them he said, 'You also, go into the vineyard, and I will give you what is right.' So they went to work.

<sup>5</sup>Again he went out about the sixth hour and again the ninth hour, and did the same. <sup>6</sup>Once more about the eleventh hour he went out and found others standing idle. He said to them, 'Why do you stand here idle all the day long?'

<sup>7</sup>"They said to him, 'Because no one has hired us.'

"He said to them, 'You also go into the vineyard.'

<sup>8</sup>When evening came, the owner of the vineyard said to his manager, 'Call the laborers and pay them their wages, beginning from the last to the first.'

<sup>9</sup>"When the laborers who had been hired at the eleventh hour came, each of them received a denarius. <sup>10</sup>"When the first laborers came, they thought that they would receive more, but they also received one denarius each.

<sup>11</sup>"When they received their wages, they complained about the landowner. <sup>12</sup>They said, 'These last laborers have spent only one hour in work, but you have made them equal to us, we who have borne the burden of the day and the scorching heat.'

<sup>13</sup>"But the owner answered and said to one of them, 'Friend, I do you no wrong. Did you not agree with me for one denarius?' <sup>14</sup>"Take what belongs to you and go your way. I choose to give to these last hired laborers just the same as to you.

<sup>15</sup>Is it not lawful for me to do as I want with what belongs to me? Or are you envious because I am good?' <sup>16</sup>So the last will be first, and the first last." [1](#)

<sup>17</sup>As Jesus was going up to Jerusalem, he took the twelve disciples aside, and on the way he said to them, <sup>18</sup>"See, we are going up to Jerusalem, and the Son of Man will be given over to the chief priests and scribes. They will condemn him to death <sup>19</sup>and will deliver him to the Gentiles for them to mock, to flog, and to crucify him. But on the third day he will be raised up."

<sup>20</sup>Then the mother of the sons of Zebedee came to Jesus with her sons. She bowed down before him and asked for something from him.

<sup>21</sup>Jesus said to her, "What do you wish?"

She said to him, "Command that these my two sons may sit, one at your right hand and one at your left hand, in your kingdom."

<sup>22</sup>But Jesus answered and said, "You do not know what you are asking. Are you able to drink the cup that I am about to drink?"

They said to him, "We are able."

<sup>23</sup>He said to them, "My cup you will indeed drink. But to sit at my right hand and at my left hand is not mine to give, but it is for those for whom it has been prepared by my Father." <sup>24</sup>When the other ten disciples heard this, they were very angry with the two brothers.

<sup>25</sup>But Jesus called them to himself and said, "You know that the rulers of the Gentiles dominate them, and their important men exercise authority over them. <sup>26</sup>But it must not be this way among you. Instead, whoever wishes to become great among you must be your servant, <sup>27</sup>and whoever wishes to be first among you must be your servant, <sup>28</sup>just as the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many."

<sup>29</sup>As they went out from Jericho, a great crowd followed him. <sup>30</sup>There were two blind men sitting by the road. When they heard that Jesus was passing by, they shouted, "Lord, Son of David, have mercy on us." <sup>31</sup>The crowd

rebuked them, telling them to be quiet, but they cried out even more loudly, "Lord, Son of David, have mercy on us."

<sup>32</sup>Then Jesus stood still and called to them and said, "What do you wish me to do for you?"

<sup>33</sup>They said to him, "Lord, that our eyes may be opened." <sup>34</sup>Then Jesus, being moved with compassion, touched their eyes. Immediately they received their sight and followed him.

---

<sup>1</sup>The best ancient copies do not have Many are called, but few are chosen .

---

# Matthew 20 General Notes

## Special concepts in this chapter

The parable of the landowner and his vineyard

Jesus tells this parable ([Matthew 20:1-16](#)) to teach his disciples that what God says is right is different from what people say is right.

## Links:

- [Matthew 20:1 Notes](#)

### Matthew 20:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable about a landowner who hires workers, to illustrate how God will reward those who belong to the kingdom of heaven.

For the kingdom of heaven is like

This is the beginning of a parable. See how you translated the introduction to the parable in [Matthew 13:24]

### Matthew 20:2

After he had agreed

"After the landowner had agreed"

one denarius

This was the daily wage at that time. Alternate translation: "one day's wages"

he sent them into his vineyard

"he sent them to work in his vineyard"

### Matthew 20:3

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

He went out again

"The landowner went out again"

the third hour

The third hour is around nine in the morning.

standing idle in the marketplace

"standing in the marketplace not doing anything" or "standing in the marketplace with no work to do"

marketplace

a large, open-air area where people buy and sell food and other items

### Matthew 20:4

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 20:5

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

Again he went out

"Again the landowner went out"

the sixth hour and again the ninth hour

The sixth hour is around noon. The ninth hour is around three in the afternoon.

did the same

This means the landowner went to the marketplace and hired workers.

#### Matthew 20:6

the eleventh hour

This is about five in the afternoon.

standing idle

"not doing anything" or "not having any work"

#### Matthew 20:7

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 20:8

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

beginning from the last to the first

You can make clear the understood information.

Alternate translation: "beginning with the workers who started working last, then the workers who started working earlier, and finally the workers who started working first" or "first paying the workers I hired last, then paying the workers I hired earlier in the day, and finally paying the workers I hired first"

#### Matthew 20:9

who had been hired

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom the landowner hired"

#### Matthew 20:10

one denarius

This was the daily wage at that time. Alternate translation: "one day's wages"

#### Matthew 20:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

When they received

"When the workers who had worked the longest received"

the landowner

"the vineyard owner"

#### Matthew 20:12

you have made them equal to us

"you have paid them the same amount of money as you paid us"

we who have borne the burden of the day and the scorching heat

The phrase "borne the burden of the day" is an idiom that means "worked the entire day." Alternate translation: "we who have worked the entire day, even during the hottest part"

#### Matthew 20:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

one of them

"one of the workers who had worked the longest"

Friend

Use a word that one man would use to address another man whom he is politely rebuking.

Did you not agree with me for one denarius?

The landowner uses a question to rebuke the workers who were complaining. Alternate translation: "We already agreed that I would give you one denarius."

one denarius

This was the daily wage at that time. Alternate translation: "one day's wages"

Matthew 20:14

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 20:15

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes his parable about a landowner who hires workers.

Is it not lawful for me to do as I want with what belongs to me?

The landowner uses a question to correct the workers who were complaining. Alternate translation: "It is lawful for me to do what I want with my own possessions."

Is it not lawful for me

"Do I not have the right" or "Is it not proper." The landowner is reminding the laborers that everyone allows people to do what they wish with their own property. He is not asking if there is a law against what he is doing.

Or are you envious because I am good?

The landowner uses a question to rebuke the workers who were complaining. Alternate translation: "You should not be envious because I am good."

I am good

In the context here, the reader should understand the landowner being "good" as "generous," the opposite of the laborers being "evil," which is "envious."

Matthew 20:16

So the last will be first, and the first last

Here "first" and "last" refer to people's status or importance. Jesus is contrasting people's status now with their status in the kingdom of heaven. See how you translated a similar statement in Matthew 19:30. Alternate translation: "So those who seem to be unimportant now will be the most important, and those who seem to be the most important now will be the least important"

So the last will be first

Here the parable has ended and Jesus is speaking. Alternate translation: "Then Jesus said, 'So the last will be first'"

Matthew 20:17

Connecting Statement:

Jesus foretells his death and resurrection a third time as he and his disciples travel to Jerusalem.

going up to Jerusalem

Jerusalem was on top of a hill, so people had to travel up to get there.

Matthew 20:18

See, we are going

Jesus uses the word "See" to tell the disciples they must pay attention to what he is about to tell them.

we are going

Here "we" refers to Jesus and the disciples.

the Son of Man will be given over

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone will give the Son of Man over"

Son of Man ... him

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person. If necessary, you can translate these in the first person.

They will condemn

The chief priests and scribes will condemn Jesus.

#### Matthew 20:19

and will deliver him to the Gentiles for them to mock

The chief priests and scribes will deliver Jesus to the Gentiles, and the Gentiles will mock him.

to flog

"to whip him" or "to beat him with whips"

third day

"Third" is the ordinal form of "three."

him ... him ... he

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person. If necessary, you can translate these in the first person.

he will be raised up

The words "be raised up" are an idiom for "be made alive again." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will raise him up" or "God will make him alive again"

#### Matthew 20:20

Connecting Statement:

In response to the question that the mother of two of the disciples asks, Jesus teaches his disciples about authority and serving others in the kingdom of heaven.

the sons of Zebedee

This refers to James and John.

#### Matthew 20:21

at your right hand ... at your left hand

These refer to having positions of power, authority, and honor.

in your kingdom

Here "kingdom" refers to Jesus ruling as king. Alternate translation: "when you are king"

#### Matthew 20:22

You do not know

Here "you" is plural and refers to the mother and the sons.

Are you able

Here "you" is plural, but Jesus is only talking to the two sons.

drink the cup that I am about to drink

To "drink the cup" or "drink from the cup" is an idiom that means to experience suffering. Alternate translation: "suffer what I am about to suffer"

They said

"The sons of Zebedee said" or "James and John said"

#### Matthew 20:23

My cup you will indeed drink

To "drink a cup" or "drink from a cup" is an idiom that means to experience suffering. Alternate translation: "You will indeed suffer as I will suffer"

right hand ... left hand

These refer to having positions of power, authority, and honor. See how you translated this in [Matthew 20:21]

but it is for those for whom it has been prepared by my Father

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for my Father has prepared those places, and he will give them to whom he chooses"

my Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

#### Matthew 20:24

heard this

"heard what James and John had asked Jesus"

they were very angry with the two brothers

If necessary, you can make explicit why the ten disciples were angry. Alternate translation: "they were very angry with the two brothers because each of them also wanted to sit in a place of honor next to Jesus"

Matthew 20:25

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes teaching his disciples about authority and serving others.

called them

"called the twelve disciples"

the rulers of the Gentiles dominate them

"the Gentile kings forcefully rule over their people"

their important men

"the important men among the Gentiles"

exercise authority over them

"have control over the people"

Matthew 20:26

whoever wishes

"whoever wants" or "whoever desires"

Matthew 20:27

to be first

"to be important"

Matthew 20:28

the Son of Man ... his life

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. If necessary, you can translate this in the first person.

did not come to be served

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "did not come so that other people would serve him" or "did not come so that other people would serve me"

but to serve

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "but to serve other people"

to give his life as a ransom for many

Jesus's life being a "ransom" is a metaphor for his being punished in order to set people free from being punished for their own sins. Alternate translation: "to give his life as a substitute for many" or "to give his life as a substitute to set many free"

to give his life

To give one's life is an idiom meaning to die voluntarily, usually in order to help others. Alternate translation: "to die"

for many

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "for many people"

Matthew 20:29

Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of Jesus healing two blind men.

As they went

This refers to the disciples and Jesus.

followed him

"followed Jesus"

Matthew 20:30

There were two blind men sitting

This is sometimes translated as "Behold, there were two blind men sitting." Matthew is alerting us to a new people in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

When they heard

"When the two blind men heard"

was passing by

"was walking by them"



Son of David

Jesus was not David's literal son, so this may be translated as "Descendant of King David." However, "Son of David" is also a title for the Messiah, and the men were probably calling Jesus by this title.

Matthew 20:31

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 20:32

called to them

"called to the blind men"

do you wish

"do you want"

Matthew 20:33

that our eyes may be opened

The men speak of becoming able to see as if there eyes were to be opened. Because of Jesus's previous question, we understand that they were expressing their desire. Alternate translation: "we want you to open our eyes" or "we want to be able to see"

Matthew 20:34

being moved with compassion

"having compassion" or "feeling compassion for them"

<sup>21</sup> As Jesus and his disciples approached Jerusalem and came to Bethphage, to the Mount of Olives, then Jesus sent two disciples,<sup>2</sup> saying to them, "Go into the next village, and you will immediately find a donkey tied up there, and a colt with her. Untie them and bring them to me.<sup>3</sup> If anyone says anything to you about that, you will say, 'The Lord has need of them,' and that person will immediately send them with you."

<sup>4</sup> Now all this happened to fulfill what was spoken through the prophet, saying,

<sup>5</sup> "Tell the daughter of Zion,  
'See, your King is coming to you,  
Humble and riding on a donkey—  
on a colt, the foal of a donkey.'"

<sup>6</sup> Then the disciples went and did just as Jesus had instructed them.<sup>7</sup> They brought the donkey and the colt and put their cloaks on them, and Jesus sat upon the cloaks.<sup>8</sup> Most of the crowd spread their cloaks on the road, and others cut branches off the trees and spread them in the road.

<sup>9</sup> Then the crowds that went before Jesus and those that followed him were shouting,

"Hosanna to the son of David!  
Blessed is the one who comes in the name of the Lord!  
Hosanna in the highest!"

<sup>10</sup> When Jesus had come into Jerusalem, all the city was stirred and said, "Who is this?"

<sup>11</sup> The crowds answered, "This is Jesus the prophet from Nazareth in Galilee."

<sup>12</sup> Then Jesus entered the temple. He cast out all those who bought and sold in the temple, and turned over the tables of the money changers and the seats of those who sold doves.<sup>13</sup> He said to them, "It is written, 'My house will be called a house of prayer,' but you make it a den of robbers."

<sup>14</sup> Then the blind and the lame came to him in the temple, and he healed them.

<sup>15</sup> But when the chief priests and the scribes saw the marvelous things that he did, and when they heard the children shouting in the temple and saying, "Hosanna to the Son of David," they became very angry.

<sup>16</sup> They said to him, "Do you hear what they are saying?"

Jesus said to them, "Yes! But have you never read,

'Out of the mouths of little children and nursing infants  
you have prepared praise?'"

<sup>17</sup> Then Jesus left them and went out of the city to Bethany and spent the night there.

<sup>18</sup> Now in the morning as he returned to the city, he was hungry.<sup>19</sup> Seeing a fig tree along the roadside, he went to it and found nothing on it except leaves. He said to it, "May there be no fruit from you ever again," and immediately the fig tree withered.

<sup>20</sup> When the disciples saw it, they marveled and said, "How did the fig tree immediately wither away?"

<sup>21</sup> Jesus answered and said to them, "Truly I say to you, if you have faith and do not doubt, you will not only do what was done to this fig tree, but you will even say to this mountain, 'Be taken up and thrown into the sea,' and it will be done.<sup>22</sup> Whatever you ask for in prayer, believing, you will receive."

<sup>23</sup> When Jesus had come into the temple, the chief priests and the elders of the people came to him as he was teaching and said, "By what authority do you do these things, and who gave you this authority?"

<sup>24</sup>Jesus answered and said to them, "I also will ask you one question. If you tell me, I will tell you by what authority I do these things.

<sup>25</sup>The baptism of John—from where did it come? From heaven or from men?"

They discussed among themselves, saying, "If we say, 'From heaven,' he will say to us, 'Why then did you not believe him?'

<sup>26</sup>But if we say, 'From men,' we fear the crowd, because they all view John as a prophet."<sup>27</sup>Then they answered Jesus and said, "We do not know."

He also said to them, "Neither will I tell you by what authority I do these things.

<sup>28</sup>But what do you think? A man had two sons. He went to the first and said, 'Son, go labor today in the vineyard.'

<sup>29</sup>"The son answered and said, 'I will not,' but afterward he changed his mind and went.

<sup>30</sup>"Then the man went to the second son and said the same thing. He answered and said, 'I will go, sir,' but he did not go.

<sup>31</sup>"Which of the two sons did his father's will?"

They said, "The first one."

Jesus said to them, "Truly I say to you, the tax collectors and the prostitutes will enter the kingdom of God before you do.

<sup>32</sup>For John came to you in the way of righteousness, but you did not believe him. But the tax collectors and the prostitutes believed him. But you, even when you saw this, you did not repent afterward and believe him.

<sup>33</sup>"Listen to another parable. There was a man, a landowner. He planted a vineyard, set a hedge about it, dug a winepress in it, built a watchtower, and rented it out to vine growers. Then he went into another country.<sup>34</sup>When the time of the fruit harvest approached, he sent some servants to the vine growers to collect his fruit.

<sup>35</sup>But the vine growers took his servants, beat one, killed another, and stoned still another.<sup>36</sup>Again, the owner sent other servants, more than the first, but the vine growers treated them in the same way.<sup>37</sup>After that, the owner sent his own son to them, saying, 'They will respect my son.'

<sup>38</sup>"But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him and take over the inheritance.'<sup>39</sup>So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard, and killed him.

<sup>40</sup>"Now when the owner of the vineyard comes, what will he do to those vine growers?"

<sup>41</sup>They said to him, "He will violently destroy those wicked people, and he will then rent out the vineyard to other vine growers, men who will give him his share of crops at the harvest time."

<sup>42</sup>Jesus said to them, "Did you never read in the scriptures,

"The stone which the builders rejected  
has been made the cornerstone.  
This was from the Lord,  
and it is marvelous in our eyes'?

<sup>43</sup>Therefore I say to you, the kingdom of God will be taken away from you and will be given to a nation that produces its fruits.<sup>44</sup>Whoever falls on this stone will be broken to pieces. But anyone on whom it falls will be crushed."

<sup>45</sup>When the chief priests and the Pharisees heard his parables, they understood he was speaking about them.

<sup>46</sup>Seeking to arrest him, they were afraid of the crowd, because the people regarded him as a prophet.

# Matthew 21 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 21:5,16 and 42, which is from the Old Testament.

## Special concepts in this chapter

### The donkey and the colt

Jesus rode into Jerusalem on an animal. In this way he was like a king who came into a city after he had won an important battle. Also, the kings of Israel in the Old Testament rode on donkeys. Other kings rode on horses. So Jesus was showing that he was the king of Israel and that he was not like other kings.

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about this event. Matthew and Mark wrote that the disciples brought Jesus a donkey. John wrote that Jesus found a donkey. Luke wrote that they brought him a colt. Only Matthew wrote that there were both a donkey and a colt. No one knows for sure whether Jesus rode the donkey or the colt. It is best to translate each of these accounts as it appears in the ULB without trying to make them all say exactly the same thing. (See: [Matthew 21:1-7](#) and [Mark 11:1-7](#) and [Luke 19:29-36](#) and [John 12:14-15](#))

### Hosanna

This is what the people shouted to welcome Jesus into Jerusalem. This word means "save us," but people used it to praise God.

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"The kingdom of God will be taken away from you"

No one knows for sure what this phrase means. No one knows if Jesus meant that God would someday give the kingdom back or not.

## Links:

- [Matthew 21:1 Notes](#)

### Matthew 21:1

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus's entry into Jerusalem. Here he gives his disciples instructions about what they are to do.

Bethphage

This is a village near Jerusalem.

### Matthew 21:2

a donkey tied up

You can state this in active form. Alternate translation: "a donkey that someone has tied up"

tied up there

You can make explicit how the donkey is tied. Alternate translation: "tied up there to a post" or "tied up there to a tree"

colt

young male donkey

### Matthew 21:3

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Matthew 21:4

General Information:

Here the author quotes the prophet Zechariah to show that Jesus fulfilled prophecy by riding a donkey into Jerusalem.

Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here Matthew explains that Jesus's actions fulfilled scripture.

all this happened to fulfill what was spoken through the prophet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "this happened so that Jesus would fulfill what God spoke through the prophet long ago"

through the prophet

There were many prophets. Matthew was speaking of Zechariah. Alternate translation: "the prophet Zechariah"

### Matthew 21:5

the daughter of Zion

The "daughter" of a city means the people of the city. Alternate translation: "the people of Zion" or "the people who live in Zion"

Zion

This is another name for Jerusalem.

on a donkey—on a colt, the foal of a donkey

The phrase "on a colt, the foal of a donkey" is explaining that the donkey is a young animal. Alternate translation: "on a young, male donkey"

### Matthew 21:6

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Matthew 21:7

cloaks

These were outer clothing or long coats.

### Matthew 21:8

crowd spread their cloaks on the road, and others cut branches off the trees and spread them in the road

These are ways to show honor to Jesus as he was entering Jerusalem.

### Matthew 21:9

Hosanna

This word means "save us," but it can also mean "praise God!"

the son of David

Jesus was not David's literal son, so this may be translated as "descendant of king David." However, "Son of David" is also a title for the Messiah, and the crowd was probably calling Jesus by this title.

in the name of the Lord

Here "in the name" means "in the power" or "as a representative." Alternate translation: "in the power of the Lord" or "as the representative of the Lord"

Hosanna in the highest

Here "highest" refers to God who rules from the highest heaven. Alternate translation: "Praise God, who is in the highest heaven" or "Praise be to God"

### Matthew 21:10

all the city was stirred

Here "city" refers to the people living there. Alternate translation: "many people from all over the city were stirred"

stirred

"excited"

## Matthew 21:11

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Matthew 21:12

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus entering into the temple.

Jesus entered the temple

Jesus did not enter the actual temple. He entered the courtyard around the temple.

who bought and sold

Merchants were selling animals and other items that travelers bought to offer the proper sacrifices at the temple.

## Matthew 21:13

General Information:

Jesus quotes the prophet Isaiah to rebuke the vendors and money changers.

He said to them

"Jesus said to those who were changing money and buying and selling things"

It is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The prophets wrote long ago" or "God said long ago"

My house will be called

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "My house will be"

My house

Here "My" refers to God and "house" refers to the temple.

a house of prayer

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "a place where people pray"

a den of robbers

Jesus uses a metaphor to scold the people for buying and selling items in the temple. Alternate translation: "like a place where robbers hide"

## Matthew 21:14

the blind and the lame

These nominal adjectives can be stated as adjectives. Alternate translation: "those who were blind and those who were lame"

lame

those who have an injured foot or leg that makes walking difficult

## Matthew 21:15

the marvelous things

"the wonderful things" or "the miracles." This refers to Jesus healing the blind and lame people in Matthew 21:14.

Hosanna

This word means "save us" but can also mean "praise God!" See how you translated this in Matthew 21:9.

the Son of David

Jesus was not David's literal son, so this may be translated as "descendant of king David." However, "Son of David" is also a title for the Messiah, and the children were probably calling Jesus by this title. See how you translated this in Matthew 21:9.

they became very angry

It is implied that they were angry because they did not believe Jesus was the Christ and they did not want other people praising him. Alternate translation: "they became very angry because people were praising him"

## Matthew 21:16

General Information:

Jesus quotes from the Psalms to justify how the people had responded to him.

Do you hear what they are saying?

The chief priests and scribes ask this question to rebuke Jesus because they are angry with him.  
Alternate translation: "You should not allow them to say these things about you!"

But have you never read ... praise?"

Jesus asks this question to remind the chief priests and scribes of what they have studied in the scriptures.  
Alternate translation: "Yes, I hear them, but you should remember what you read in the scriptures ... praise."

Out of the mouths of little children and nursing infants you have prepared praise

The phrase "out of the mouths" refers to speaking, and "prepared praise" is a metonym for preparing the children and infants to praise. Alternate translation: "You prepared little children and nursing infants to give praise to God"

Matthew 21:17

Jesus left them

"Jesus left the chief priests and scribes"

Matthew 21:18

Connecting Statement:

In verses 18 through 22, Jesus uses a fig tree to teach his disciples about faith and prayer.

Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here Matthew explains that Jesus is hungry and that is why he stops at the fig tree.

Matthew 21:19

he ... found nothing on it except leaves

This double negative emphasizes that leaves were the only things that he found. Alternate translation: "he ... found only leaves on it"

withered

died and dried up

Matthew 21:20

How did the fig tree immediately wither away?

The disciples use a question to emphasize how surprised they are. Alternate translation: "We are astonished that the fig tree has dried up so quickly!"

wither away

"dry up and die"

Matthew 21:21

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

if you have faith and do not doubt

Jesus expresses the same idea both positively and negatively to emphasize that this faith must be genuine. Alternate translation: "if you truly believe"

you will even say to this mountain, 'Be taken up and thrown into the sea,'

You can translate this direct quotation as an indirect quotation. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you will even be able to tell this mountain to get up and throw itself into the sea,"

it will be done

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it will happen"

Matthew 21:22

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 21:23

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of the religious leaders questioning Jesus's authority.

had come into the temple

It is implied that Jesus did not enter the actual temple. He entered the courtyard around the temple.

these things

This refers to Jesus teaching and healing in the temple. It probably also refers to Jesus driving out the buyers and sellers the previous day.

Matthew 21:24

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 21:25

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to respond to the religious leaders.

from where did it come?

"where did he get the authority to do that?"

If we say, 'From heaven,' he will say to us, 'Why then did you not believe him?'

This has quotes within a quote. You could translate the direct quotations as an indirect quotations. Alternate translation: "If we say that we believe John received his authority from heaven, then Jesus will ask us why we did not believe John."

From heaven

Here "heaven" refers to God. Alternate translation: "from God in heaven"

Why then did you not believe him?

The religious leaders know that Jesus could scold them with this rhetorical question. Alternate translation: "Then you should have believed John the Baptist"

Matthew 21:26

But if we say, 'From men,'

This is a quote within a quote. You could translate the direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "But if we say that we believe John received his authority from men,"

we fear the crowd

"we fear what the crowd would think or even do to us"

they all view John as a prophet

"they believe John is a prophet"

Matthew 21:27

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 21:28

Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable about two sons to rebuke the religious leaders and to illustrate their unbelief.

But what do you think?

Jesus uses a question to challenge the religious leaders to think deeply about the parable he will tell them. Alternate translation: "Tell me what you think about what I am about to tell you."

Matthew 21:29

he changed his mind

This refers to the son reconsidering his thoughts and deciding to act differently from how he had said he would act.

Matthew 21:30

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 21:31

They said

"The chief priests and elders said"

Jesus said to them

"Jesus said to the chief priests and elders"

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.



the tax collectors and the prostitutes will enter the kingdom of God before you do

Here "kingdom of God" refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "when God establishes his rule on earth, he will agree to bless the tax collectors and prostitutes by ruling over them before he agrees to do that for you"

before you do

Possible meanings are 1) God will accept the tax collectors and prostitutes sooner than he will accept the Jewish religious leaders, or 2) God will accept the tax collectors and prostitutes instead of the Jewish religious leaders.

Matthew 21:32

John came to you

Here "you" is plural and refers to all the people of Israel, not just the religious leaders. Alternate translation: "John came to the people of Israel"

in the way of righteousness

This is an idiom that means John showed the people the right way to live. Alternate translation: "and told you the way God wants you to live"

you did not believe him

Here "you" is plural and refers to the religious leaders.

Matthew 21:33

Connecting Statement:

To rebuke the religious leaders and illustrate their unbelief, Jesus tells a parable about rebellious servants.

a landowner

"a person who owned a piece of property"

a hedge

"a wall" or "a fence"

dug a winepress in it

"dug a hole in the vineyard in which to press the grapes"

rented it out to vine growers

The owner still owned the vineyard, but he allowed the vine growers to take care of it. When the grapes became ripe, they were to give some of them to the owner and keep the rest.

vine growers

These were people who knew how to take care of vines and grapes.

Matthew 21:34

to collect his fruit

The landowner expected the vine growers pay him for allowing them to use the vineyard by giving him some of the fruit they had grown.

Matthew 21:35

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

his servants

"the landowner's servants"

Matthew 21:36

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 21:37

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 21:38

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

Matthew 21:39

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Matthew 21:40

Now

The word "now" does not mean "at this moment," but it is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

## Matthew 21:41

They said to him

Matthew does not make clear who answered Jesus. If you need to specify an audience you can translate as "The people said to Jesus."

He will violently destroy those wicked people

"He will bring those wicked people to a miserable end" or "He will make those evil people die in misery"

## Matthew 21:42

General Information:

Jesus quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that God will honor the one whom the religious leaders reject.

Connecting Statement:

Here Jesus begins to explain the parable of the rebellious servants.

Jesus said to them

It is unclear to whom Jesus asks the following question. If you need to make "them" specific, use the same audience as you did in Matthew 21:41.

Did you never read ... eyes'?

Jesus uses a question to make his audience think deeply about what this scripture means. Alternate translation: "Think about what you have read ... eyes."

The stone which the builders rejected has been made the cornerstone

Jesus is quoting from the Psalms. This is a metaphor that means the religious leaders, like builders, will reject Jesus, but God will make him the most important in his kingdom, like the cornerstone in a building.

has been made the cornerstone

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "has become the cornerstone"

This was from the Lord

"The Lord has caused this great change"

it is marvelous in our eyes

Here "in our eyes" refers to seeing. Alternate translation: "it is wonderful to see"

## Matthew 21:43

I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

to you

Here "you" is plural. Jesus was speaking to the religious leaders who had rejected him.

the kingdom of God will be taken away from you and will be given to a nation that produces its fruits

Here "kingdom of God" refers to God's rule as king. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will take his kingdom away from you and will give it to a nation that produces the kingdom's fruits" or "God will reject you, and he will be king over people from other nations that produce the kingdom's fruits"

that produces its fruits

"Fruits" here is a metaphor for "results" or outcome." Alternate translation: "that produces good results"

## Matthew 21:44

Whoever falls on this stone will be broken to pieces

Here, "this stone" is the same stone as in [Matthew 21:42]

But anyone on whom it falls will be crushed

This means basically the same thing as the previous sentence. It is a metaphor that means the Christ will have the final judgment and will destroy everyone who rebels against him.

Matthew 21:45

his parables

Connecting Statement:

"Jesus's parables"

The religious leaders react to the parable that Jesus told.

Matthew 21:46

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

---

22 <sup>1</sup>Jesus spoke to them again in parables, saying, <sup>2</sup>"The kingdom of heaven is like a certain king who prepared a marriage feast for his son. <sup>3</sup>He sent out his servants to call those who had been invited to come to the marriage feast, but they would not come.

<sup>4</sup>Again the king sent other servants, saying, 'Tell them who are invited, "See, I have prepared my dinner. My oxen and fattened cattle have been killed, and all things are ready. Come to the marriage feast."' "

<sup>5</sup>But they paid no attention and went away, one to his farm, another to his business. <sup>6</sup>The others seized the king's servants, treated them shamefully, and killed them. <sup>7</sup>The king was angry, and he sent his soldiers and they destroyed those murderers and burned their city.

<sup>8</sup>Then he said to his servants, 'The wedding is ready, but those who were invited were not worthy. <sup>9</sup>Therefore go to the highway crossings and invite as many people to the marriage feast as you can find. <sup>10</sup>The servants went out to the highways and gathered together all the people they found, both bad and good. So the wedding hall was filled with guests.

<sup>11</sup>But when the king came in to look at the guests, he saw a man there who was not wearing wedding clothes. <sup>12</sup>The king said to him, 'Friend, how did you come in here without wedding clothes?' But the man was speechless.

<sup>13</sup>Then the king said to the servants, 'Bind this man hand and foot, and throw him out into the outer darkness, where there will be weeping and the grinding of teeth. <sup>14</sup>For many people are called, but few are chosen."

<sup>15</sup>Then the Pharisees went and planned how they might entrap Jesus in his own talk. <sup>16</sup>Then they sent to him their disciples, together with the Herodians. They said to Jesus, "Teacher, we know that you are truthful, and that you teach God's way in truth. You care for no one's opinion, and you do not show partiality between people. <sup>17</sup>So tell us, what do you think? Is it lawful to pay taxes to Caesar or not?"

<sup>18</sup>But Jesus understood their wickedness and said, "Why are you testing me, you hypocrites? <sup>19</sup>Show me the coin for the tax." Then they brought a denarius to him.

<sup>20</sup>Jesus said to them, "Whose image and name are these?"

<sup>21</sup>They said to him, "Caesar's."

Then Jesus said to them, "Then give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to God the things that are God's."

<sup>22</sup>When they heard it, they marveled. Then they left him and went away.

<sup>23</sup>On that day some Sadducees, who say there is no resurrection, came to him. They asked him, <sup>24</sup>saying, "'Teacher, Moses said, 'If a man dies, having no children, his brother must marry his wife and raise children for his brother.'

<sup>25</sup>There were seven brothers. The first married and then died. Having left no children, he left his wife to his brother. <sup>26</sup>Then the second brother did the same thing, then the third, all the way to the seventh brother. <sup>27</sup>After them all, the woman died. <sup>28</sup>Now in the resurrection, whose wife will she be of the seven brothers? For they all had married her."

<sup>29</sup>But Jesus answered and said to them, "You are mistaken because you do not know the scriptures or the power of God. <sup>30</sup>For in the resurrection they neither marry nor are given in marriage. Instead, they are like angels in heaven.

<sup>31</sup>But concerning the resurrection of the dead, have you not read what was spoken to you by God, saying, <sup>32</sup>"I am the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob"? God is not the God of the dead, but of the living. <sup>33</sup>When the crowds heard this, they were astonished at his teaching.

<sup>34</sup>But when the Pharisees heard that Jesus had silenced the Sadducees, they gathered themselves together. <sup>35</sup>One of them, an expert in the law, asked him a question, testing him— <sup>36</sup>"Teacher, which is the greatest commandment in the law?"

<sup>37</sup>Jesus said to him, "'Love the Lord your God with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your mind. <sup>38</sup>This is the great and first commandment.

<sup>39</sup>And a second commandment is like it—'Love your neighbor as yourself. <sup>40</sup>On these two commandments depend the whole law and the prophets."

<sup>41</sup>Now while the Pharisees were still gathered together, Jesus asked them a question.<sup>42</sup>He said, "What do you think about the Christ? Whose son is he?"

They said to him, "The son of David."

<sup>43</sup>Jesus said to them, "How then does David in the Spirit call him Lord, saying,

<sup>44</sup> "The Lord said to my Lord,  
"Sit at my right hand,  
until I make your enemies your footstool"?"

<sup>45</sup>If David then calls the Christ 'Lord,' how is he David's son?"<sup>46</sup>No one was able to answer him a word, and no man dared ask him any more questions from that day on.

---

## Matthew 22 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verse 44, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Wedding Feast

In the parable of the wedding feast ([Matthew 22:1-14](#)), Jesus taught that when God offers to save a person, that person needs to accept the offer. Jesus spoke of life with God as a feast that a king prepares for his son, who has just gotten married. In addition, Jesus emphasized that not everyone whom God invites will properly prepare themselves to come to the feast. God will throw these people out from the feast.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Implicit information

Speakers usually do not say things that they think their hearers already understand. When the king in the parable said, "My oxen and fattened calves have been killed" ([Matthew 22:4](#)), he assumed that the hearers would understand that those who had killed the animals had also cooked them.

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. To the Jews, the ancestors were the masters of the descendants, but in one psalm David calls one of his descendants "Lord." Jesus tells the Jewish leaders that this is a paradox, saying, "If David then calls the Christ 'Lord,' how is he David's son?" ([Matthew 22:45](#)).

### Links:

- [Matthew 22:1 Notes](#)
-

#### Matthew 22:1

Connecting Statement:

To rebuke the religious leaders and to illustrate their unbelief, Jesus tells a parable about a marriage feast.

to them

"to the people"

#### Matthew 22:2

The kingdom of heaven is like

This is the beginning of a parable. See how you translated this in Matthew 13:24.

#### Matthew 22:3

those who had been invited

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people the king had invited"

#### Matthew 22:4

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

servants, saying, "Tell them who are invited, "See ... feast."

This direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Also, this can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "servants, ordering them to tell those whom he invited, 'See ... feast.'"

See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

My oxen and fattened cattle have been killed

It is implied that the animals are cooked and ready to eat. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "My servants have killed and cooked my oxen and my fattened cattle"

My oxen and fattened cattle

"My best oxen and calves for eating"

#### Matthew 22:5

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

But they paid no attention

"But the guests the king invited ignored the invitation"

#### Matthew 22:6

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 22:7

they destroyed those murderers

"they killed those murderers." If your language has a strong word for "killed," you might want to use it here.

#### Matthew 22:8

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

those who were invited

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom I invited"

#### Matthew 22:9

the highway crossings

"where the main roads of the city cross." The king is sending the servants to the place where they are most likely to find people.

#### Matthew 22:10

both bad and good

"both the good people and the bad people"

So the wedding hall was filled with guests

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So the guests filled the wedding hall"

hall

a large room

Matthew 22:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

Matthew 22:12

how did you come in here without wedding clothes?

The king uses a question to scold the guest. Alternate translation: "you are not wearing proper clothes for a wedding. You should not be here."

the man was speechless

"the man was silent"

Matthew 22:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes his parable about a marriage feast.

Bind this man hand and foot

"Tie him up so that he cannot move his hands or feet"

the outer darkness

Here "outer darkness" is a metonym for the place where God sends those who reject them. This is a place that is completely separated from God forever. See how you translated this in [Matthew 8:12]

weeping and the grinding of teeth

"Grinding of teeth" is symbolic action, representing extreme sadness and suffering. See how you translated this in [Matthew 8:12]

Matthew 22:14

For many people are called, but few are chosen

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For God invites many people, but he only chooses a few"

For

This marks a transition. Jesus has ended the parable and now explains the point of the parable.

Matthew 22:15

Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of the religious leaders trying to trap Jesus with several difficult questions. Here the Pharisees ask him about paying taxes to Caesar.

how they might entrap Jesus in his own talk

"how they could cause Jesus to say something wrong so they could arrest him"

Matthew 22:16

their disciples ... Herodians

The disciples of the Pharisees supported paying taxes only to Jewish authorities. The Herodians supported paying taxes to the Roman authorities. It is implied that the Pharisees believed that no matter what Jesus said, he would offend one of these groups.

Herodians

These were officials and followers of the Jewish king Herod. He was friends with Roman authorities.

you do not show partiality between people

"you do not show special honor to anyone" or "you do not consider anyone more important than anyone else"

Matthew 22:17

to pay taxes to Caesar

People did not pay taxes directly to Caesar but to one of his tax collectors. Alternate translation: "to pay the taxes that Caesar requires"

Matthew 22:18

Why are you testing me, you hypocrites?

Jesus uses a question to scold those who were trying to trap him. Alternate translation: "Do not test me, you hypocrites!" or "I know that you hypocrites are only trying to test me!"

Matthew 22:19

denarius

This was a Roman coin worth one day's wages.

Matthew 22:20

to them

Here "them" refers to the Herodians and the disciples of the Pharisees.

Whose image and name are these?

Jesus uses a question to get the people to think deeply about what he is saying. Alternate translation: "Tell me whose image and name you see on this coin."

Matthew 22:21

Caesar's

You can make clear the understood information in their response. Alternate translation: "The coin has Caesar's image and name on it"

things that are Caesar's

"things that belong to Caesar"

things that are God's

"things that belong to God"

Matthew 22:22

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 22:23

Connecting Statement:

The Sadducees try to trap Jesus by asking him a difficult question about marriage and the resurrection of the dead.

Matthew 22:24

Teacher, Moses said, 'If a man dies ... brother.'

The religious leaders were asking Jesus about what Moses had written in the scriptures. If your language

does not allow quotes within quotes, this could be stated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "Teacher, Moses said that if a man dies ...brother."

his brother ... his wife ... his brother

Here "his" refers to the dead man.

Matthew 22:25

Connecting Statement:

The Sadducees continue asking Jesus a question.

The first

"The oldest"

Matthew 22:26

the second ... the third ... the seventh

"the next oldest ... the next oldest ... the youngest" or "his oldest younger brother ... that brother's oldest younger brother ... the youngest"

Matthew 22:27

After them all

"After every brother had died"

Matthew 22:28

Now

Here the Sadducees shift from the story about the seven brothers to their actual question.

in the resurrection

"when dead people come back to life"

Matthew 22:29

You are mistaken

It is implied that Jesus means that they are mistaken about what they think about the resurrection. Alternate translation: "You are mistaken about the resurrection"

the power of God

"what God is able to do"



## Matthew 22:30

in the resurrection

"when dead people rise back to life"

they neither marry

"people will not marry"

nor are given in marriage

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "nor will people give their children in marriage"

## Matthew 22:31

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins asking a question to show that people who have died will live again. He is scolding the Sadducees by asking this question. He is not looking for an answer.

have you not read

This is the beginning of a question that end with the words "the God of Jacob" in verse 32. Jesus asks this question to remind the religious leaders of what they know from scripture. If this rhetorical question is translated as a statement, the question mark in verse 32 would be changed to a period. Alternate translation: "you have read"

what was spoken to you by God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what God spoke to you"

## Matthew 22:32

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes asking the question he began in verse 31.

the God of Jacob?"

This question begins in verse 31 and ends in verse 32. Jesus uses this question to remind the Sadducees of what is in the scripture and to rebuke them for not understanding it. If you translated the rhetorical question as a statement in verse 31, then the question mark here would be changed to a period. Alternate translation: "the God of Jacob."

'I am the God of ... Jacob'

You can translate the direct quotation as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "that he is the God of ... Jacob"

of the dead, but of the living

These nominal adjectives can be stated as adjectives. Alternate translation: "of dead people, but he is the God of living people"

## Matthew 22:33

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Matthew 22:34

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Matthew 22:35

Connecting Statement:

A Pharisee who was an expert in the law tries to trap Jesus by asking him a difficult question about the greatest commandment.

## Matthew 22:36

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Matthew 22:37

General Information:

Jesus quotes a verse from Deuteronomy as the greatest commandment.

with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your mind

These three phrases are used together to mean "completely" or "earnestly." Here "heart" and "soul" are metonyms for a person's inner being.

## Matthew 22:38

the great and first commandment

Here "great" and "first" mean the same thing. They emphasize that this is the most important commandment.

## Matthew 22:39

General Information:

Jesus quotes a verse from Leviticus as the second greatest commandment.

your neighbor

Here "neighbor" means more than just those who live nearby. Jesus means a person must love all people.

## Matthew 22:40

On these two commandments depend the whole law and the prophets

Here the phrase "the whole law and the prophets" refers to all of scripture. Alternate translation: "Everything that Moses and the prophets wrote in the scriptures is based on these two commandments"

## Matthew 22:41

Connecting Statement:

Jesus asks the Pharisees a difficult question in order to stop their attempts to trap him.

Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story in which Jesus asks the religious leaders a question.

## Matthew 22:42

son ... son of David

In both of these "son" means "descendant."

## Matthew 22:43

General Information:

Jesus quotes from the Psalms to show that the Christ is more than just "the son of David."

How then does David in the Spirit call him Lord

Jesus uses a question to make the religious leaders think deeply about the Psalm he is about to quote. Alternate translation: "Then, tell me why David in the Spirit calls him Lord"

David in the Spirit

"David, whom the Holy Spirit is inspiring." This means the Holy Spirit is influencing what David says.

call him

Here "him" refers to the Christ, who is also the descendant of David.

## Matthew 22:44

The Lord said

Here "Lord" refers to God the Father.

to my Lord

Here "Lord" refers to the Christ. Also, "my" refers to David. This means the Christ is superior to David.

Sit at my right hand

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "Sit in the place of honor beside me"

until I make your enemies your footstool

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "until I conquer your enemies" or "until I make your enemies bow down before you"

## Matthew 22:45

General Information:

This is the end of the part of the story that began in Matthew 19:1, that tells of Jesus ministering in Judea.

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the account of the religious leaders trying to trap Jesus with several difficult questions.

If David then calls the Christ 'Lord,' how is he David's son?

Jesus uses a question to make the religious leaders think deeply about what he is saying. Alternate translation: "David calls him 'Lord,' so the Christ has to be more than just a descendant of David."

If David then calls the Christ

David referred to Jesus as "Lord" because Jesus was not only a descendant of David, but he was also superior to him.

Matthew 22:46

to answer him a word

Here "word" refers to what people say. Alternate translation: "to answer him anything" or "to answer him"

any more questions

It is implied that no one asked him the kind of questions that were intended to make him say something wrong so the religious leaders could arrest him.

---

23<sup>1</sup>Then Jesus spoke to the crowds and to his disciples.<sup>2</sup>He said, "The scribes and the Pharisees sit in Moses' seat.<sup>3</sup>Therefore whatever they command you to do, do these things and observe them. But do not imitate their deeds, for they say things but then do not do them.

<sup>4</sup>Yes, they bind heavy burdens that are difficult to carry, and then they put them on people's shoulders. But they themselves will not move a finger to carry them.<sup>5</sup>They do all their deeds to be seen by people. For they make their phylacteries wide, and they enlarge the edges of their garments.

<sup>6</sup>They love the places of honor at feasts and the chief seats in the synagogues,<sup>7</sup>and special greetings in the marketplaces, and to be called 'Rabbi' by people.

<sup>8</sup>But you must not be called 'Rabbi,' for you have only one teacher, and all of you are brothers.<sup>9</sup>And call no man on earth your father, for you have only one Father, and he is in heaven.<sup>10</sup>Neither must you be called 'teacher,' for you have only one teacher, the Christ.

<sup>11</sup>But he who is greatest among you will be your servant.<sup>12</sup>Whoever exalts himself will be humbled, and whoever humbles himself will be exalted.

<sup>13</sup>"But woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! You shut the kingdom of heaven against people. For you do not enter it yourselves, and neither do you allow those about to enter to do so.<sup>14</sup><sup>15</sup>"Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you go over sea and land to make one convert, and when he has become one, you make him twice as much a son of hell as you.

<sup>16</sup>"Woe to you, you blind guides, you who say, 'Whoever swears by the temple, it is nothing. But whoever swears by the gold of the temple, he is bound to his oath.'<sup>17</sup>You blind fools! Which is greater, the gold or the temple that makes the gold holy?

<sup>18</sup>And, 'Whoever swears by the altar, it is nothing. But whoever swears by the gift that is on it, he is bound to his oath.'<sup>19</sup>You blind people! Which is greater, the gift or the altar that makes the gift holy?

<sup>20</sup>Therefore, he who swears by the altar swears by it and by everything on it.<sup>21</sup>The one who swears by the temple swears by it and by the one who lives in it.<sup>22</sup>And the one who swears by heaven swears by the throne of God and by him who sits on it.

<sup>23</sup>"Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you tithe mint and dill and cumin, but you have left undone the weightier matters of the law—justice and mercy and faithfulness. But these you ought to have done and not to have left the other undone.<sup>24</sup>You blind guides, you who strain out a gnat but swallow a camel!

<sup>25</sup>"Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you clean the outside of the cup and of the plate, but inside they are full of robbery and self-indulgence.<sup>26</sup>You blind Pharisee! Clean first the inside of the cup and of the plate, so that the outside may become clean also.

<sup>27</sup>"Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you are like whitewashed tombs, which on the outside look beautiful, but on the inside are full of dead men's bones and everything unclean.<sup>28</sup>In the same way, you also outwardly appear righteous to men, but on the inside you are full of hypocrisy and lawlessness.

<sup>29</sup>"Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you build the tombs of the prophets and decorate the tombs of the righteous.<sup>30</sup>You say, 'If we had lived in the days of our fathers, we would not have been partners with them in shedding the blood of the prophets.'<sup>31</sup>Therefore you testify against yourselves that you are sons of those who murdered the prophets.

<sup>32</sup>You also fill up the measure of your fathers.<sup>33</sup>You serpents, you offspring of vipers, how will you escape the judgment of hell?

<sup>34</sup>Therefore, see, I am sending you prophets and wise men and scribes. Some of them you will kill and crucify, and some you will whip in your synagogues and chase from city to city.<sup>35</sup>The result is that upon you will come all the righteous blood that has been shed on the earth, from the blood of righteous Abel, to the blood of Zechariah son of Berekiah, whom you murdered between the sanctuary and the altar.<sup>36</sup>Truly I say to you, all these things will come upon this generation.

<sup>37</sup>"Jerusalem, Jerusalem, you who kill the prophets and stone those who are sent to you! How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chicks under her wings, but you were not willing!<sup>38</sup>See,

your house is left to you desolate.<sup>39</sup>For I say to you, you will not see me from now on until you say, 'Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.'"

.The best ancient copies do not have verse 14 (some copies add the verse after verse 12). Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you devour widows' houses, while you make a show of long prayers. You will therefore receive greater condemnation .

# Matthew 23 General Notes

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Hypocrites

Jesus calls the Pharisees hypocrites many times ([Matthew 23:13, 15, 23, 25, 27, 29](#)) and carefully tells what he means by doing that. The Pharisees made rules that no one could actually obey, and then they persuaded the ordinary people that they were guilty because they could not obey the rules. Also, the Pharisees obeyed their own rules instead of obeying God's original commands in the law of Moses.

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### Name calling

In most cultures, it is wrong to insult people. The Pharisees took many of the words in this chapter as insults. Jesus called them "hypocrites," "blind guides," "fools," and "serpents" ([Matthew 23:16-17](#)). Jesus uses these words to say that God would surely punish them because they were doing wrong.

### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus uses a paradox when he says, "He who is greatest among you will be your servant" ([Matthew 23:11-12](#)).

## Links:

- [Matthew 23:1 Notes](#)

### Matthew 23:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story, in which Jesus teaches about salvation and the final judgment. Here he begins to warn the people about the scribes and Pharisees.

### Matthew 23:2

sit in Moses' seat

Here "seat" represents the authority to rule and make judgments. Alternate translation: "have authority as Moses had" or "have authority to say what the law of Moses means"

### Matthew 23:3

whatever ... do these things and observe them

"all the things ... do them and observe them" or "everything ... do it and observe it"

### Matthew 23:4

they bind heavy burdens that are difficult to carry, and then they put them on people's shoulders. But they themselves will not move a finger to carry them

Here "bind heavy burdens ... put them on people's shoulders" is a metaphor for the religious leaders making many difficult rules and making the people obey them. And "will not move a finger" is an idiom that means the religious leaders will not help the people. Alternate translation: "they make you obey

many rules that are difficult to follow. But they do nothing at all to help you follow the rules"

Matthew 23:5

They do all their deeds to be seen by people

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They do all their deeds so that people can see what they do"

For they make their phylacteries wide, and they enlarge the edges of their garments

Both of these are things the Pharisees do to appear as if they honor God more than other people.

phylacteries

small leather boxes containing paper with scripture written on it

they enlarge the edges of their garments

The Pharisees made the tassels on the bottom of their robes especially long to show their devotion to God.

Matthew 23:6

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the crowds and disciples about the Pharisees.

places of honor ... chief seats

Both of these are the places where the most important people sit.

Matthew 23:7

marketplaces

large, open-air areas where people buy and sell items

to be called 'Rabbi' by people.

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for people to call them 'Rabbi.'"

Matthew 23:8

But you must not be called

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But you must not let anyone call you"

you

All occurrences of "you" are plural and refer to all of Jesus's followers.

all of you are brothers

Here "brothers" means "fellow believers."

Matthew 23:9

call no man on earth your father

Jesus is using hyperbole to tell his hearers that they must not allow even the most important people to be more important to them than God is. Alternate translation: "do not call any man on earth your father" or "do not say that any man on earth is your father"

you have only one Father

"Father" here is an important title for God.

Matthew 23:10

Neither must you be called

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Also, do not let anyone call you"

you have only one teacher, the Christ

When Jesus said "the Christ," he was speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "I, the Christ, am your only teacher"

Matthew 23:11

he who is greatest among you

"the person who is most important among you"

among you

Here "you" is plural and refers to Jesus's followers.

Matthew 23:12

exalts himself

"makes himself important"

will be humbled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will humble"

will be exalted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will make important" or "God will honor"

Matthew 23:13

General Information:

Jesus speaks of the kingdom of heaven as if it were a house, the door into which the Pharisees have shut from the outside so that neither they nor anyone else can enter the house. If you do not keep the metaphor of the house, be sure to change all instances of "shut" and "enter." Also, since the words "kingdom of heaven," which refer to God, who lives in heaven, occur only in Matthew, try to use your language's word for "heaven" in your translation.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to rebuke the religious leaders because of their hypocrisy.

But woe to you

"How terrible it will be for you!" See how you translated this in Matthew 11:21.

You shut the kingdom of heaven against people ... you do not enter it ... neither do you allow those about to enter to do so

Jesus is speaking of the kingdom of heaven, which is God ruling over his people, as if it were a house, the door into which the Pharisees have shut from the outside so that neither they nor anyone else can enter the house. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is found only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use your language's word for "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "You make it impossible for people to enter the kingdom of heaven ... you do not enter it ... neither do you allow those about to enter to do so" or "You prevent people from accepting God, who lives in heaven, as king ... you do not accept him as king ... and you make it impossible for those about to accept him as king to do so"

Matthew 23:14

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 23:15

you go over sea and land

This is an idiom that means they go to distant places. Alternate translation: "you travel great distances"

to make one convert

"to make one person accept your religion"

son of hell

Here "son of" is an idiom that means "one belonging to." Alternate translation: "person who belongs in hell" or "person who should go to hell"

Matthew 23:16

blind guides

The Jewish leaders were spiritually blind. Although they thought of themselves as teachers, they were unable to understand God's truth. See how you translated "blind guides" in [Matthew 15:14]

by the temple, it is nothing

"by the temple does not have to keep his oath"

is bound to his oath

"is tied to his oath." The phrase "bound to his oath" is a metaphor for being required to do what one has said he would do in an oath. Alternate translation: "must do what he promised to do"

Matthew 23:17

blind fools

The Jewish leaders were spiritually blind. Although they thought of themselves as teachers, they were unable to understand God's truth.

Which is greater, the gold or the temple that makes the gold holy?

Jesus uses this question to rebuke the Pharisees because they treated the gold as if it were more

important than the temple. Alternate translation: "The temple that has dedicated the gold to God is more important than the gold!"

the temple that makes the gold holy

"the temple that makes the gold belong to God alone"

Matthew 23:18

And

The understood information can be made clear.  
Alternate translation: "And you also say"

it is nothing

"he does not have to do what he has sworn to do" or "he does not have to keep his oath"

the gift

This is an animal or grain that a person would bring to God by putting it on God's altar.

is bound to his oath

"is tied to his oath." Being required to do what one has said he would do in an oath is spoken of as if he is tied to the oath. Alternate translation: "must do what he promised to do"

Matthew 23:19

blind people

The Jewish leaders were spiritually blind. Although they thought of themselves as teachers, they were unable to understand God's truth.

Which is greater, the gift or the altar that makes the gift holy?

Jesus uses this question to rebuke the Pharisees for treating the gift as if it were more important than the altar. Alternate translation: "The altar that makes the gift holy is greater than the gift!"

the altar that makes the gift holy

"the altar that makes the gift special to God"

Matthew 23:20

by everything on it

"by all the gifts that people have placed on it"

Matthew 23:21

the one who lives in it

God the Father

Matthew 23:22

him who sits on it

God the Father

Matthew 23:23

Woe to you ... hypocrites!

"How terrible it will be for you ... hypocrites!" See how you translated this in Matthew 11:21.

mint and dill and cumin

These are various leaves and seeds people used to make food taste good.

you have left undone

"you have not obeyed"

the weightier matters

"the more important matters"

But these you ought to have done

"You ought to have obeyed these more important laws"

and not to have left the other undone

This can be stated in positive and active form. Alternate translation: "and to make sure the other is done" or "and to make sure to do the other"

Matthew 23:24

You blind guides

Jesus uses this metaphor to describe the Pharisees. Jesus means that the Pharisees do not understand God's commands or how to please him. Therefore, they cannot teach others how to please God. See how you translated this metaphor in [Matthew 15:14]



you who strain out a gnat but swallow a camel

Being careful to follow the less important laws and ignoring the more important laws is as foolish as being careful not to swallow the smallest unclean animal but eating the meat of the largest unclean animal. Alternate translation: "you are as foolish as a person who strains out a gnat that falls into his drink but swallows a camel"

strain out a gnat

This means to pour a liquid through a cloth to remove a gnat from a drink.

gnat

a small flying insect

Matthew 23:25

Woe to you ... hypocrites!

"How terrible it will be for you ... hypocrites!" See how you translated this in Matthew 11:21.

For you clean the outside of the cup and of the plate, but inside they are full of robbery and self-indulgence

This is a metaphor that means the scribes and Pharisees appear pure on the outside to others, but on the inside they are wicked.

they are full of robbery and self-indulgence

"they take what belongs to others, and they do almost everything to benefit themselves"

Matthew 23:26

You blind Pharisee

The Pharisees were spiritually blind. Although they thought of themselves as teachers, they were unable to understand God's truth.

Clean first the inside of the cup and of the plate, so that the outside may become clean also

This is a metaphor that means that if they would become pure in their inner being, then the result is that they would be pure on the outside as well.

Matthew 23:27

you are like whitewashed tombs ... unclean

This is a simile that means the scribes and Pharisees may appear to be pure on the outside, but they are wicked on the inside.

whitewashed tombs

"tombs that someone has painted white." The Jews would paint tombs white so that people would easily see them and avoid touching them. Touching a tomb would make a person ceremonially unclean.

Matthew 23:28

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 23:29

of the righteous

This nominal adjective can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "of the righteous people"

Matthew 23:30

in the days of our fathers

"during the time of our forefathers"

we would not have been partners with them

"we would not have joined with them"

shedding the blood of

Here "blood" refers to life. To shed blood means to kill. Alternate translation: "killing" or "murdering"

Matthew 23:31

sons of those who murdered the prophets

Possible meanings are 1) the word "sons" is a metonym for "descendants." Alternate translation: "descendants of those who murdered the prophets" or 2) the word "sons" is a metaphor for people who are like others. Alternate translation: "just like those who murdered the prophets."

#### Matthew 23:32

You also fill up the measure of your fathers

Jesus uses this as a metaphor meaning the Pharisees will complete the wicked behavior that their forefathers started when they killed the prophets. Alternate translation: "You also finish the sins your ancestors began"

#### Matthew 23:33

You serpents, you offspring of vipers

Serpents are snakes, and vipers are poisonous snakes. They are dangerous and often symbols of evil. Alternate translation: "You who are as evil and dangerous as poisonous snakes"

offspring of vipers

Here "offspring" means "having the characteristic of." See how you translated a similar phrase in Matthew 3:7.

how will you escape the judgment of hell?

Jesus uses this question as a rebuke. Alternate translation: "there is no way for you to escape the judgment of hell!"

#### Matthew 23:34

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to rebuke the religious leaders because of their hypocrisy.

I am sending you prophets and wise men and scribes

Sometimes the present tense is used to show that someone will do something very soon. Alternate translation: "I will send prophets, wise men, and scribes to you"

chase from city to city

You may need to make explicit that the purpose of chasing is to persecute. Alternate translation: "chase from city to city and persecute them" or "persecute them in city after city"

#### Matthew 23:35

upon you will come all the righteous blood that has been shed on the earth ... blood ... blood

The phrase "upon you will come" is an idiom that means to receive punishment. To shed blood is a metonym meaning to kill people, so "righteous blood that has been shed on the earth" represents righteous people who have been killed. Alternate translation: "God will punish you for the murders of all the righteous people ... murder .. murder"

Abel ... Zechariah

Abel was the first righteous victim of murder, and Zechariah, who was murdered by Jews in the temple, was probably thought to be the last. These two men represent all the righteous people who have been murdered.

Zechariah

This Zechariah is unknown. He was not the father of John the Baptist.

whom you murdered

Jesus does not mean the people to whom he is speaking actually murdered Zechariah. He means their ancestors did.

#### Matthew 23:36

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

#### Matthew 23:37

Connecting Statement:

Jesus mourns over the people of Jerusalem because they reject every messenger that God sends to them.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem

Jesus speaks to the people of Jerusalem as though they were the city itself.

those who are sent to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom God sends to you"

your children

Jesus is speaking to Jerusalem as if it is a woman and the people are her children. Alternate translation: "your people" or "your inhabitants"

just as a hen gathers her chicks under her wings

This is a simile that emphasizes Jesus's love for the people and how he wanted to take care of them.

hen

a female chicken. You can translate with any bird that protects her children under her wing.

Matthew 23:38

your house is left to you desolate

"God will leave your house, and it will be empty"

---

your house

Possible meanings are 1) "the city of Jerusalem" or 2) "the temple."

Matthew 23:39

I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord

Here "in the name" means "in the power" or "as a representative." See how you translated this in [Matthew 21:9]

24 <sup>1</sup>Jesus went out from the temple and was going on his way. His disciples came to him to point out to him the buildings of the temple.<sup>2</sup>But he answered and said to them, "Do you not see all these things? Truly I say to you, not one stone will be left on another that will not be torn down."

<sup>3</sup>As he sat on the Mount of Olives, the disciples came to him privately and said, "Tell us, when will these things happen? What will be the sign of your coming and of the end of the age?"

<sup>4</sup>Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray.<sup>5</sup>For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray.

<sup>6</sup>You will hear of wars and rumors of wars. See that you are not troubled, for these things must happen; but the end is not yet.<sup>7</sup>For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom. There will be famines and earthquakes in various places.<sup>8</sup>But all these things are only the beginning of birth pains.

<sup>9</sup>Then they will deliver you up to tribulation and kill you. You will be hated by all the nations for my name's sake.

<sup>10</sup>Then many will stumble, and betray one another and hate one another.<sup>11</sup>Many false prophets will rise up and lead many astray.

<sup>12</sup>Because lawlessness will increase, the love of many will grow cold.<sup>13</sup>But the one who endures to the end will be saved.<sup>14</sup>This good news of the kingdom will be preached in the whole world as a testimony to all the nations. Then the end will come.

<sup>15</sup>"Therefore, when you see the abomination of desolation, which was spoken of by Daniel the prophet, standing in the holy place" (let the reader understand),<sup>16</sup>"let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains,<sup>17</sup>let him who is on the housetop not go down to take anything out of his house,<sup>18</sup>and let him who is in the field not return to take his cloak.

<sup>19</sup>But woe to those who are pregnant and to those who are nursing infants in those days!<sup>20</sup>Pray that your flight will not occur in the winter or on a Sabbath.<sup>21</sup>For there will be great tribulation, such as has not been from the beginning of the world until now, no, nor ever will be again.<sup>22</sup>Unless those days had been shortened, no flesh would be saved. But for the sake of the elect those days will be shortened.

<sup>23</sup>Then if anyone says to you, 'Look, here is the Christ!' or 'There is the Christ!' do not believe it.<sup>24</sup>For false Christs and false prophets will arise and show great signs and wonders, so as to lead astray, if possible, even the elect.

<sup>25</sup>See, I have told you ahead of time.

<sup>26</sup>Therefore, if they say to you, 'Look, he is in the wilderness,' do not go out to the wilderness. Or, 'See, he is in the inner rooms,' do not believe it.<sup>27</sup>For as the lightning shines out from the east and flashes all the way to the west, so will be the coming of the Son of Man.<sup>28</sup>Wherever a dead animal is, there the vultures will gather.

<sup>29</sup>"But immediately after the tribulation of those days

the sun will be darkened,  
the moon will not give its light,  
the stars will fall from the sky,  
and the powers of the heavens will be shaken.

<sup>30</sup>Then the sign of the Son of Man will appear in the sky, and all the tribes of the earth will mourn. They will see the Son of Man coming on the clouds of the sky with power and great glory.<sup>31</sup>He will send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they will gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of the sky to the other.

<sup>32</sup>"Learn a lesson from the fig tree. As soon as the branch becomes tender and puts out its leaves, you know that summer is near.<sup>33</sup>So also, when you see all these things, you should know that he is near, at the very gates.

<sup>34</sup>Truly I say to you, this generation will not pass away until all of these things will have happened.<sup>35</sup>Heaven and the earth will pass away, but my words will never pass away.

<sup>36</sup>But concerning that day and hour no one knows, not even the angels of heaven, nor the Son, but only the Father.

<sup>37</sup>As the days of Noah were, so will be the coming of the Son of Man.<sup>38</sup>For as in those days before the flood they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage until the day that Noah entered the ark,<sup>39</sup>and they knew nothing until the flood came and took them all away—so will be the coming of the Son of Man.

<sup>40</sup>Then two men will be in a field—one will be taken, and one will be left.<sup>41</sup>Two women will be grinding with a mill—one will be taken, and one will be left.<sup>42</sup>Therefore be on your guard, for you do not know on what day your Lord will come.

<sup>43</sup>But know this, that if the master of the house had known in what time of night the thief was coming, he would have been on guard and would not have allowed his house to be broken into.<sup>44</sup> Therefore you must also be ready, for the Son of Man will come at an hour that you do not expect.

<sup>45</sup>"So who is the faithful and wise servant whom his master has set over his household in order to give them their food at the right time?"<sup>46</sup> Blessed is that servant whom his master will find doing that when he comes.<sup>47</sup> Truly I say to you that the master will set him over all his possessions.

<sup>48</sup>But if an evil servant says in his heart, 'My master has been delayed,'<sup>49</sup> and begins to beat his fellow servants, and eats and drinks with drunkards,<sup>50</sup> then the master of that servant will come on a day that the servant does not expect and at an hour that he does not know.<sup>51</sup> His master will cut him in pieces and assign him a place with the hypocrites, where there will be weeping and grinding of teeth.

---

## Matthew 24 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

In this chapter, Jesus begins to prophesy about the future from that time until he returns as king of everything. (See: prophet)

### Special concepts in this chapter

"The end of the age"

In this chapter, Jesus gives an answer to his disciples when they ask how they will know when he will come again.

The example of Noah

In the time of Noah, God sent a great flood to punish people for their sins. He warned them many times about this coming flood, but it actually began suddenly. In this chapter, Jesus draws a comparison between that flood and the last days. (See: sin)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"Let"

The ULB uses this word to begin several commands of Jesus, such as "let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains" (24:16), "let him who is on the housetop not go down to take anything out of his house" (24:17), and "let him who is in the field not return to take his cloak" (24:18). There are many different ways to form a command. Translators must select the most natural ways in their own languages. Note that this word does not mean "permit."

### Links:

- [Matthew 24:1 Notes](#)

---

Matthew 24:1

from the temple

Connecting Statement:

It is implied that Jesus was not in the temple itself. He was in the courtyard around the temple.

Jesus begins to describe events that will happen before he comes again during the end times.

#### Matthew 24:2

Do you not see all these things?

Jesus uses a question to make the disciples think deeply about what he will tell them. Alternate translation: "Let me tell you something about all these buildings."

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

not one stone will be left on another that will not be torn down

It is implied that enemy soldiers will tear down the stones. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when the enemy soldiers come, they will tear down every stone in these buildings"

#### Matthew 24:3

What will be the sign of your coming and of the end of the age

Here "your coming" refers to when Jesus will come in power, establishing God's reign on earth and bringing this age to an end. Alternate translation: "What will be the sign that you are about to come and that the world is about to end"

#### Matthew 24:4

Be careful that no one leads you astray

Here "leads you astray" is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true. Alternate translation: "Be careful that no one deceives you"

#### Matthew 24:5

many will come in my name

The name here is the name of Messiah or Christ, not of Jesus and seems to be a metonym for the authority of the Christ. Alternate translation: "many will claim to have my authority as Christ"

will lead many astray

Here "leads you astray" is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true. Alternate translation: "will deceive many people"

#### Matthew 24:6

See that you are not troubled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Do not let these things trouble you"

#### Matthew 24:7

For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom

Both of these mean the same thing. Jesus is emphasizing that people everywhere will fight each other.

#### Matthew 24:8

the beginning of birth pains

This refers to the pains a woman feels before giving birth to a child. This metaphor means these wars, famines, and earthquakes are just the beginning of the events that will lead to the end of the age.

#### Matthew 24:9

they will deliver you up to tribulation and kill you

"people will give you over to the authorities, who will make you suffer and will kill you."

You will be hated by all the nations

Here "nations" is a metonym, referring to the people of nations. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People from every nation will hate you"

for my name's sake

Here "name" refers to the complete person. Alternate translation: "because you believe in me"

#### Matthew 24:10

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 24:11

will rise up

"Rise" here is an idiom for "become established." Alternate translation: "will come"

and lead many astray

Here "lead ... astray" is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true.

Alternate translation: "and deceive many people"

Matthew 24:12

lawlessness will increase

The abstract noun "lawlessness" can be translated with the phrase "disobeying the law." Alternate translation: "disobeying the law will increase" or "people will disobey God's law more and more"

the love of many will grow cold

Possible meanings are 1) "many people will no longer love other people" or 2) "many people will no longer love God."

Matthew 24:13

the one who endures to the end will be saved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will save the person who endures to the end"

the one who endures

"the person who stays faithful"

to the end

It is not clear whether the word "end" refers to when a person dies or when the persecution ends or the end of the age when God shows himself to be king. The main point is that they endure as long as necessary.

the end

"the end of the world" or "the end of the age"

Matthew 24:14

This good news of the kingdom will be preached

Here "kingdom" refers to God's rule as king. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People will tell the good news that God will rule"

all the nations

Here, "nations" stands for people. Alternate translation: "all people in all places"

Matthew 24:15

the abomination of desolation, which was spoken of by Daniel the prophet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the shameful one who defiles the things of God, about whom Daniel the prophet wrote"

let the reader understand

This is not Jesus speaking. Matthew added this to alert the reader that Jesus was using words that they would need to think about and interpret.

Matthew 24:16

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 24:17

let him who is on the housetop

Housetops where Jesus lived were flat, and people could stand on them.

Matthew 24:18

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 24:19

in those days

"at that time"

Matthew 24:20

that your flight will not occur

"that you will not have to flee" or "that you will not have to run away"

the winter

"the cold season"

Matthew 24:21

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 24:22

Unless those days had been shortened, no flesh would be saved

This can be stated in positive and active form. Alternate translation: "If God had not shortened the time of suffering, everyone would have died" or "Because God shortened those days, some people lived"

no flesh

"nobody" or "no one." Here, "flesh" is poetic way of referring to people.

those days will be shortened

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will shorten the time of suffering"

#### Matthew 24:23

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to his disciples.

do not believe it

"do not believe the false thing they have said to you"

#### Matthew 24:24

so as to lead astray, if possible, even the elect

Here "lead astray" is a metaphor for persuading someone to believe something that is not true. This can be translated as two sentences. Alternate translation: "so as to deceive, if possible, even the elect" or "so as to deceive people. If possible, they would even deceive the elect"

#### Matthew 24:25

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 24:26

if they say to you, 'Look, he is in the wilderness,' do

This can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "if someone tells you that the Christ is in the wilderness, do"

Or, 'See, he is in the inner rooms,'

This can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Or, if someone tells you that the Christ is in the inner room,"

in the inner rooms

"in a secret room" or "in secret places"

#### Matthew 24:27

as the lightning shines ... so will be the coming

This means that the Son of Man will come very quickly and will be easy to see.

the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person.

#### Matthew 24:28

Wherever a dead animal is, there the vultures will gather

This is probably a proverb that the people of Jesus's time understood. Possible meanings are 1) when the Son of Man comes, everyone will see him and know that he has come, or 2) wherever spiritually dead people are, false prophets will be there to tell them lies.

vultures

birds that eat the bodies of dead or dying creatures

#### Matthew 24:29

immediately after the tribulation of those days the sun

"as soon as the tribulation of those days has finished, the sun"

the tribulation of those days

"that time of suffering"

the sun will be darkened

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will make the sun dark"

the powers of the heavens will be shaken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will shake things in the sky and above the sky"



#### Matthew 24:30

the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person.

all the tribes

Here "tribes" refers to people. Alternate translation: "all the people of the tribes" or "all the people"

#### Matthew 24:31

He will send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet

"He will have a trumpet sounded and send his angels" or "He will have an angel blow a trumpet, and he will send his angels"

He ... his

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person.

they will gather

"his angels will gather"

his elect

These are the people whom the Son of Man has chosen.

from the four winds, from one end of the sky to the other

Both of these mean the same thing. They are idioms that mean "from everywhere." Alternate translation: "from all over the world"

#### Matthew 24:32

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 24:33

he is near, at the very gates

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person and using the imagery of a king or important official getting close to the gates of a walled city. This metaphor means the time for Jesus to come is soon. Alternate translation: "I am near and will soon appear"

#### Matthew 24:34

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

this generation will not pass away

Here "pass away" is a polite way of saying "die." Alternate translation: "the people of this generation will not all die"

this generation

Possible interpretations are 1) "all people alive today," referring to the people alive when Jesus was speaking, or 2) "all people alive when these things I have just told you about happen." Try to translate so that both interpretations are possible.

until all of these things will have happened

"until God causes all these things to happen"

#### Matthew 24:35

Heaven and the earth will pass away

The words "heaven" and "earth" are a synecdoche that includes everything that God has created, especially those things that seem permanent. Jesus is saying that his word, unlike these things, is permanent. Alternate translation: "Even heaven and the earth will pass away"

my words will never pass away

Here "words" refers to what Jesus has said. Alternate translation: "what I say will always be true"

#### Matthew 24:36

that day and hour

Here "day" and "hour" refer to the exact time that the Son of Man will return.

nor the Son

"not even the Son"

Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

Father

This is an important title for God.

Matthew 24:37

As the days of Noah were, so will be the coming of the Son of Man

"At the time when the Son of Man comes, it will be like the time of Noah."

so will be the coming of the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person.  
Alternate translation: "so will it be when I, the Son of Man, come"

Matthew 24:38

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 24:39

away—so will be the coming of the Son of Man

This can be translated as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "away. This is how it will be when the Son of Man comes"

Matthew 24:40

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to tell his disciples to be ready for his return.

Then

This is when the Son of Man comes.

one will be taken, and one will be left

Possible meanings are 1) the Son of Man will take one away to heaven and will leave the other on earth for punishment or 2) the angels will take one away for punishment and leave the other for blessing.

Matthew 24:41

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 24:42

Therefore

"Because what I have just said is true"

be on your guard

"pay attention"

Matthew 24:43

that if the master of the house ... broken into

Jesus uses a parable of a master and servants to illustrate that his disciples should be prepared for his return.

the thief

Jesus is saying he will come when people are not expecting him, not that he will come to steal.

he would have been on guard

"he would have guarded his house"

would not have allowed his house to be broken into

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "would not have allowed anyone to get into his house to steal things"

Matthew 24:44

the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person.

Matthew 24:45

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues his proverb of a master and servants to illustrate that his disciples should be prepared for his return.

So who is the faithful and wise servant whom his master ... time?

Jesus uses this question to make his disciples think.  
Alternate translation: "So who is the faithful and wise servant? He is the one whom his master ... time." or "Be like the faithful and wise servant, whom his master ... time."

give them their food

"give the people in the master's home their food"

Matthew 24:46

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 24:47

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

Matthew 24:48

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes his proverb of a master and servants to illustrate that his disciples should be prepared for his return.

says in his heart

Here "heart" refers to the mind. Alternate translation: "thinks in his mind"

My master has been delayed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "My master is slow to return" or "My master will not return for a long time"

Matthew 24:49

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 24:50

on a day that the servant does not expect and at an hour that he does not know

Both of these statements mean the same thing. They emphasize that the master will come when the servant is not expecting him.

Matthew 24:51

cut him in pieces

This is an idiom that means to make the person suffer terribly.

assign him a place with the hypocrites

"put him with the hypocrites" or "send him to the place where hypocrites are sent"

there will be weeping and grinding of teeth

"Grinding of teeth" here is a symbolic act, representing extreme suffering. See how you translated this in [Matthew 8:12]

25<sup>1</sup>"Then the kingdom of heaven will be like ten virgins who took their lamps and went to meet the bridegroom.<sup>2</sup>Five of them were foolish and five were wise.<sup>3</sup>For when the foolish virgins took their lamps, they did not take any oil with them.<sup>4</sup>But the wise virgins took containers of oil along with their lamps.

<sup>5</sup>Now while the bridegroom was delayed, they all got sleepy and slept.<sup>6</sup>But at midnight there was a cry, 'Look, the bridegroom! Go out and meet him.'

<sup>7</sup>Then all those virgins rose up and trimmed their lamps.<sup>8</sup>The foolish said to the wise, 'Give us some of your oil because our lamps are going out.'

<sup>9</sup>"But the wise answered and said, 'Since there will not be enough for us and you, go instead to those who sell and buy some for yourselves.'

<sup>10</sup>While they went away to buy, the bridegroom came, and those who were ready went with him to the marriage feast, and the door was shut.

<sup>11</sup>"Afterward the other virgins also came and said, 'Master, master, open for us.'

<sup>12</sup>"But he answered and said, 'Truly I say to you, I do not know you.'<sup>13</sup>Watch therefore, for you do not know the day or the hour.

<sup>14</sup>"For it is like when a man was about to go into another country. He called his own servants and entrusted his possessions to them.<sup>15</sup>To one of them he gave five talents, to another he gave two, and to yet another he gave one talent. Each one received an amount according to his own ability, and that man went on his journey.<sup>16</sup>The one who received the five talents went at once and worked with them and gained another five talents.

<sup>17</sup>In the same way, the one who had received two talents gained another two.<sup>18</sup>But the servant who had received one talent went away, dug a hole in the ground, and hid his master's money.

<sup>19</sup>Now after a long time the master of those servants came back and settled accounts with them.<sup>20</sup>The servant who had received the five talents came and brought another five talents. He said, 'Master, you entrusted me with five talents. See, I have gained five talents more.'

<sup>21</sup>"His master said to him, 'Well done, good and faithful servant! You have been faithful over a few things. I will put you in charge over many things. Enter into the joy of your master.'

<sup>22</sup>"The servant who had received two talents came and said, 'Master, you gave me two talents. See, I have gained two more talents.'

<sup>23</sup>"His master said to him, 'Well done, good and faithful servant! You have been faithful over a few things. I will put you in charge over many things. Enter into the joy of your master.'

<sup>24</sup>"Then the servant who had received one talent came and said, 'Master, I know that you are a hard man. You reap where you did not sow, and you harvest where you did not scatter.'<sup>25</sup>I was afraid, so I went away and hid your talent in the ground. See, you have here what belongs to you.'

<sup>26</sup>"But his master answered and said to him, 'You wicked and lazy servant, you knew that I reap where I have not sowed and harvest where I have not scattered.'<sup>27</sup>Therefore you should have given my money to the bankers, and at my coming I would have received back my own with interest.

<sup>28</sup>"Therefore take away the talent from him and give it to the servant who has ten talents.<sup>29</sup>For to everyone who possesses more will be given, and he will have an abundance. But from anyone who does not possess anything, even what he does have will be taken away.<sup>30</sup>Throw the worthless servant out into the outer darkness, where there will be weeping and grinding of teeth.'

<sup>31</sup>"When the Son of Man comes in his glory and all the angels with him, then he will sit on his glorious throne.

<sup>32</sup>Before him will be gathered all the nations, and he will separate the people one from another, as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats.<sup>33</sup>He will place the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on his left.

<sup>34</sup>Then the King will say to those on his right hand, 'Come, you who have been blessed by my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world.'<sup>35</sup>For I was hungry and you gave me food; I was

thirsty and you gave me a drink; I was a stranger and you took me in;<sup>36</sup> I was naked and you clothed me; I was sick and you cared for me; I was in prison and you came to me.'

<sup>37</sup>"Then the righteous will answer and say, 'Lord, when did we see you hungry and feed you? Or thirsty and give you a drink?'<sup>38</sup> 'When did we see you a stranger and take you in? Or naked and clothe you?'<sup>39</sup> 'When did we see you sick or in prison and come to you?'

<sup>40</sup>"Then the King will answer and say to them, 'Truly I say to you, what you did for one of the least of these brothers of mine, you did it for me.'

<sup>41</sup>Then he will say to those on his left hand, 'Depart from me, you cursed, into the eternal fire that has been prepared for the devil and his angels,<sup>42</sup> because I was hungry, but you did not give me food; I was thirsty, but you did not give me a drink;<sup>43</sup> I was a stranger, but you did not take me in; naked, but you did not clothe me; sick and in prison, but you did not care for me.'

<sup>44</sup>"Then they will also answer and say, 'Lord, when did we see you hungry, or thirsty, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did not serve you?'

<sup>45</sup>"Then he will answer them and say, 'Truly I say to you, what you did not do for one of the least of these, you did not do for me.'<sup>46</sup> 'These will go away into eternal punishment, but the righteous into eternal life.'

---

## Matthew 25 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the teaching of the previous chapter.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The parable of the ten virgins

Jesus told the parable of the ten virgins ([Matthew 25:1-13](#)) to tell his followers to be ready for him to return. His hearers could understand the parable because they knew Jewish wedding customs.

When the Jews arranged marriages, they would plan for the wedding to take place weeks or months later. At the proper time, the young man would go to his bride's house, where she would be waiting for him. The wedding ceremony would take place, and then the man and his bride would travel to his home, where there would be a feast.

### Links:

- [Matthew 25:1 Notes](#)

---

#### Matthew 25:1

the kingdom of heaven will be like

#### Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable about wise and foolish virgins to illustrate that his disciples should be prepared for his return.

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in Matthew. If possible, use "heaven" in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 13:24]

lamps

These could have been 1) lamps or 2) torches made by putting cloth around the end of a stick and wetting the cloth with oil.

Matthew 25:2

Five of them

"Five of the virgins"

Matthew 25:3

did not take any oil with them

"had with them only the oil in their lamps"

Matthew 25:4

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 25:5

Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

while the bridegroom was delayed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "while the bridegroom was taking a long time to arrive"

they all got sleepy

"all ten virgins got sleepy"

Matthew 25:6

there was a cry

"someone shouted"

Matthew 25:7

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

trimmed their lamps

"adjusted their lamps so they would burn brightly"

Matthew 25:8

The foolish said to the wise

These nominal adjectives can be stated as adjectives. Alternate translation: "The foolish virgins said to the wise virgins"

our lamps are going out

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "the fire in our lamps is about to burn out"

Matthew 25:9

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 25:10

they went away

"the five foolish virgins went away"

to buy

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "to buy more oil"

those who were ready

These are the virgins who had extra oil.

the door was shut

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the servants shut the door"

Matthew 25:11

open for us

This implicit information can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "open the door for us so we can come inside"

Matthew 25:12

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes the parable about the ten virgins.

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what the master says next.

I do not know you

"I do not know who you are." This is the end of the parable.

Matthew 25:13

you do not know the day or the hour

Here "day" and "hour" refer to an exact time. The implied information can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "you do not know the exact time when the Son of Man will return"

Matthew 25:14

Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable about faithful and unfaithful servants to illustrate that his disciples should remain faithful during his absence and be prepared for his return.

it is like

The word "it" here refers to the kingdom of heaven (Matthew 13:24).

was about to go

"was ready to go" or "was to go soon"

entrusted his possessions to them

"put them in charge of his possessions"

his possessions

"what he owned"

Matthew 25:15

five talents

"five talents of gold." Avoid translating this into modern money. A "talent" of gold was worth twenty years' wages. The parable is contrasting the relative amounts of five, two, and one, as well as the large amount of wealth involved. Alternate translation: "five bags of gold" or "five bags of gold, each worth 20 years' wages"

to another he gave two ... gave one talent

The word "talents" is understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "to another he gave two talents of gold ... gave one talent of gold" or "to another he gave two bags of gold ... gave one bag of gold"

according to his own ability

The implicit information can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "according to each servant's skill in managing wealth"

Matthew 25:16

worked with them

"invested the talents" or "used them in business" or "traded with them"

gained another five talents

"out of his investments he earned another five talents"

Matthew 25:17

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable about the servants and the talents.

gained another two

"earned another two talents"

Matthew 25:18

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 25:19

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling the parable about the servants and the talents.

Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

Matthew 25:20

I have gained five talents more

"I have earned five more talents"

talents

A "talent" was worth twenty years' wages. Avoid translating this into modern money. See how you translated this in [Matthew 25:15]

Matthew 25:21

Well done

"You have done well" or "You have done right." Your culture might have an expression that a master (or someone in authority) would use to show that he approves of what his servant (or someone under him) has done.

Enter into the joy of your master

The phrase "Enter into the joy" is an idiom. Also, the master is speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "Come and be happy with me"

Matthew 25:22

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling the parable about the servants and the talents.

I have gained two more talents

"I have earned two more talents"

Matthew 25:23

Well done

"You have done well" or "You have done right." Your culture might have an expression that a master (or someone in authority) would use to show that he approves of what his servant (or someone under him) has done. See how you translated this in Matthew 25:21.

Enter into the joy of your master

The phrase "Enter into the joy" is an idiom. Also, the master is speaking about himself in the third person.

Alternate translation: "Come and be happy with me"  
See how you translated this in [Matthew 25:21]

Matthew 25:24

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling the parable about the servants and the talents.

a hard man

Possible meanings are 1) a man who demands much from other people or 2) a man who does not treat others well.

You reap where you did not sow, and you harvest where you did not scatter

The words "reap where you did not sow" and "harvest where you did not scatter" mean the same thing. They refer to a farmer who gathers crops that other people have planted. The servant uses this metaphor to accuse the master of taking what rightfully belongs to others.

scatter

"scatter seed." This refers to sowing seed by gently throwing handfuls of it onto the soil.

Matthew 25:25

See, you have here what belongs to you

"Look, here is what is yours"

Matthew 25:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable about the servants and the talents.

You wicked and lazy servant, you knew

"You are a wicked servant who does not want to work. You knew"

I reap where I have not sowed and harvest where I have not scattered

The words "reap where I have not sowed" and "harvest where I have not scattered" mean the same thing. They refer to a farmer who gathers crops that people who work for him have planted. See how you translated this in [Matthew 25:24]



#### Matthew 25:27

received back my own

The understood information can be stated clearly.  
Alternate translation: "received back my own money"

interest

payment from the banker for the temporary use of the master's money

#### Matthew 25:28

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes the parable about the servants and the talents.

take away the talent

The master is speaking to other servants.

talent

A "talent" was worth twenty years' wages. Avoid translating this into modern money. See how you translated this in [Matthew 25:15]

#### Matthew 25:29

who possesses

It is implied that the person who possesses something also uses it wisely. Alternate translation: "who uses well what he has"

he will have an abundance

"he will have much more"

from anyone who does not possess anything

It is implied that the person does possess something but he does not use it wisely. Alternate translation: "from anyone does not use well what he has"

will be taken away

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will take away" or "I will take away"

#### Matthew 25:30

the outer darkness

Here "outer darkness" is a metonym for the place where God sends those who reject them. This is a place that is completely separated from God forever. See how you translated this in [Matthew 8:12]

weeping and grinding of teeth

"Grinding of teeth" is symbolic action, representing extreme sadness and suffering. See how you translated this in [Matthew 8:12]

#### Matthew 25:31

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to tell his disciples how he will judge people when he returns at the end time.

the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person.

#### Matthew 25:32

Before him will be gathered all the nations

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He will gather all the nations before him"

Before him

"In front of him"

all the nations

Here "nations" refers to people. Alternate translation: "all people from every country"

as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats

Jesus uses a simile to describe how he will separate the people.

#### Matthew 25:33

He will place the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on his left

This is a metaphor that means the Son of Man will separate all people. He will put the righteous people at his right side, and he will put the sinners at his left side.

#### Matthew 25:34

the King ... his right hand

Here, "the King" is another title for the Son of Man. Jesus was referring to himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "I, the King, ... my right hand"

Come, you who have been blessed by my Father

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Come, you whom my Father has blessed"

my Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

inherit the kingdom prepared for you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "inherit the kingdom that God has made ready for you"

inherit the kingdom prepared for you

Here "kingdom" refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "receive the blessings of God's rule that he has planned to give you"

from the foundation of the world

The author speaks of the world as if it were a building set on a foundation. Alternate translation: "since he first created the world"

#### Matthew 25:35

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 25:36

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 25:37

the righteous

This can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "the righteous people"

Or thirsty

The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Or when did we see you thirsty"

#### Matthew 25:38

Or naked

This is the end of a series of questions that begins in verse 37. The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Or when did we see you naked"

#### Matthew 25:39

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 25:40

the King

This is another title for the Son of Man. Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person.

say to them

"say to those at his right hand"

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This emphasizes what the King says next.

one of the least

"one of the least important"

these brothers of mine

Here "brothers" refers to anyone, male or female, who obeys the King. Alternate translation: "my brothers and sisters here" or "these who are like my brothers and sisters"

you did it for me

"I consider that you did it for me"

Matthew 25:41

Then he will

"Then the King will." Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person.

you cursed

"you people whom God has cursed"

the eternal fire that has been prepared

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the eternal fire that God has prepared"

his angels

the devil's helpers

Matthew 25:42

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 25:43

naked, but you did not clothe me

The words "I was" preceding "naked" are understood. Alternate translation: "I was naked, but you did not give me clothes"

sick and in prison

The words "I was" preceding "sick" are understood. Alternate translation: "I was sick and in prison"

Matthew 25:44

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes telling his disciples how he will judge people when he returns at the end time.

they will also answer

"those on his left will also answer"

Matthew 25:45

for one of the least of these

"for any of the least important ones of my people"

you did not do for me

"I consider that you did not do it for me" or "I was really the one whom you did not help"

Matthew 25:46

General Information:

This is the end of the part of the story that began in Matthew 23:1, where Jesus teaches about salvation and the final judgment.

These will go away into eternal punishment

"The King will send these to a place where they will receive punishment that never ends"

but the righteous into eternal life

The understood information can be made clear. Alternate translation: "but the King will send the righteous to the place where they will live forever with God"

the righteous

This nominative adjective can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "the righteous people"

26 <sup>1</sup>It came about that when Jesus had finished all these words, he said to his disciples,<sup>2</sup>"You know that after two days the Passover is coming, and the Son of Man will be given over to be crucified."

<sup>3</sup>Then the chief priests and the elders of the people were gathered together in the palace of the high priest, who was named Caiaphas.<sup>4</sup>They plotted together to arrest Jesus stealthily and kill him.<sup>5</sup>For they were saying, "Not during the festival, so that a riot does not arise among the people."

<sup>6</sup>Now while Jesus was in Bethany in the house of Simon the leper,<sup>7</sup>as he was reclining at table, a woman came to him having an alabaster jar of very expensive ointment, and she poured it upon his head.<sup>8</sup>But when his disciples saw it, they became angry and said, "What is the reason for this waste?"<sup>9</sup>This could have been sold for a large amount and given to the poor."

<sup>10</sup>But Jesus, knowing this, said to them, "Why are you causing trouble for this woman? For she has done a beautiful thing for me.<sup>11</sup>You always have the poor with you, but you will not always have me.

<sup>12</sup>For when she poured this ointment on my body, she did it for my burial.<sup>13</sup>Truly I say to you, wherever this good news is preached in the whole world, what this woman has done will also be spoken of in memory of her."

<sup>14</sup>Then one of the twelve, who was named Judas Iscariot, went to the chief priests<sup>15</sup>and said, "What are you willing to give me to turn him over to you?" They weighed out thirty pieces of silver for him.<sup>16</sup>From that moment he sought an opportunity to turn him over to them.

<sup>17</sup>Now on the first day of unleavened bread the disciples came to Jesus and said, "Where do you want us to prepare for you to eat the Passover meal?"

<sup>18</sup>He said, "Go into the city to a certain man and say to him, 'The Teacher says, "My time is at hand. I will keep the Passover at your house with my disciples.'"<sup>19</sup>The disciples did as Jesus directed them, and they prepared the Passover meal.

<sup>20</sup>When evening came, he sat down to eat with the twelve disciples.<sup>21</sup>As they were eating, he said, "Truly I say to you that one of you will betray me."

<sup>22</sup>They were very sorrowful, and each one began to ask him, "Surely not I, Lord?"

<sup>23</sup>He answered, "The one who dips his hand with me in the dish is the one who will betray me.<sup>24</sup>The Son of Man will go, just as it is written about him. But woe to that man by whom the Son of Man is betrayed! It would be better for that man if he had not been born."

<sup>25</sup>Judas, who would betray him said, "Is it I, Rabbi?"

He said to him, "You have said it yourself."

<sup>26</sup>As they were eating, Jesus took bread, blessed it, and broke it. He gave it to the disciples and said, "Take, eat. This is my body."

<sup>27</sup>He took a cup and gave thanks, and gave it to them and said, "Drink it, all of you.<sup>28</sup>For this is my blood of the covenant that is poured out for many for the forgiveness of sins.<sup>29</sup>But I say to you, I will not drink again of this fruit of the vine, until that day when I drink it new with you in my Father's kingdom."

<sup>30</sup>When they had sung a hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives.<sup>31</sup>Then Jesus said to them, "All of you will fall away tonight because of me, for it is written,

'I will strike the shepherd  
and the sheep of the flock will be scattered.'

<sup>32</sup>But after I am raised up, I will go ahead of you into Galilee."

<sup>33</sup>But Peter said to him, "Even if all fall away because of you, I will never fall away."

<sup>34</sup>Jesus said to him, "Truly I say to you, this very night, before the rooster crows, you will deny me three times."

<sup>35</sup>Peter said to him, "Even if I must die with you, I will not deny you." All the other disciples said the same thing.

<sup>36</sup>Then Jesus went with them to a place called Gethsemane and said to his disciples, "Sit here while I go over there and pray."<sup>37</sup> He took Peter and the two sons of Zebedee with him and began to become sorrowful and troubled.

<sup>38</sup>Then he said to them, "My soul is deeply sorrowful, even to death. Remain here and watch with me."

<sup>39</sup>He went a little farther, fell on his face, and prayed. He said, "My Father, if it is possible, let this cup pass from me. Yet, not as I will, but as you will."<sup>40</sup> He came to the disciples and found them sleeping, and he said to Peter, "What, could you not watch with me for one hour?"<sup>41</sup> Watch and pray that you do not enter into temptation. The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak."

<sup>42</sup>He went away a second time and prayed. He said, "My Father, if this cannot pass away unless I drink it, your will be done."<sup>43</sup> He came again and found them sleeping, for their eyes were heavy.<sup>44</sup> So leaving them again, he went away and prayed a third time, saying the same words.

<sup>45</sup>Then Jesus came to the disciples and said to them, "Are you still sleeping and taking your rest? Look, the hour is at hand, and the Son of Man is being betrayed into the hands of sinners."<sup>46</sup> Arise, let us go. Look, the one who is betraying me is near."

<sup>47</sup>While he was still speaking, Judas, one of the twelve, came. A large crowd came with him from the chief priests and elders of the people. They came with swords and clubs.<sup>48</sup> Now the man who was going to betray Jesus had given them a signal, saying, "The one I kiss is the man. Seize him."

<sup>49</sup>Immediately he came up to Jesus and said, "Greetings, Rabbi!" and he kissed him.

<sup>50</sup>Jesus said to him, "Friend, do what you have come to do." Then they came, laid hands on Jesus, and seized him.

<sup>51</sup>Behold, one of those who was with Jesus stretched out his hand, drew his sword, and struck the servant of the high priest, and cut off his ear.<sup>52</sup> Then Jesus said to him, "Put your sword back in its place, for all those who take up the sword will perish by the sword."<sup>53</sup> Do you think that I could not call upon my Father, and he would send me more than twelve legions of angels?<sup>54</sup> But how then would the scriptures be fulfilled, that this must happen?"

<sup>55</sup>At that time Jesus said to the crowd, "Have you come out with swords and clubs to seize me like a robber? Every day I sat teaching in the temple, and you did not arrest me."<sup>56</sup> But all this has happened so that the writings of the prophets might be fulfilled." Then all the disciples abandoned him and fled.

<sup>57</sup>Those who had seized Jesus led him away to Caiaphas the high priest, where the scribes and the elders had gathered together.<sup>58</sup> But Peter followed him from a distance to the courtyard of the high priest. He went inside and sat down with the officers to see the outcome.

<sup>59</sup>Now the chief priests and the whole council were looking for false testimony against Jesus so that they might put him to death.<sup>60</sup> They did not find any, even though many false witnesses came forward. But later two came forward<sup>61</sup> and said, "This man said, 'I am able to destroy the temple of God and rebuild it in three days.'"

<sup>62</sup>The high priest stood up and said to him, "Do you have no answer? What is it that they are testifying against you?"<sup>63</sup> But Jesus was silent. The high priest said to him, "I command you by the living God, tell us whether you are the Christ, the Son of God."

<sup>64</sup>Jesus replied to him, "You have said it yourself. But I tell you, from now on you will see the Son of Man sitting at the right hand of Power, and coming on the clouds of heaven."

<sup>65</sup>Then the high priest tore his clothes and said, "He has spoken blasphemy! Why do we still need witnesses? Look, now you have heard the blasphemy."<sup>66</sup> What do you think?"

They answered and said, "He is deserving of death."

<sup>67</sup>Then they spit in his face and beat him with their fists, while some slapped him<sup>68</sup> and said, "Prophecy to us, you Christ. Who is it that struck you?"

<sup>69</sup>Now Peter was sitting outside in the courtyard, and a servant girl came to him and said, "You were also with Jesus of Galilee."

<sup>70</sup>But he denied it in front of them all, saying, "I do not know what you are talking about."

<sup>71</sup>When he went out to the gateway, another servant girl saw him and said to those there, "This man was also with Jesus of Nazareth."

<sup>72</sup>He again denied it with an oath, "I do not know the man!"

<sup>73</sup>After a little while those who were standing by came and said to Peter, "Surely you are also one of them, for the way you speak gives you away."

<sup>74</sup>Then he began to curse and swear, "I do not know the man," and immediately a rooster crowed.

<sup>75</sup>Peter remembered the words that Jesus had said, "Before the rooster crows you will deny me three times." Then he went outside and wept bitterly.

---

## Matthew 26 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 26:31, which is from the Old Testament.

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Sheep

Sheep are a common image used in Scripture to refer to the people of Israel. In [Matthew 26:31](#), however, Jesus used the words "the sheep" to refer to his disciples and to say that they would run away when he was arrested.

#### Passover

The Passover festival was when the Jews would celebrate the day God killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians but "passed over" the Israelites and let them live.

#### The eating of the body and blood

[Matthew 26:26-28](#) describes Jesus's last meal with his followers. At this time, Jesus told them that what they were eating and drinking were his body and his blood. Nearly all Christian churches celebrate "the Lord's Supper," the "Eucharist", or "Holy Communion" to remember this meal.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Judas's kiss for Jesus

[Matthew 26:49](#) describes how Judas kissed Jesus so the soldiers would know whom to arrest. The Jews would kiss each other when they greeted each other.

#### "I am able to destroy the temple of God"

Two men accused Jesus of saying that he could destroy the temple in Jerusalem and then rebuild it "in three days" ([Matthew 26:61](#)). They were accusing him of insulting God by claiming that God had given him the authority to destroy the temple and the power to rebuild it. What Jesus actually said was that if the Jewish authorities were to destroy this temple, he would certainly raise it up in three days ([John 2:19](#)).

## Links:

- [Matthew 26:1 Notes](#)
- 

### Matthew 26:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story that tells of Jesus's crucifixion, death, and resurrection. Here he tells his disciples how he will suffer and die.

It came about that when

"After" or "Then, after." This phrase shifts the story from Jesus's teachings to what happened next.

all these words

This refers to all that Jesus taught starting in Matthew 24:3.

### Matthew 26:2

the Son of Man will be given over to be crucified

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "some men will give the Son of Man to other people who will crucify him"

the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person.

### Matthew 26:3

Connecting Statement:

These verses give background information about the Jewish leaders' plot to arrest and kill Jesus.

were gathered together

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "came together" or "met together"

### Matthew 26:4

Jesus stealthily

"Jesus secretly"

### Matthew 26:5

Not during the festival

What the leaders did not want to do during the festival can be made clearer. Alternate translation: "We should not kill Jesus during the festival"

the festival

This is the yearly Passover festival.

### Matthew 26:6

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of a woman pouring expensive oil on Jesus before his death.

Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

Simon the leper

It is implied that this is a man whom Jesus had healed from leprosy.

### Matthew 26:7

he was reclining

"Jesus was lying on his side." You can use your language's word for the position people usually are in when they eat.

a woman came to him

"a woman came to Jesus"

alabaster jar

This is a costly container made of soft stone.

ointment

oil that has a pleasing smell

she poured it upon his head

The woman did this to honor Jesus.

## Matthew 26:8

What is the reason for this waste?

The disciples ask this question out of their anger over the woman's actions. Alternate translation: "This woman has done a bad thing by wasting this ointment!"

## Matthew 26:9

This could have been sold for a large amount and given

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "She could have sold this for a large amount of money and given the money"

to the poor

Here "the poor" can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "to poor people"

## Matthew 26:10

Why are you causing trouble for this woman?

Jesus asks this question as a rebuke of his disciples. Alternate translation: "You should not be causing trouble for this woman!"

Why are you

All occurrences of "you" are plural and refer to the disciples.

## Matthew 26:11

the poor

This can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "poor people"

## Matthew 26:12

ointment

This is oil that has a pleasing smell. See how you translated this in Matthew 26:7.

## Matthew 26:13

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

wherever this good news is preached

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "wherever people preach this good news"

what this woman has done will also be spoken of in memory of her

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will remember what this woman has done and will tell others about her" or "people will remember what this woman has done and will tell others about her"

## Matthew 26:14

Connecting Statement:

Judas Iscariot agrees to help the Jewish leaders arrest and kill Jesus.

## Matthew 26:15

to turn him over to you

"to bring Jesus to you"

thirty pieces of silver

Since these words are the same as those in an Old Testament prophecy, keep this form instead of changing it to modern money.

thirty pieces

"30 pieces"

## Matthew 26:16

to turn him over to them

"to enable them to seize him"

## Matthew 26:17

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus celebrating the Passover with his disciples.

Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.



## Matthew 26:18

He said, "Go into the city to a certain man and say to him, 'The Teacher says, "My time is at hand. I will keep the Passover at your house with my disciples.'""

This has quotations within quotations. You can state some of the direct quotations as indirect quotations. Alternate translation: "He told his disciples to go into the city to a certain man and tell him that the Teacher says to him, 'My time is at hand. I will keep the Passover at your house with my disciples.'" or "He told his disciples to go into the city to a certain man and say to him that the Teacher's time is at hand and he will keep the Passover with his disciples at that man's house."

My time

Possible meanings are 1) "The time that I told you about" or 2) "The time God has set for me."

is at hand

Possible meanings are 1) "is near" or 2) "has come."

keep the Passover

"eat the Passover meal" or "celebrate the Passover by eating the special meal"

## Matthew 26:19

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Matthew 26:20

he sat down to eat

Use the word for the position people in your culture usually are in when they eat.

## Matthew 26:21

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

## Matthew 26:22

Surely not I, Lord?

"I am surely not the one, am I, Lord?" Possible meanings are 1) this is a rhetorical question since the apostles were sure they would not betray Jesus. Alternate translation: "Lord, I would never betray you!" or 2) this was a sincere question since Jesus's statement probably troubled and confused them.

## Matthew 26:23

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Matthew 26:24

The Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person.

will go

Here "go" is a polite way to refer to dying. Alternate translation: "will go to his death" or "will die"

just as it is written about him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "just as the prophets wrote about him in the scriptures"

that man by whom the Son of Man is betrayed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the man who betrays the Son of Man"

## Matthew 26:25

Is it I, Rabbi?

"Rabbi, am I the one who will betray you?" Judas may be using a rhetorical question to deny that he is the one who will betray Jesus. Alternate translation: "Rabbi, surely I am not the one who will betray you."

You have said it yourself

This is an idiom that Jesus uses to mean "yes" without being completely clear about what he means. Alternate translation: "You are saying it" or "You are admitting it"

## Matthew 26:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus institutes the Lord's Supper as he celebrates the Passover with his disciples.

took ... blessed ... broke

See how you translated these words in Matthew 14:19.

## Matthew 26:27

He took

Translate "took" as you did in Matthew 14:19.

a cup

Here "cup" refers to the cup and the wine in it.

gave it to them

"gave it to the disciples"

Drink it

"Drink the wine from this cup"

## Matthew 26:28

For this is my blood

"For this wine is my blood"

blood of the covenant

"blood that shows that the covenant is in effect" or  
"blood that makes the covenant possible"

is poured out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:  
"will soon flow out of my body" or "will flow out of my  
wounds when I die"

## Matthew 26:29

I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

fruit of the vine

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "wine"

in my Father's kingdom

Here "kingdom" refers to God's rule as king. Alternate  
translation: "when my Father establishes his rule on  
earth"

my Father's

Father is an important title for God that describes the  
relationship between God and Jesus.

## Matthew 26:30

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples as they walk to the  
Mount of Olives.

hymn

a song of praise to God

## Matthew 26:31

General Information:

Jesus quotes the prophet Zechariah to show that in  
order to fulfill prophecy, all of his disciples will leave  
him.

fall away

"leave me"

for it is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:  
"for the prophet Zechariah wrote long ago in the  
scriptures"

I will strike

Here "I" refers to God. It is implied that God will cause  
or allow people to harm and kill Jesus.

the shepherd ... sheep of the flock

These are metaphors that refer to Jesus and the  
disciples.

the sheep of the flock will be scattered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:  
"they will scatter all the sheep of the flock" or "the  
sheep of the flock will run off in all directions"

## Matthew 26:32

after I am raised up

Here to raise up is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "after God raises me up" or "after God brings me back to life"

## Matthew 26:33

fall away

See how you translated this in Matthew 26:31.

## Matthew 26:34

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

before the rooster crows

Roosters often crow about the time the sun comes up, so the hearers might have understood these words as a metonym for the sun coming up. However, the actual crowing of a rooster is an important part of the story later on, so keep the word "rooster" in the translation.

rooster

a male chicken, a bird that calls out loudly around the time the sun comes up

crows

This is the common English word for what a rooster does to make his loud call.

you will deny me three times

"you will say three times that you are not my follower"

## Matthew 26:35

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Matthew 26:36

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus praying in Gethsemane.

## Matthew 26:37

began to become sorrowful

"he became very sad"

## Matthew 26:38

My soul is deeply sorrowful

Here "soul" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "I am very sad"

even to death

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "and I feel as if I could even die"

## Matthew 26:39

fell on his face

He purposely lay face down on the ground to pray.

My Father

This is an important title for God that shows the relationship between God and Jesus.

let this cup pass from me

Jesus speaks of the work that he must do, including dying on the cross, as if it were a bitter liquid that God has commanded him to drink from a cup. The word "cup" is an important word in the New Testament, so try to use an equivalent for that in your translation.

this cup

Here "cup" is a metonym that stands for the cup and the contents within it. The contents in the cup are a metaphor for the suffering that Jesus will have to endure. Jesus is asking the Father if it is possible for him not to have to experience the death and suffering that Jesus knows will soon happen.

Yet, not as I will, but as you will

This can be expressed as a full sentence. Alternate translation: "But do not do what I want; instead, do what you want"

Matthew 26:40

he said to Peter, "What, could you not watch

Jesus is speaking to Peter, but the "you" is plural, referring to Peter, James, and John.

What, could you not watch with me for one hour?

Jesus uses a question to scold Peter, James, and John. Alternate translation: "I am disappointed that you could not stay awake with me for one hour!"

Matthew 26:41

you do not enter into temptation

Here the abstract noun "temptation" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "no one tempts you to sin"

The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak

Here "spirit" is a metonym that stands for a person's desires to do good. "Flesh" stands for the needs and desires of a person's body. Jesus means that the disciples may have the desire to do what God wants, but as humans they are weak and often fail.

Matthew 26:42

He went away

"Jesus went away"

a second time

The first time is described in [Matthew 26:39]

My Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

if this cannot pass away unless I drink it

"if the only way this can pass away is if I drink it." Jesus speaks of the work that he must do as if it were a bitter liquid that God has commanded him to drink.

if this

Here "this" refers to the cup and the contents within it, a metaphor for suffering, as in Matthew 26:39).

unless I drink it

"unless I drink from it" or "unless I drink from this cup of suffering." Here "it" refers to the cup and the contents within it, a metaphor for suffering, as in Matthew 26:39).

your will be done

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "may what you want happen" or "do what you want to do"

Matthew 26:43

their eyes were heavy

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "they were very sleepy"

Matthew 26:44

third time

The first time is described in [Matthew 26:39]

Matthew 26:45

Are you still sleeping and taking your rest?

Jesus uses a question to scold the disciples for going to sleep. Alternate translation: "I am disappointed that you are still sleeping and resting!"

the hour is at hand

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "the time has come"

the Son of Man is being betrayed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone is betraying the Son of Man"

the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person.

betrayed into the hands of sinners

Here "hands" refers to power or control. Alternate translation: "betrayed into the power of sinners" or "betrayed so that sinners will have power over him"

Look

"Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

Matthew 26:46

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 26:47

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of when Judas betrayed Jesus and the religious leaders arrested him.

While he was still speaking

"While Jesus was still speaking"

clubs

large pieces of hard wood for hitting people

Matthew 26:48

Now ... Seize him

Here "Now" is used to mark a pause in the main story. Here Matthew tells background information about Judas and the signal he planned to use to betray Jesus.

saying, "The one I kiss is the man. Seize him."

This direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "saying that the one he kissed was the one they should seize."

kiss

This was a respectful way to greet one's teacher.

Matthew 26:49

he came up to Jesus

"Judas came up to Jesus"

kissed him

"met him with a kiss." Good friends would kiss each other on the cheek, but a disciple would probably kiss his master on the hand to show respect. No one knows for sure how Judas kissed Jesus.

Matthew 26:50

Then they came

Here "they" refers to the people with clubs and swords that came with Judas and the religious leaders.

laid hands on Jesus, and seized him

"grabbed Jesus, and arrested him"

Matthew 26:51

Behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

Matthew 26:52

who take up the sword

The word "sword" is a metonym for the act of killing someone with a sword. The implied information can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "who pick up a sword to kill others" or "who want to kill other people"

sword will perish by the sword

"sword will die by means of the sword" or "sword—it is with the sword that someone will kill them"

Matthew 26:53

Do you think that I could not call ... angels?

Jesus uses a question to remind the person with the sword that Jesus could stop those who are arresting him. Alternate translation: "Surely you know that I could call ... angels."

Do you think

Here "you" is singular and refers to the person with the sword.

my Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

more than twelve legions of angels

The word "legion" is a military term that refers to a group of about 6,000 soldiers. Jesus means God would send enough angels to easily stop those who are arresting Jesus. The exact number of angels is not important. Alternate translation: "more than 12 really large groups of angels"

Matthew 26:54

But how then would the scriptures be fulfilled, that this must happen?

Jesus uses a question to explain why he is letting these people arrest him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But if I did that, I would not be able to fulfill what God said in the scriptures must happen"

Matthew 26:55

Have you come out with swords and clubs to seize me like a robber?

Jesus is using this question to point out the wrong actions of those arresting him. Alternate translation: "You know that I am not a robber, so it is wrong for you to come out to me bringing swords and clubs"

clubs

large pieces of hard wood for hitting people

in the temple

It is implied that Jesus was not in the actual temple. He was in the courtyard around the temple.

Matthew 26:56

the writings of the prophets might be fulfilled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I would fulfill all that the prophets wrote in the scriptures"

abandoned him

"left him." If your language has a word that means they left him when they should have stayed with him, use it here.

Matthew 26:57

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus's trial before the council of Jewish religious leaders.

Matthew 26:58

Peter followed him

"Peter followed Jesus"

courtyard of the high priest

an open area near the high priest's house

He went inside

"Peter went inside"

the officers

These were probably the servants of the "scribes and elders" (Matthew 26:57).

Matthew 26:59

Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

so that they

Here "they" refers to the chief priests and the members of the council.

might put him to death

"might have a reason to execute him"

Matthew 26:60

two came forward

"two men came forward" or "two witnesses came forward"

## Matthew 26:61

This man said, 'I am able to destroy ... days.'

If your language does not allow quotes within quotes you can rewrite it as a single quote. Alternate translation: "This man said that he is able to destroy ... days."

This man said

"This man Jesus said"

in three days

"within three days," before the sun goes down three times, not "after three days," after the sun has gone down the third time

## Matthew 26:62

What is it that they are testifying against you?

The chief priest is not asking Jesus for information about what the witnesses said. He is asking Jesus to prove what the witnesses said is wrong. Alternate translation: "What is your response to what the witnesses are testifying against you?"

## Matthew 26:63

Son of God

This is an important title that describes the relationship between the Christ and God.

the living God

Here "living" contrasts the God of Israel to all the false gods and idols that people worshiped. Only the God of Israel is alive and has power to act. See how you translated this in Matthew 16:16.

## Matthew 26:64

You have said it yourself

This is an idiom that Jesus uses to mean "yes" without being completely clear about what he means. Alternate translation: "You are saying it" or "You are admitting it"

But I tell you, from now on you

Here "you" is plural. Jesus is speaking to the high priest and to the other persons there.

from now on you will see the Son of Man

Possible meanings are 1) the phrase "from now on" is an idiom that means they will see the Son of Man in his power at some time in the future or 2) the phrase "from now on" means that from the time of Jesus's trial and onward, Jesus is showing himself to be the Messiah who is powerful and victorious.

the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself in third person.

sitting at the right hand of Power

Here "Power" is metonym that represents God. To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "sitting in the place of honor beside the all-powerful God"

coming on the clouds of heaven

"riding to earth on the clouds of heaven"

## Matthew 26:65

the high priest tore his clothes

Tearing clothing was a sign of anger and sadness.

He has spoken blasphemy

The reason the high priest called Jesus's statement blasphemy is probably that he understood Jesus's words in [Matthew 26:64]

Why do we still need witnesses?

The high priest uses this question to emphasize that he and the members of the council do not need to hear from any more witnesses. Alternate translation: "We do not need to hear from any more witnesses!"

now you have heard

Here "you" is plural and refers to the members of the council.

## Matthew 26:66

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 26:67

Then they

Possible meanings are 1) "Then some of the men" or 2) "Then the soldiers."

spit in his face

This was done as an insult.

slapped him

hit him in the face with the palms of their hands

#### Matthew 26:68

Prophecy to us

Here "Prophecy to us" means to tell by means of God's power. It does not mean to tell what will happen in the future.

you Christ

Those hitting Jesus do not really think he is the Christ. They call him this to mock him.

#### Matthew 26:69

General Information:

These events happen at the same time as Jesus's trial before the religious leaders.

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of how Peter denies three times that he knows Jesus, as Jesus said he would do.

Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

#### Matthew 26:70

I do not know what you are talking about

Peter was able to understand what the servant girl was saying. He used these words to deny that he had been with Jesus.

#### Matthew 26:71

When he went out

"When Peter went out"

gateway

opening in the wall around a courtyard

said to those there

"said to the people who were sitting there"

#### Matthew 26:72

He again denied it with an oath

"He denied it again by swearing"

#### Matthew 26:73

one of them

"one of those who were with Jesus"

one of them, for the way you speak gives you away

This can be translated with a new sentence. "one of them. We can tell you are from Galilee because you speak like a Galilean"

#### Matthew 26:74

to curse

"to call down a curse on himself"

rooster crowed

A rooster is a bird that calls out loudly around the time the sun comes up. A rooster that has called out is said to have "crowed." See how you translated this in Matthew 26:34.

#### Matthew 26:75

Peter remembered the words that Jesus had said, "Before the rooster crows you will deny me three times."

This direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Peter remembered that Jesus told him that before the rooster crowed, he would deny Jesus three times."



<sup>27</sup> Now when morning came, all the chief priests and elders of the people plotted against Jesus to put him to death.<sup>2</sup> They bound him, led him away, and delivered him to Pilate the governor.

<sup>3</sup> Then when Judas, who had betrayed him, saw that Jesus had been condemned, he repented and returned the thirty pieces of silver to the chief priests and elders,<sup>4</sup> and said, "I have sinned by betraying innocent blood."

But they said, "What is that to us? See to that yourself."

<sup>5</sup> Then he threw down the pieces of silver in the temple, and departed, and went out and hanged himself.

<sup>6</sup> The chief priests took the pieces of silver and said, "It is not lawful to put this into the treasury because it is the price of blood."<sup>7</sup> They discussed the matter together, and they bought with the money the potter's field in which to bury strangers.<sup>8</sup> For this reason that field has been called, "The Field of Blood" to this day.

<sup>9</sup> Then that which had been spoken by Jeremiah the prophet was fulfilled, saying, "They took the thirty pieces of silver, the price set on him by the sons of Israel,<sup>10</sup> and they gave it for the potter's field, as the Lord had directed me."

<sup>11</sup> Now Jesus stood before the governor, and the governor asked him, "Are you the King of the Jews?"

Jesus answered him, "You say so."

<sup>12</sup> But when he was accused by the chief priests and elders, he answered nothing.<sup>13</sup> Then Pilate said to him, "Do you not hear how many things they accuse you of?"<sup>14</sup> But he did not answer even one word, so that the governor was greatly amazed.

<sup>15</sup> Now at the festival it was the custom of the governor to set free one prisoner chosen by the crowd.<sup>16</sup> At that time they had a notorious prisoner named Jesus Barabbas. [1](#)

<sup>17</sup> So when they were gathered together, Pilate said to them, "Who do you want me to set free for you? Barabbas, or Jesus who is called Christ?"<sup>18</sup> He knew that they had handed Jesus over to him because of envy.

<sup>19</sup> While he was sitting on the judgment seat, his wife sent word to him and said, "Have nothing to do with that innocent man. For I have suffered much today because of a dream I had about him."

<sup>20</sup> Now the chief priests and the elders persuaded the crowd that they should ask for Barabbas and destroy Jesus.

<sup>21</sup> The governor asked them, "Which of the two do you want me to set free for you?"

They said, "Barabbas."

<sup>22</sup> Pilate said to them, "What should I do with Jesus who is called Christ?"

They all answered, "Crucify him."

<sup>23</sup> Then he said, "Why, what evil has he done?"

But they cried out even louder, "Crucify him."

<sup>24</sup> So when Pilate saw that he was gaining nothing, but instead a riot was starting, he took water, washed his hands in front of the crowd, and said, "I am innocent of the blood of this man. You see to it."

<sup>25</sup> All the people said, "May his blood be on us and our children."<sup>26</sup> Then he set Barabbas free for them, but he scourged Jesus and handed him over to be crucified.

<sup>27</sup> Then the soldiers of the governor took Jesus into the government headquarters and they gathered the whole company of soldiers.<sup>28</sup> They stripped him and put a scarlet robe on him.<sup>29</sup> They made a crown of thorns and put it on his head, and placed a staff in his right hand. They knelt down before him and mocked him, saying, "Hail, King of the Jews!"

<sup>30</sup> They spat on him, and they took the staff and struck him on the head again and again.<sup>31</sup> When they had mocked him, they took the robe off him and put his own garments on him, and led him away to crucify him.

<sup>32</sup>As they came out, they found a man from Cyrene named Simon, whom they forced to go with them so that he might carry his cross.<sup>33</sup>They came to a place called Golgotha, which means "The Place of a Skull."<sup>34</sup>They gave him wine to drink mixed with gall. But when he tasted it, he would not drink.

<sup>35</sup>When they had crucified him, they divided up his garments by casting lots,<sup>36</sup> and they sat and kept guard over him.<sup>37</sup>Above his head they put the charge against him, which read, "This is Jesus, the king of the Jews."

<sup>38</sup>Two robbers were crucified with him, one on the right of him and one on the left.<sup>39</sup>Those who passed by insulted him, shaking their heads<sup>40</sup> and saying, "You who were going to destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days, save yourself! If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross!"

<sup>41</sup>In the same way the chief priests were mocking him, along with the scribes and elders, and said,<sup>42</sup>"He saved others, but he cannot save himself. He is the King of Israel. Let him come down off the cross, and then we will believe in him.

<sup>43</sup>He trusts in God, let God rescue him now, if God consents to release him. For he even said, 'I am the Son of God.'"<sup>44</sup>In the same way the robbers who were crucified with him also insulted him.

<sup>45</sup>Now from the sixth hour darkness came over the whole land until the ninth hour.<sup>46</sup> About the ninth hour, Jesus cried with a loud voice and said, "Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani?" which means, "My God, my God, why have you abandoned me?"

<sup>47</sup>When some of those who were standing there heard it, they said, "He is calling for Elijah."

<sup>48</sup>Immediately one of them ran and took a sponge, filled it with sour wine, put it on a reed staff, and gave it to him to drink.<sup>49</sup> The rest of them said, "Leave him alone. Let us see whether Elijah comes to save him."<sup>50</sup>Then Jesus cried out again with a loud voice and gave up his spirit.

<sup>51</sup>Behold, the curtain of the temple was split in two from the top to the bottom, and the earth shook, and the rocks split apart.<sup>52</sup>The tombs were opened, and the bodies of the holy people who had fallen asleep were raised.<sup>53</sup>They came out of the tombs after his resurrection, entered the holy city, and appeared to many.

<sup>54</sup>Now when the centurion and those who were watching Jesus saw the earthquake and the things that had happened, they became very afraid and said, "Truly this was the Son of God."<sup>55</sup>Many women who had followed Jesus from Galilee to attend to his needs were there watching from a distance.<sup>56</sup> Among them were Mary Magdalene, Mary the mother of James and Joseph, and the mother of the sons of Zebedee.

<sup>57</sup>When it was evening, there came a rich man from Arimathea, named Joseph, who was also a disciple of Jesus.

<sup>58</sup>He approached Pilate and asked for the body of Jesus. Then Pilate ordered it to be given to him.

<sup>59</sup>Joseph took the body, wrapped it in a clean linen cloth,<sup>60</sup> and laid it in his own new tomb that he had cut into the rock. Then he rolled a large stone against the door of the tomb and went away.<sup>61</sup> Mary Magdalene and the other Mary were there, sitting opposite the tomb.

<sup>62</sup>The next day, which was the day after the Preparation, the chief priests and the Pharisees were gathered together with Pilate.<sup>63</sup>They said, "Sir, we remember that when that deceiver was alive, he said, 'After three days will I rise again.'<sup>64</sup>Therefore command that the tomb be made secure until the third day, otherwise his disciples may come and steal him and say to the people, 'He has risen from the dead,' and the last deception will be worse than the first."

<sup>65</sup>Pilate said to them, "Take a guard. Go and make it as secure as you know how."<sup>66</sup>So they went and made the tomb secure, sealing the stone and placing the guard.

---

<sup>1</sup>Many ancient copies do not have Jesus .

---

# Matthew 27 General Notes

## Special concepts in this chapter

"Delivered him to Pilate the governor"

The Jewish leaders needed to get permission from Pontius Pilate, the Roman governor, before they could kill Jesus. This was because Roman law did not allow them to kill Jesus themselves. Pilate was going to set one prisoner free, and he wanted to set Jesus free, but they wanted him to free a very bad prisoner named Barabbas instead.

## The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried ([Matthew 27:60](#)) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

### Sarcasm

The soldiers said, "Hail, King of the Jews!"

## Links:

- [Matthew 27:1 Notes](#)

### Matthew 27:1

#### Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus's trial before Pilate.

Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

plotted against Jesus to put him to death

The Jewish leaders were planning how they could convince the Roman leaders to kill Jesus.

### Matthew 27:2

#### General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Matthew 27:3

#### General Information:

This event happened after Jesus's trial in front of the council of Jewish religious leaders, but we do not know if it happened before or during Jesus's trial before Pilate.

#### Connecting Statement:

The author has stopped telling the story of Jesus's trial so he can tell the story of how Judas killed himself.

Then when Judas

If your language has a way of showing that a new story is starting, you may want to use that here.

that Jesus had been condemned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus"

the thirty pieces of silver

This was the money that the chief priests had given Judas to betray Jesus. See how you translated it in Matthew 26:15.

Matthew 27:4

innocent blood

This is an idiom that refers to the death of an innocent person. Alternate translation: "a person who does not deserve to die"

What is that to us?

The Jewish leaders use this question to emphasize that they do not care about what Judas said. Alternate translation: "That is not our problem!" or "That is your problem!"

Matthew 27:5

threw down the pieces of silver in the temple

Possible meanings are 1) he threw the pieces of silver while in the temple courtyard, or 2) he was standing in the temple courtyard, and he threw the pieces of silver into the temple.

Matthew 27:6

It is not lawful to put this

"Our laws do not allow us to put this"

put this

"put this silver"

the treasury

This is the place they kept the money they used to provide for things needed for the temple and the priests.

price of blood

This is an idiom that means money paid to a person who helped kill someone. Alternate translation: "money paid for a man to die"

Matthew 27:7

potter's field

This was a field that was bought to bury strangers who died in Jerusalem.

Matthew 27:8

that field has been called

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people call that field"

to this day

This means to the time that Matthew is writing this book.

Matthew 27:9

General Information:

The author quotes Old Testament scripture to show that Judas's suicide was a fulfillment of prophecy.

Then that which had been spoken by Jeremiah the prophet was fulfilled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This fulfilled what the prophet Jeremiah spoke"

the price set on him by the sons of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the price the sons of Israel set on him"

the sons of Israel

This refers to those among the people of Israel who paid to kill Jesus and speaks of them as though they were doing what all the people of Israel wanted them to do. Alternate translation: "some of the descendants of Israel" or "the leaders of Israel"

Matthew 27:10

directed me

Here "me" refers to Jeremiah.

## Matthew 27:11

Connecting Statement:

This continues the story of Jesus's trial before Pilate, which began in Matthew 27:2.

Now

The word "Now" is used here to mark a return to the main events of the story.

the governor

"Pilate"

You say so

Possible meanings are 1) by saying this, Jesus implied that he is the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: "Yes, as you said, I am" or "Yes. It is as you said" or 2) by saying this, Jesus was saying that Pilate, not Jesus, was the one calling him the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: "You yourself have said so"

## Matthew 27:12

But when he was accused by the chief priests and elders

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But when the chief priests and elders accused him"

## Matthew 27:13

Do you not hear how many things they accuse you of?

Pilate asks this question because he is surprised that Jesus remains silent. Alternate translation: "I am surprised that you do not answer these people who accuse you of doing so many bad things!"

how many things they accuse you of

"how many things they testify against you about"

## Matthew 27:14

did not answer even one word, so that the governor was greatly amazed

"did not say even one word; this greatly amazed the governor." This is an emphatic way of saying that Jesus was completely silent.

## Matthew 27:15

Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story so Matthew can give information to help the reader understand what happens beginning in [Matthew 27:17]

the festival

This is the Passover celebration.

prisoner chosen by the crowd

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "prisoner whom the crowd would choose"

## Matthew 27:16

they had a notorious prisoner

"there was a notorious prisoner"

notorious

well known for doing something bad

## Matthew 27:17

they were gathered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the crowd gathered"

Jesus who is called Christ

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom some people call the Christ"

## Matthew 27:18

they had handed Jesus over to him

"the Jewish leaders had brought Jesus to him." They had done this so that Pilate would judge Jesus.

## Matthew 27:19

While he was sitting

"While Pilate was sitting"

sitting on the judgment seat

"sitting on the judge's seat." This is where a judge would sit while making a decision.

sent word

"sent a message"

I have suffered much today

"I have been very upset today"

Matthew 27:20

Now ... destroy Jesus

Here "Now" is used to mark a pause in the story. Matthew tells background information about why the crowd chose Barabbas.

they should ask for Barabbas and destroy Jesus

The phrase "ask for Barabbas" is an ellipsis for "ask Pilate to release Barabbas." The phrase "destroy Jesus" here is a euphemism for "kill Jesus," and because the people in the crowd would not kill Jesus themselves, it is a metonym or ellipsis for the crowd telling Pilate to have his soldiers kill Jesus. Alternate translation: "they should ask Pilate to release Jesus and tell him to have his soldiers kill Jesus"

Matthew 27:21

asked them

"asked the crowd"

Matthew 27:22

who is called Christ

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom some people call the Christ"

Matthew 27:23

has he done

"has Jesus done"

they cried out

"the crowd cried out"

Matthew 27:24

he was gaining nothing

"he was doing no good" or "he was unable to convince the people"

washed his hands in front of the crowd

Pilate does this as a sign that he is not responsible for Jesus's death.

the blood

Here "blood" refers to a person's death. Alternate translation: "the death"

You see to it

This is an idiom that means "This is your responsibility."

Matthew 27:25

May his blood be on us and our children

Here "blood" is a metonym that stands for a person's death. The phrase "be on us and our children" is an idiom that means they accept the responsibility of what is happening. Alternate translation: "Yes! We and our descendants will be responsible for executing him"

Matthew 27:26

Then he set Barabbas free for them

Possible meanings are 1) Pilate set Barabbas free because the crowd had asked him to or 2) Pilate released Barabbas and put him under the control of the crowd.

he scourged Jesus and handed him over to be crucified

It is implied that Pilate ordered his soldiers to scourge Jesus. Handing Jesus over to be crucified is a metaphor for ordering his soldiers to crucify Jesus. Alternate translation: "he ordered his soldiers to scourge Jesus and to crucify him" (See: and )

scourged Jesus

"beat Jesus with a whip" or "whipped Jesus"

#### Matthew 27:27

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus's crucifixion and death.

company of soldiers

"group of soldiers"

#### Matthew 27:28

stripped him

"pulled off his clothes"

scarlet

bright red

#### Matthew 27:29

a crown of thorns

"a crown from thorny branches" or "a crown from branches with thorns on them"

a staff in his right hand

They gave Jesus a stick to hold to represent a scepter that a king holds. They did this to mock Jesus.

Hail, King of the Jews

They were saying this to mock Jesus. They were calling Jesus "King of the Jews," but they did not really believe he was a king. And yet what they were saying was true.

Hail

"We honor you" or "May you live a long time"

#### Matthew 27:30

They spat on him

The past tense of the verb "spit" can be either "spit" or "spat."

#### Matthew 27:31

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 27:32

As they came out

This means Jesus and the soldiers came out of the city. Alternate translation: "As they came out of Jerusalem"

they found a man

"the soldiers saw a man"

whom they forced to go with them so that he might carry his cross

"whom the soldiers forced to go with them so that he could carry Jesus's cross"

#### Matthew 27:33

place called Golgotha

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "place that people called Golgotha"

#### Matthew 27:34

him wine to drink mixed with gall

Wine alone might have reduced the pain of crucifixion. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "him wine, which they had mixed with gall"

gall

Gall is the bitter yellow liquid that bodies use in digestion. The people were mocking Jesus by mixing it with the wine and so making the wine undrinkable.

#### Matthew 27:35

his garments

These were the clothes Jesus had been wearing.

#### Matthew 27:36

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 27:37

the charge against him

"a written explanation of why he was being crucified"

#### Matthew 27:38

Two robbers were crucified with him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The soldiers crucified two robbers with Jesus"

#### Matthew 27:39

shaking their heads

They did this to make fun of Jesus.

#### Matthew 27:40

If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross

They did not believe that Jesus is the Son of God, so they wanted him to prove it if it was true. Alternate translation: "If you are the Son of God, prove it by coming down from the cross"

the Son of God

This is an important title for the Christ that describes his relationship to God.

#### Matthew 27:41

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 27:42

He saved others, but he cannot save himself

Possible meanings are 1) the Jewish leaders do not believe that Jesus saved others or that he can save himself, or 2) they believe he did save others but are laughing at him because now he cannot save himself.

He is the King of Israel

The leaders are mocking Jesus. They call him "King of Israel," but they do not really believe he is king. Alternate translation: "He says that he is the King of Israel"

#### Matthew 27:43

Connecting Statement:

The Jewish leaders continue mocking Jesus.

For he even said, 'I am the Son of God.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "For Jesus even said that he is the Son of God."

Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

#### Matthew 27:44

the robbers who were crucified with him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the robbers that the soldiers crucified with Jesus"

#### Matthew 27:45

Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

from the sixth hour ... until the ninth hour

"from about noon ... for three hours" or "from about twelve o'clock midday ... until about three o'clock in the afternoon"

darkness came over the whole land

The word "darkness" is an abstract noun. Alternate translation: "it became dark over the whole land"

#### Matthew 27:46

Jesus cried

"Jesus called out" or "Jesus shouted"

Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani

These words are what Jesus cried out in his own language. Translators usually leave these words as they are.

#### Matthew 27:47

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.



## Matthew 27:48

one of them

Possible meanings are 1) one of the soldiers or 2) one of those who stood by and watched.

sponge

This is a sea animal that is harvested and used to take up and hold liquids. These liquids can later be pushed out.

gave it to him

"gave it to Jesus"

## Matthew 27:49

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Matthew 27:50

gave up his spirit

Here "spirit" refers to that which gives life to a person. This phrase is a way of saying that Jesus died. Alternate translation: "he died, giving his spirit over to God" or "he breathed his last breath"

## Matthew 27:51

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of the events that happened when Jesus died.

Behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

the curtain of the temple was split in two

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the curtain of the temple tore in two" or "God caused the curtain of the temple to tear in two"

## Matthew 27:52

The tombs were opened, and the bodies of the holy people who had fallen asleep were raised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God opened the tombs and made many godly people who had died become alive again"

the bodies of the holy people who had fallen asleep were raised

Here to raise is an idiom for causing someone who has died to become alive again. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "God put life back into the dead bodies of many godly people who had fallen asleep"

fallen asleep

This is a polite way of referring to dying. Alternate translation: "died"

## Matthew 27:53

They came out ... appeared to many

The order of the events that Matthew describes (beginning with the words "The tombs were opened" in verse 52) is unclear. After the earthquake when Jesus died and the tombs were opened 1) the holy people came back to life, and then, after Jesus came back to life, the holy people entered Jerusalem, where many people saw them, or 2) Jesus came back to life, and then the holy ones came back to life and entered the city, where many people saw them.

## Matthew 27:54

Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

those who were watching Jesus

"those who were guarding Jesus." This refers to the other soldiers who were guarding Jesus with the centurion. Alternate translation: "the other soldiers with him who were guarding Jesus"

Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

#### Matthew 27:55

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Matthew 27:56

the mother of the sons of Zebedee

"the mother of James and John" or "the wife of Zebedee"

#### Matthew 27:57

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus's burial.

Arimathea

This is the name of a city in Israel.

#### Matthew 27:58

Then Pilate ordered it to be given to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then Pilate ordered the soldiers to give the body of Jesus to Joseph"

#### Matthew 27:59

linen

a fine, costly cloth

#### Matthew 27:60

that he had cut into the rock

It is implied that Joseph had workers who cut the tomb into the rock.

Then he rolled a large stone

Most likely Joseph had other people there to help him roll the stone.

#### Matthew 27:61

opposite the tomb

"across from the tomb"

#### Matthew 27:62

the Preparation

This is the day that people got everything ready for the Sabbath.

were gathered together with Pilate

"met with Pilate"

#### Matthew 27:63

when that deceiver was alive

"when Jesus, the deceiver, was alive"

he said, 'After three days will I rise again.'

This has a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "he said that after three days he will rise again." or "he said that after three day he would rise again."

#### Matthew 27:64

command that the tomb be made secure

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "command your soldiers to guard the tomb"

the third day

"day number three." This refers to the day after two nights have passed.

his disciples may come and steal him

"his disciples may come and steal his body"

his disciples may ... say to the people, 'He has risen from the dead,' and

This has a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "his disciples may ... tell the people that he has risen from the dead, and"

from the dead

From among all those who have died. The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. To rise from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

and the last deception will be worse than the first

The understood information can be stated clearly.  
Alternate translation: "and if they deceive people by saying that, it will be worse than the way he deceived people before when he said that he was the Christ"

Matthew 27:65

a guard

This consisted of four to sixteen Roman soldiers.

Matthew 27:66

sealing the stone

Possible meanings are 1) they put a cord around the stone and attached it with seals to the rock wall on either side of the entrance to the tomb or 2) they put seals between the stone and the wall.

placing the guard

"telling the soldiers to stand where they could keep people from tampering with the tomb"

---

28 <sup>1</sup>Now after the Sabbath, as it began to dawn toward the first day of the week, Mary Magdalene and the other Mary came to see the tomb.<sup>2</sup>Behold, there was a great earthquake, for an angel of the Lord descended from heaven, came and rolled away the stone, and sat on it.

<sup>3</sup>His appearance was like lightning, and his clothing as white as snow.<sup>4</sup>The guards shook with fear and became like dead men.

<sup>5</sup>The angel addressed the women and said to them, "Do not be afraid, for I know that you seek Jesus, who has been crucified.<sup>6</sup>He is not here, but is risen, just as he said. Come see the place where the Lord was lying.<sup>7</sup>Go quickly and tell his disciples, 'He has risen from the dead. See, he is going ahead of you to Galilee. There you will see him.' See, I have told you."

<sup>8</sup>The women quickly left the tomb with fear and great joy, and ran to tell his disciples.<sup>9</sup>Behold, Jesus met them and said, "Greetings!" The women came, took hold of his feet and worshiped him.<sup>10</sup>Then Jesus said to them, "Do not be afraid. Go tell my brothers to leave for Galilee. There they will see me."

<sup>11</sup>Now while the women were going, behold, some of the guards went into the city and told the chief priests all the things that had happened.<sup>12</sup>When the priests had met with the elders and discussed the matter with them, they gave a large amount of money to the soldiers<sup>13</sup> and told them, "Say to others, 'The disciples of Jesus came by night and stole his body while we were sleeping.'"

<sup>14</sup>If this report reaches the governor, we will persuade him and take any worries away from you."<sup>15</sup>So the soldiers took the money and did as they had been instructed. This report spread widely among the Jews and continues even today.

<sup>16</sup>But the eleven disciples went to Galilee, to the mountain to which Jesus had directed them.<sup>17</sup>When they saw him, they worshiped him, but some doubted.

<sup>18</sup>Jesus came to them and spoke to them and said, "All authority has been given to me in heaven and on earth.<sup>19</sup>Go therefore and make disciples of all the nations. Baptize them into the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.

<sup>20</sup>Teach them to obey all the things that I have commanded you. See, I am with you always, even to the end of the age."

---

## Matthew 28 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried ([Matthew 28:1](#)) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

#### "Make disciples"

The last two verses ([Matthew 28:19-20](#)) are commonly known as "The Great Commission" because they contain a very important command given to all Christians. Christians are to "make disciples" by going to people, sharing the gospel with them and training them to live as Christians.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### An angel of the Lord

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about angels in white clothing with the women at Jesus's tomb. Two of the authors called them men, but that is only because the angels looked human. Two of the authors wrote about

two angels, but the other two authors wrote about only one of them. It is best to translate each of these passages as it appears in the ULB without trying to make the passages all say exactly the same thing. (See: [Matthew 28:1-2](#) and [Mark 16:5](#) and [Luke 24:4](#) and [John 20:12](#))

## Links:

- [Matthew 28:1 Notes](#)

Matthew 28:1

was like lightning

Connecting Statement:

This is a simile that emphasizes how bright in appearance the angel was. Alternate translation: "was bright like lightning"

This begins the account of the resurrection of Jesus from the dead.

his clothing as white as snow

Now after the Sabbath, as it began to dawn toward the first day of the week

This is a simile that emphasizes how bright and white the angel's clothes were. The verb "was" from the previous phrase can be repeated. Alternate translation: "his clothing was very white, like snow"

"After the Sabbath, as the sun began to come up Sunday morning"

Now

Matthew 28:4

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

became like dead men

the other Mary

This is a simile that means the soldiers fell down and did not move. Alternate translation: "fell to the ground and lay there like dead men"

"the other woman named Mary." This is Mary the mother of James and Joseph (Matthew 27:56).

Matthew 28:5

Matthew 28:2

the women

Behold

"Mary Magdalene and the other woman named Mary"

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows. Your language may have a way of doing this.

who has been crucified

there was a great earthquake, for an angel of the Lord descended ... and rolled away the stone

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom the people and the soldiers crucified" or "whom they crucified"

Possible meanings are 1) the earthquake happened because the angel came down and rolled away the stone or 2) all these events happened at the same time .

Matthew 28:6

earthquake

was lying

a sudden and violent shaking of the ground

This means that Jesus's body was lying on the flat surface inside the tomb, not that Jesus was saying things that were not true.

Matthew 28:3

His appearance

"The angel's appearance"

#### Matthew 28:7

tell his disciples, 'He has risen from the dead. See, he is going ahead of you to Galilee. There you will see him.'

This is a quotation within a quotation. It can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "tell his disciples that he has risen from the dead and that Jesus has gone ahead of you to Galilee, where you will see him."

He has risen

"He has come back to life"

from the dead

From among all those who have died. The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. To rise from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

going ahead of you ... you will see him

Here "you" is plural. It refers to the women and the disciples.

I have told you

Here "you" is plural and refers to the women.

#### Matthew 28:8

The women

"Mary Magdalene and the other woman named Mary"

#### Matthew 28:9

Behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows. Your language may have a way of doing this.

Greetings

This is an ordinary greeting, much like "Hello" in English.

took hold of his feet

"got down on their knees and held onto his feet"

#### Matthew 28:10

my brothers

This refers to Jesus's disciples.

#### Matthew 28:11

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of the reaction of the Jewish religious leaders when they heard of Jesus's resurrection.

Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story.

the women

Here this refers to Mary Magdalene and the other Mary.

behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of doing this.

#### Matthew 28:12

discussed the matter with them

"decided on a plan among themselves." The priests and elders decided to give the money to the soldiers.

#### Matthew 28:13

Say to others, 'The disciples of Jesus came ... while we were sleeping.'

If your language does not allow quotations within quotations you may translate this as a single quote. Alternate translation: "Tell others that Jesus' disciples came ... while you were sleeping."

#### Matthew 28:14

If this report reaches the governor

"If the governor hears that you were asleep when Jesus's disciples took his body"

the governor

"Pilate" (Matthew 27:2)

we will persuade him and take any worries away from you

"do not worry. We will talk to him so that he does not punish you."

Matthew 28:15

did as they had been instructed

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "did what the priests had told them to do"

This report spread widely among the Jews and continues even today

"Many Jews heard this report and continue to tell others about it even today"

even today

This refers to the time Matthew wrote the book.

Matthew 28:16

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus meeting with his disciples after his resurrection.

Matthew 28:17

they worshiped him, but some doubted

Possible meanings are 1) they all worshiped Jesus even though some of them doubted, or 2) some of them worshiped Jesus, but others did not worship him because they doubted.

but some doubted

It can be stated explicitly what the disciples doubted. Alternate translation: "some doubted that he was really Jesus and that he had become alive again"

Matthew 28:18

All authority has been given to me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "My Father has given me all authority"

in heaven and on earth

Here "heaven" and "earth" are used together to mean everyone and everything in heaven and earth. The words "in heaven and on earth" can be translated as "over everyone and everything in heaven and on earth."

Matthew 28:19

of all the nations

Here "nations" refers to the people, and the saying is probably a hyperbole. Alternate translation: "of the people in every nation"

into the name

Here "name" refers to authority. Alternate translation: "by the authority"

Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus.

Matthew 28:20

See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

even to the end of the age

"until the end of this age" or "until the end of the world"

---

# Introduction to the Gospel of Mark

## Part 1: General Introduction

### Outline of the Book of Mark

#### 1. Introduction (1:1–13)

2. The ministry of Jesus in Galilee
  - Early ministry (1:14–3:6)
  - Jesus becomes more popular among the people (3:7–5:43)
  - Moving away from Galilee and then returning (6:1–8:26)
3. Progress toward Jerusalem, repeated times when Jesus predicts his own death, the disciples misunderstand, and Jesus teaches them how difficult it will be to follow him (8:27–10:52)
4. Last days of ministry and preparation for final conflict in Jerusalem (11:1–13:37)
5. The death of Christ and the empty tomb (14:1–16:8)

## What is the Book of Mark about?

The Gospel of Mark is one of four books in the New Testament that describe some of the life of Jesus Christ. The authors of the gospels wrote about different aspects of who Jesus was and what he did. Mark wrote much about how Jesus suffered and died on the cross. He did this to encourage his readers who were being persecuted. Mark also explained Jewish customs and some Aramaic words. This may indicate that Mark expected most of his first readers to be Gentiles.

## How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, "The Gospel of Mark" or "The Gospel according to Mark." They may also choose a title that may be clearer, such as "The Good News about Jesus that Mark wrote."

## Who wrote the Book of Mark?

The book does not give the name of the author. However, since early Christian times, most Christians have thought that the author was Mark. Mark was also known as John Mark. He was a close friend of Peter. Mark may not have witnessed what Jesus said and did. But many scholars think that Mark wrote in his gospel what Peter told him about Jesus.

## Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

### What were Jesus's teaching methods?

The people regarded Jesus as a rabbi. A rabbi is a teacher of God's law. Jesus taught in ways similar to those of other religious teachers in Israel. He had students who followed him wherever he went. These students were called disciples. He often told parables. Parables are stories that teach moral lessons. (See: lawofmoses and disciple and parable)

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### What are the Synoptic Gospels?

The Gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke are called the Synoptic Gospels because they have many similar passages. The word "synoptic" means to "see together."

The texts are considered "parallel" when they are the same or almost the same among two or three gospels. When translating parallel passages, translators should use the same wording and make them as similar as possible.

### Why does Jesus refer to himself as the "Son of Man"?

In the gospels, Jesus calls himself the "Son of Man." It is a reference to Daniel 7:13-14. In this passage there is a person described as a "son of man." That means the person was someone who looked like a human being. God gave authority to the son of man to rule over the nations forever. And all the people will worship him forever.



Jews of Jesus's time did not use "Son of Man" as a title for anyone. Therefore, Jesus used it for himself to help them understand who he truly was. (See: sonofman)

Translating the title "Son of Man" can be difficult in many languages. Readers may misunderstand a literal translation. Translators can consider alternatives, such as "The Human One." It may also be helpful to include a footnote to explain the title.

Why does Mark frequently use terms indicating short periods of time?

The Gospel of Mark uses the word "immediately" forty-two times. Mark does this to make the events more exciting and vivid. It moves the reader quickly from one event to the next.

What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Mark?

The following verses are found in older versions of the Bible but are not included in most modern versions. Translators are advised not to include these verses. However, if in the translators' region there are older versions of the Bible that include one or more of these verses, the translators can include them. If they are included, they should be put inside square brackets ([ ]) to indicate that they were probably not original to Mark's Gospel.

- "If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." (7:16)
- "where their worm never dies and the fire is not put out" (9:44)
- "where their worm never dies and the fire is not put out" (9:46)
- "And the scripture was fulfilled that says, 'He was counted with the lawless ones'" (15:28)

The following passage is not found in the earliest manuscripts. Most Bibles include this passage, but modern Bibles put it in brackets ([ ]) or indicate in some way that this passage may not have been original to Mark's Gospel. Translators are advised to do something similar to what is done in the modern versions of the Bible.

- "Early on the first day of the week, after he arose, he appeared first to Mary Magdalene, from whom he had cast out seven demons. She went and told those who were with him, while they were mourning and weeping. They heard that he was alive and that he had been seen by her, but they did not believe. After these things he appeared in a different form to two of them, as they were walking out into the country. They went and told the rest of the disciples, but they did not believe them. Jesus later appeared to the eleven as they were reclining at the table, and he rebuked them for their unbelief and hardness of heart, because they did not believe those who saw him after he rose from the dead. He said to them, 'Go into all the world, and preach the gospel to the entire creation. He who believes and is baptized will be saved, and he who does not believe will be condemned. These signs will go with those who believe: In my name they will cast out demons. They will speak in new languages. They will pick up snakes with their hands, and if they drink anything deadly, it will not hurt them. They will lay hands on the sick, and they will get well.' After the Lord had spoken to them, he was taken up into heaven and sat down at the right hand of God. The disciples left and preached everywhere, while the Lord worked with them and confirmed the word by the signs that went with them." (16:9-20)

---

## Mark

<sup>1</sup> This is the beginning of the gospel of Jesus Christ, the Son of God.

<sup>2</sup> As it is written in Isaiah the prophet,

"Look, I am sending my messenger before your face,  
the one who will prepare your way.

<sup>3</sup> The voice of one crying out in the wilderness,

'Make ready the way of the Lord;  
make his paths straight.'"

<sup>4</sup> John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching a baptism of repentance for the forgiveness of sins.<sup>5</sup> The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. They were baptized by him in the Jordan

River, confessing their sins.<sup>6</sup> John wore a coat of camel's hair and a leather belt around his waist, and he ate locusts and wild honey.

<sup>7</sup>He was preaching, saying, "One will come after me who is more powerful than I; the strap of his sandals I am not worthy to stoop down and untie.<sup>8</sup> I baptized you with water, but he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit."

<sup>9</sup>It happened in those days that Jesus came from Nazareth in Galilee, and he was baptized by John in the Jordan River.<sup>10</sup> As Jesus came up out of the water, he saw the heavens split open and the Spirit coming down on him like a dove.<sup>11</sup> A voice came out of the heavens: "You are my beloved Son. I am very pleased with you."

<sup>12</sup>Then the Spirit compelled him to go out into the wilderness.<sup>13</sup> He was in the wilderness forty days being tempted by Satan. He was with the wild animals, and the angels served him.

<sup>14</sup>Now after John was arrested, Jesus came into Galilee proclaiming the gospel of God.<sup>15</sup> He said, "The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is near. Repent and believe the gospel."

<sup>16</sup>When he was walking beside the Sea of Galilee, he saw Simon and Andrew the brother of Simon casting a net in the sea, for they were fishermen.<sup>17</sup> Jesus said to them, "Come, follow me, and I will make you fishers of men."<sup>18</sup> Then immediately they left the nets and followed him.

<sup>19</sup>As Jesus was walking on a little farther, he saw James son of Zebedee and John his brother; they were in the boat mending the nets.<sup>20</sup> He called them, and they left their father Zebedee in the boat with the hired servants, and they followed him.

<sup>21</sup>Then they came into Capernaum, and on the Sabbath, Jesus went into the synagogue and taught.<sup>22</sup> They were astonished at his teaching, for he was teaching them as someone who has authority and not as the scribes.

<sup>23</sup>Just then a man in their synagogue who had an unclean spirit cried out,<sup>24</sup> saying, "What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth? Have you come to destroy us? I know who you are. You are the Holy One of God!"

<sup>25</sup>Jesus rebuked the demon and said, "Be quiet and come out of him!"<sup>26</sup> The unclean spirit threw him into convulsions and went out from him while crying out with a loud voice.

<sup>27</sup>All the people were amazed, so they asked each other, "What is this? A new teaching with authority! He even commands the unclean spirits and they obey him!"<sup>28</sup> The news about him went out everywhere into the whole region of Galilee.

<sup>29</sup>After coming out of the synagogue, they came into the house of Simon and Andrew, along with James and John.

<sup>30</sup>Now Simon's mother-in-law was lying sick with a fever, and they told Jesus about her.<sup>31</sup> So he came, took her by the hand, and raised her up; the fever left her, and she started serving them.

<sup>32</sup>That evening after the sun had set, they brought to him all who were sick or possessed by demons.<sup>33</sup> The whole city gathered together at the door.<sup>34</sup> He healed many who were sick with various diseases and cast out many demons, but he did not allow the demons to speak because they knew him.

<sup>35</sup>He got up very early, while it was still dark; he left and went out into a solitary place and there he prayed.

<sup>36</sup>Simon and those who were with him searched for him.<sup>37</sup> They found him and they said to him, "Everyone is looking for you."

<sup>38</sup>He said, "Let us go elsewhere, out into the surrounding towns, so that I may preach there also. That is why I came out here."<sup>39</sup> He went throughout all of Galilee, preaching in their synagogues and casting out demons.

<sup>40</sup>A leper came to him. He was begging him; he knelt down and said to him, "If you are willing, you can make me clean."

<sup>41</sup>Moved with compassion, Jesus reached out his hand and touched him, saying to him, "I am willing. Be clean."<sup>42</sup> Immediately the leprosy left him, and he was made clean.

<sup>43</sup>Jesus strictly warned him and sent him away.<sup>44</sup> He said to him, "Be sure to say nothing to anyone, but go, show yourself to the priest, and offer for your cleansing what Moses commanded, as a testimony to them."

<sup>45</sup>But he went out and began to declare it freely and spread the word, so much so that Jesus could no longer enter a town openly but he stayed out in remote places. Yet people were still coming to him from everywhere.

# Mark 1 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 1:2-3, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

## Special concepts in this chapter

"You can make me clean"

Leprosy was a disease of the skin that made a person unclean and unable to properly worship God. Jesus is capable of making people physically "clean" or healthy as well as spiritually "clean" or right with God. (See: clean)

## Prophecy

Mark begins this book about Jesus Christ with the words that the prophet Isaiah wrote long before that time. Then he tells how John the Baptist and Jesus Christ fulfilled that prophecy.

## Repentance

Repent means stop sinning. John the Baptist taught people to repent so that God would forgive their sins. Jesus taught people to repent and to believe the good news about the kingdom of God.

## The work of Jesus

Jesus went around preaching the good news of God, casting demons out of people, and healing people who were sick.

## Links:

- [Mark 1:1 Notes](#)
- [Mark intro](#)

### Mark 1:1

#### General Information:

The author of this book is Mark, also called John Mark. He was the son of one of the women named Mary mentioned in the four Gospels. He was also the nephew of Barnabas. This whole book is about Jesus Christ.

#### Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

### Mark 1:2

#### General Information:

Mark begins this book with the words that the prophet Isaiah wrote long ago about a messenger who would

come and tell the people to get ready for the Lord's coming. Verses 4-15 show how this prophecy was fulfilled by John the Baptist and Jesus Christ.

before your face

This is an idiom that means "ahead of you."

your face ... your way

Here the word "your" refers to the Lord and is singular.

the one

This refers to the messenger.

will prepare your way

Doing this represents preparing the people for the Lord's arrival. Alternate translation: "will prepare the people for your arrival"

Mark 1:3

Connecting Statement:

This verse tells how the messenger in verse 2 would prepare the Lord's way.

The voice of one crying out in the wilderness

This phrase can be expressed as a sentence. Alternate translation: "The voice of one crying out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone crying out in the wilderness"

Make ready the way of the Lord ... make his paths straight

These two phrases mean the same thing.

Make ready the way of the Lord

"Get the road ready for the Lord." Doing this represents being prepared to hear the Lord's message when he comes. Alternate translation: "Prepare yourselves for the Lord to come" or "Be ready for the Lord when he comes"

Mark 1:4

General Information

The events in Mark 1:4-15 are a fulfillment of what Isaiah had prophesied. John was the "messenger" of verse 2 and "the one calling out in the wilderness" of verse 3.

John came

Translators can make it explicit that John's coming was a fulfillment of Isaiah's prophecy. Alternate translation: "So John came" or "In fulfillment of that prophecy, John came"

Mark 1:5

The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem

The words "The whole country" are a metonym for the people who live in the country and a generalization that refers to a great number of people, not to every

single person. Alternate translation: "Many people from Judea and Jerusalem"

They were baptized by him in the Jordan River, confessing their sins

They did these things at the same time. The people were baptized because they repented of their sins. Alternate translation: "When they repented of their sins, John baptized them in the Jordan River"

Mark 1:6

he ate locusts and wild honey

Locusts and wild honey were foods that John could find in the wilderness. Wild honey is honey that wild bees make.

Mark 1:7

He was preaching

"John was preaching"

the strap of his sandals I am not worthy to stoop down and untie

John was comparing himself to a servant to show how great the one to come would be. Alternate translation: "I am not even worthy to do the lowly task of removing his shoes"

the strap of his sandals

People often wore sandals that were made of leather and were tied to their feet with leather straps.

stoop down

"bend down"

Mark 1:8

but he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit

John was contrasting how he was purifying people with water with how the one to come would purify people with the Holy Spirit. To baptize with the Holy Spirit is a metaphor meaning that that person would send the Holy Spirit to purify people. The Holy Spirit would then live in them and empower them to stop sinning and to obey God. If possible, use the same word for "baptize" here as you used for John's baptism.

Mark 1:9

It happened in those days

This marks the beginning of a new event in the story.

he was baptized by John

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "John baptized him"

Mark 1:10

the Spirit coming down on him like a dove

Possible meanings are 1) this is a simile, and the Spirit descended upon Jesus as a bird descends from the sky toward the ground or 2) the Spirit literally looked like a dove as he descended upon Jesus.

Mark 1:11

A voice came out of the heavens

This represents God speaking. Sometimes people avoid referring directly to God because they respect him. Alternate translation: "God spoke from the heavens"

beloved Son

This is an important title for Jesus. The Father calls Jesus his "beloved Son" because of his eternal love for him.

Mark 1:12

Connecting Statement:

After Jesus's baptism, he is in the wilderness for 40 days and then goes to Galilee to teach and call his disciples.

compelled him to go out

"forced Jesus to go out"

Mark 1:13

He was in the wilderness

"He stayed in the wilderness"

forty days

"40 days"

He was with

"He was among"

Mark 1:14

after John was arrested

"after John was placed in prison." Mark is referring to when King Herod had John arrested. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "after King Herod had John arrested" or "after soldiers arrested John"

proclaiming the gospel

"telling many people about the good news"

Mark 1:15

The time is fulfilled

"It is now time"

the kingdom of God is near

Possible meanings are 1) God was beginning to rule. Alternate translation: "God is beginning to rule over all" or 2) God would soon rule over all. Alternate translation: "God is about to rule over all"

Mark 1:16

he saw Simon and Andrew

"Jesus saw Simon and Andrew"

casting a net in the sea

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "throwing a net into the water to catch fish"

Mark 1:17

Come, follow me

"Follow me" or "Come with me"

I will make you fishers of men

This metaphor means Simon and Andrew will teach people God's true message, so others will also follow Jesus. Alternate translation: "I will teach you to gather men to me like you gather fish"

men

human beings, persons, people, not specifically males

Mark 1:18

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 1:19

in the boat

This was probably James and John's boat.

mending the nets

"repairing the nets"

Mark 1:20

called them

It may be helpful to state clearly why Jesus called to James and John. Alternate translation: "called them to come with him"

hired servants

"servants who worked for them"

they followed him

James and John went with Jesus.

Mark 1:21

Connecting Statement:

Jesus teaches in the synagogue of the town of Capernaum on the Sabbath. By sending a demon out of a man he amazes the people in all the nearby area around Galilee.

came into Capernaum

"arrived at Capernaum"

Mark 1:22

for he was teaching them as someone who has authority and not as the scribes

The idea of "teach" can be stated clearly when talking about "someone who has authority" and "the scribes."

Alternate translation: "for he was teaching them as someone who has authority teaches and not as the scribes teach"

Mark 1:23

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 1:24

What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth?

The demon asked this rhetorical question meaning that there was no reason for Jesus to interfere with him or any other demon. Alternate translation: "Jesus of Nazareth, leave us alone! There is no reason for you to interfere with us."

we ... us

These pronouns are exclusive. They refer to the demon inside the man and all other demons, but do not include the listener.

Have you come to destroy us?

The demon asked this rhetorical question to urge Jesus not to harm him or any other demon. Alternate translation: "Do not destroy us!"

Mark 1:25

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 1:26

threw him down

Here the word "him" refers to the demon-possessed man.

and went out from him while crying out with a loud voice

"and cried out with a loud voice as it went out from him"

Mark 1:27

so they asked each other, "What is this? ... they obey him!"

The people used a question to show how amazed they were. It can be expressed as an exclamation. Alternate

translation: "so they said to each other, 'This is amazing! ... they obey him!'"

A new teaching with authority!

The people used this exclamation to express their amazement at Jesus' teaching. It can also be expressed as a full sentence. Alternate translation: "He gives a new teaching, and he speaks with authority!" or "He teaches something new, and he has authority!"

He even commands the unclean spirits and they obey him!

This was evidence of Jesus' authority.

Mark 1:28

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 1:29

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 1:30

Now Simon's mother-in-law was lying sick with a fever

The word "Now" marks a pause in the story. In this sentence, Mark introduces Simon's mother-in-law to the story and gives background information about her.

Mark 1:31

raised her up

"caused her to stand" or "made her able to get out of bed"

the fever left her

You may want to make explicit who healed her.  
Alternate translation: "Jesus healed her of the fever"

she started serving them

You may want to make explicit that she served food.  
Alternate translation: "she provided them with food and drinks"

Mark 1:32

they brought to him

"the people brought to Jesus"

all who were sick or possessed by demons

The word "all" is an exaggeration to emphasize the great number of people who came. Alternate translation: "many who were sick or possessed by demons"

Mark 1:33

The whole city gathered together at the door

The word "city" is a metonym for the people who lived in the city. Here the word "whole" is probably a generalization to emphasize that most people from the city gathered. Alternate translation: "Many people from that city gathered outside the door"

Mark 1:34

He healed

"Jesus healed"

Mark 1:35

Connecting Statement:

Jesus takes time to pray in the midst of his time of healing people. He then goes to towns throughout Galilee to preach, heal, and cast out demons.

He got up

"Jesus got up"

a solitary place

"a place where he could be alone"

Mark 1:36

Simon and those who were with him

Here "him" refers to Simon. Also, those with him include Andrew, James, John, and possibly other people.

#### Mark 1:37

Everyone is looking for you

The word "Everyone" is an exaggeration to emphasize that many people were looking for Jesus. Alternate translation: "Many people are looking for you"

#### Mark 1:38

General Information:

Here the words "he" and "I" refer to Jesus.

Let us go elsewhere

"We need to go to some other place." Here Jesus uses the word "us" to refer to himself, along with Simon, Andrew, James, and John.

#### Mark 1:39

He went throughout all of Galilee

The words "throughout all" are an exaggeration used to emphasize that Jesus went to many locations during his ministry. Alternate translation: "He went to many places in Galilee"

#### Mark 1:40

A leper came to him. He was begging him; he knelt down and said to him

"A leper came to Jesus. He knelt down and was begging Jesus and said"

If you are willing, you can make me clean

In the first phrase, the words "to make me clean" are understood because of the second phrase. Alternate translation: "If you are willing to make me clean, then you can make me clean"

are willing

"want" or "desire"

you can make me clean

In biblical times, a person who had any of certain skin diseases was considered unclean until his skin had healed enough that he was no longer contagious. Alternate translation: "you can heal me"

#### Mark 1:41

Moved with compassion, Jesus

Here the word "moved" is an idiom meaning to feel emotion about another's need. Alternate translation: "Having compassion for him, Jesus" or "Jesus felt compassion for the man, so he"

I am willing

It may be helpful to state what Jesus is willing to do. Alternate translation: "I am willing to make you clean"

#### Mark 1:42

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 1:43

General Information:

The word "him" used here refers to the leper whom Jesus healed.

#### Mark 1:44

Be sure to say nothing to anyone

"Be sure to not say anything to anyone"

show yourself to the priest

Jesus told the man to show himself to the priest so that the priest could look at his skin to see if his leprosy was really gone. The law of Moses required people to present themselves to the priest if they had been unclean but were no longer unclean.

show yourself

The word "yourself" here represents the skin of the leper. Alternate translation: "show your skin"

a testimony to them

It is best to use the pronoun "them," if possible, in your language. Possible meanings are 1) "a testimony to the priests" or 2) "a testimony to the people."



Mark 1:45

But he went out

The word "he" refers to the man Jesus healed.

began to declare it freely

Here "declare it freely" is a metaphor for telling people in many places about what had happened. Alternate translation: "began to tell people in many places about what Jesus had done"

so much so that

The man spread the news so much that

that Jesus could no longer enter a town openly

This was the result of the man spreading the news so much. Here "openly" is a metaphor for "publicly." Jesus could not enter the towns because many people would crowd around him. Alternate translation: "that Jesus could no longer enter a town publicly" or "that Jesus could no longer enter the towns in a way that many people would see him"

remote places

"lonely places" or "places where no one lived"

from everywhere

The word "everywhere" is a hyperbole used to emphasize how very many places the people came from. Alternate translation: "from all over the region"

2 <sup>1</sup>When Jesus came back to Capernaum after a few days, it was heard that he was at home.<sup>2</sup>So many gathered there that there was no more space, not even at the door, and he spoke the word to them.

<sup>3</sup>Then some men came to him who were bringing a paralyzed man; four people were carrying him.<sup>4</sup>When they could not get near him because of the crowd, they removed the roof that was above Jesus, and after they made an opening, they lowered the mat the paralyzed man was lying on.

<sup>5</sup>Seeing their faith, Jesus said to the paralyzed man, "Son, your sins are forgiven."

<sup>6</sup>Now some of the scribes were sitting there, and they reasoned in their hearts,<sup>7</sup>"How can this man speak this way? He blasphemes! Who can forgive sins but God alone?"

<sup>8</sup>Immediately Jesus knew in his spirit what they were thinking within themselves. He said to them, "Why are you thinking this in your hearts?<sup>9</sup>Which is easier, to say to the paralyzed man, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up, take up your mat and walk'?"

<sup>10</sup>But in order that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on earth to forgive sins," he said to the paralytic,<sup>11</sup>"I say to you, get up, take up your mat, and go to your house."

<sup>12</sup>He got up and immediately took up the mat, and went out of the house in front of everyone, so that they were all amazed and they gave glory to God, and they said, "We never saw anything like this."

<sup>13</sup>He went out again by the lake, and all the crowd came to him, and he taught them.<sup>14</sup>As he passed by, he saw Levi son of Alphaeus sitting at the tax collector's tent and he said to him, "Follow me." He got up and followed him.

<sup>15</sup>Jesus was having a meal in Levi's house and many tax collectors and sinners were dining with him and his disciples, for there were many and they followed him.<sup>16</sup>When the scribes, who were Pharisees, saw that Jesus was eating with sinners and tax collectors, they said to his disciples, "Why does he eat with tax collectors and sinners?"

<sup>17</sup>When Jesus heard this, he said to them, "People who are strong in body do not need a physician; only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people, but sinners."

<sup>18</sup>Now John's disciples and the Pharisees were fasting. Some people came and said to him, "Why do John's disciples and the disciples of the Pharisees fast, but your disciples do not fast?"

<sup>19</sup>Jesus said to them, "Can the wedding attendants fast while the bridegroom is still with them? As long as they have the bridegroom with them, they cannot fast.

<sup>20</sup>But the days will come when the bridegroom will be taken away from them, and in those days, they will fast.<sup>21</sup>No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old garment. Otherwise the patch tears away from it, the new from the old, and there is a worse tear.

<sup>22</sup>No one puts new wine into old wineskins. Otherwise the wine will burst the skins and both the wine and the wineskins are lost. Instead, new wine is put into fresh wineskins."

<sup>23</sup>On the Sabbath day Jesus went through some grainfields, and his disciples began picking heads of grain as they made their way.<sup>24</sup>The Pharisees said to him, "Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful on the Sabbath day?"

<sup>25</sup>He said to them, "Have you never read what David did when he was in need and hungry—he and the men who were with him—<sup>26</sup>how he went into the house of God when Abiathar was high priest, and ate the bread of the presence, which is unlawful for anyone to eat except the priests, and he even gave some to those who were with him?"

<sup>27</sup>Jesus said, "The Sabbath was made for mankind, not mankind for the Sabbath.<sup>28</sup>Therefore, the Son of Man is Lord, even of the Sabbath."

# Mark 2 General Notes

## Special concepts in this chapter

### "Sinners"

When the people of Jesus's time spoke of "sinners," they were talking about people who did not obey the law of Moses and instead committed sins like stealing or sexual sins. When Jesus said that he came to call "sinners," he meant that only people who believe that they are sinners can be his followers. This is true even if they are not what most people think of as "sinners." (See: sin)

### Fasting and Feasting

People would fast, or not eat food for a long time, when they were sad or were showing God that they were sorry for their sins. When they were happy, like during weddings, they would have feasts, or meals where they would eat much food. (See: fast)

## Important figures of speech in this chapter

### Rhetorical Questions

The Jewish leaders used rhetorical questions to show that they were angry because of what Jesus said and did and that they did not believe that he was God's Son

## Links:

- [Mark 2:1 Notes](#)

### Mark 2:1

there was no more space

### Connecting Statement:

This refers to there being no space inside the house.  
Alternate translation: "there was no more room for them inside"

After preaching and healing people throughout Galilee, Jesus returns to Capernaum, where he heals and forgives the sin of a paralyzed man.

he spoke the word to them

it was heard that he was at home

"Jesus spoke his message to them"

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people there heard that he was staying at his home"

### Mark 2:3

four people were carrying him

### Mark 2:2

"four of them were carrying him." It is likely that there were more than four people within the group that brought the man to Jesus.

So many gathered there

The word "there" refers to the house that Jesus stayed at in Capernaum. Alternate translation: "So many people gathered there" or "So many people came to the house"

were bringing a paralyzed man

"were bringing a man who was unable to walk or use his arms"

#### Mark 2:4

could not get near him

"could not get close to where Jesus was"

they removed the roof that was above Jesus, and after they made an opening, they lowered the mat the paralyzed man was lying on

Houses where Jesus lived had flat roofs made of clay and covered with tiles. Alternate translation: "they removed the tiles from the part of the roof above where Jesus was. And when they had dug through the clay roof, they lowered the mat the paralyzed man was lying on" or "they made a hole in the roof above Jesus, and then they lowered the paralyzed man on the mat"

#### Mark 2:5

Seeing their faith

"Seeing the men's faith." Possible meanings are 1) that only the men who carried the paralyzed man had faith or 2) that the paralyzed man and the men who brought him to Jesus all had faith.

Son

The word "Son" here shows Jesus cared for the man as a father cares for a son. Alternate translation: "My son"

your sins are forgiven

Jesus did not clearly say who was forgiving the man's sins. Alternate translation: "your sins are gone" or "you do not have to pay for your sins" or "your sins do not count against you"

#### Mark 2:6

reasoned in their hearts

Here "their hearts" is a metonym for the people's thoughts. Alternate translation: "were thinking to themselves"

#### Mark 2:7

How can this man speak this way?

The scribes used this question to show their anger that Jesus said "Your sins are forgiven." Alternate translation: "This man should not speak this way!"

Who can forgive sins but God alone?

The scribes used this question to say that since only God can forgive sins, then Jesus should not say "Your sins are forgiven." Alternate translation: "Only God can forgive sins!"

#### Mark 2:8

in his spirit

"in his inner being" or "in himself"

they were thinking within themselves

Each of the scribes was thinking to himself; they were not talking to each other.

Why are you thinking this in your hearts?

Jesus uses this question to tell the scribes that what they are thinking is wrong. Alternate translation: "What you are thinking is wrong." or "Do not think that I am blaspheming."

this in your hearts

The word "hearts" is a metonym for their inner thoughts and desires. Alternate translation: "this inside yourselves" or "these things"

#### Mark 2:9

Which is easier, to say to the paralyzed man, ... take up your mat and walk?

Jesus uses this question to make the scribes think about what might prove whether or not he could really forgive sins. Alternate translation: "I just said to the paralyzed man, 'Your sins are forgiven.' You may think that it is harder to say 'Get up, take up your mat and walk,' because the proof of whether or not I can heal him will be shown by whether or not he gets up and walks." or "You may think that it is easier to say to the paralyzed man 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up, take up your mat and walk.'"

#### Mark 2:10

But in order that you may know

"But so that you may know." The word "you" refers to the scribes and the crowd.

that the Son of Man has authority

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man." Alternate translation: "that I am the Son of Man and I have authority"

Mark 2:11

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 2:12

in front of everyone

"while all the people there were watching"

Mark 2:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus is teaching the crowd beside the Sea of Galilee, and he calls Levi to follow him.

the lake

This is the Sea of Galilee, which is also known as the Lake of Gennesaret.

the crowd came to him

"the people went where he was"

Mark 2:14

Levi son of Alphaeus

Alpheus was Levi's father.

the tax collector's tent

We do not know what kind of a structure this was or what it was made of. It may have been a tent or booth. It probably included a table and some kind of protection from sun and rain.

Mark 2:15

Connecting Statement:

It is now later in the day, and Jesus is at Levi's house for a meal.

Levi's house

"the home of Levi"

sinners

In this verse, the word "sinners" refers to people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

for there were many and they followed him

Possible meanings are 1) "for there were many tax collectors and sinful people who followed Jesus" or 2) "for Jesus had many disciples and they followed him."

Mark 2:16

Why does he eat with tax collectors and sinners?

The scribes and Pharisees asked this question to show they disapproved of Jesus's hospitality. This can be worded as a statement. Alternate translation: "He should not eat with tax collectors and sinners!"

Mark 2:17

Connecting Statement:

Jesus responds to what the scribes had said to his disciples about his eating with tax collectors and sinful people.

he said to them

"he said to the scribes"

People who are strong in body do not need a physician; only people who are sick need one

Jesus used this proverb about sick people and doctors to teach them that only people who know that they are sinful realize that they need Jesus.

strong in body

"healthy"

I did not come to call righteous people, but sinners

Jesus expects his hearers to understand he came for those who want help. Alternate translation: "I came for people who understand they are sinful, not for people who believe they are righteous"

but sinners

The words "I came to call" are understood from the phrase before this. Alternate translation: "but I came to call sinners"

Mark 2:18

Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells parables to show why his disciples should not fast while he is with them.

the Pharisees were fasting ... the disciples of the Pharisees

These two phrases refer to the same group of people, but the second is more specific. Both refer to the followers of the Pharisee sect, but they do not focus on the leaders of the Pharisees. Alternate translation: "the disciples of the Pharisees were fasting ... the disciples of the Pharisees"

Some people

"Some men." It is best to translate this phrase without specifying exactly who these men are. If in your language you have to be more specific, the possible meanings are 1) these men were not among John's disciples or the disciples of the Pharisees or 2) these men were among John's disciples.

came and said to him

"came and said to Jesus"

Mark 2:19

Can the wedding attendants fast while the bridegroom is still with them?

Jesus uses this question to remind the people of something they already know and to encourage them to apply it to him and his disciples. Alternate translation: "Wedding attendants do not fast while the bridegroom is with them. Rather they celebrate and feast."

Mark 2:20

the bridegroom will be taken away

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the bridegroom will go away"

away from them ... they will fast

The words "them" and "they" refer to the wedding attendants.

Mark 2:21

No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old garment

Sewing a piece of new cloth on an old garment will make the hole on an old garment worse if the piece of new cloth has not yet shrunk. Both the new cloth and old garment will be ruined.

Mark 2:22

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to tell another parable. This one is about putting new wine into old wineskins rather than into new wineskins.

new wine

"grape juice." This refers to wine that has not fermented yet. If grapes are unknown in your area, use the general term for fruit juice.

old wineskins

This refers to wineskins that have been used many times.

wineskins

These were bags made out of animal skins. They could also be called "wine bags" or "skin bags."

the wine will burst the skins

New wine expands as it ferments. If it is put in new wineskins, the wineskins will stretch. But old wineskins are brittle and cannot stretch. If new wine is poured into old wineskins, the wineskins will tear open.

are lost

"will be ruined"

fresh wineskins

"new wineskins" or "new wine bags." This refers to wineskins that have never been used.

## Mark 2:23

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus gives the Pharisees an example from scripture to show why the disciples were not wrong to pick grain on the Sabbath.

began picking heads of grain

The disciples were picking heads of grain to eat the kernels, or seeds, in them while they were walking. They were not harvesting the grain to take it home. Plucking grain in others' fields and eating it was not considered stealing. The question was whether it was lawful to do this on the Sabbath.

heads of grain

The "heads" are the topmost part of the wheat plant, which is a kind of tall grass. The heads hold the mature grain or seeds of the plant.

as they made their way

"as they walked along"

## Mark 2:24

### Connecting Statement:

The Pharisees ask a question about what the disciples were doing (verse 23).

doing something that is not lawful on the Sabbath day

Plucking grain in others' fields and eating it (verse 23) was not considered stealing. The question was whether it was lawful to do this on the Sabbath.

Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful on the Sabbath day?

The Pharisees ask Jesus a question to condemn him. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Look! They are breaking the Jewish law concerning the Sabbath."

Look

"Look at this" or "Listen." This is a word used to get the attention of someone to show them something. If there is a word in your language that is used to draw a person's attention to something, you could use that here.

## Mark 2:25

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to scold the Pharisees by asking them a question.

He said to them

"Jesus said to the Pharisees"

Have you never read what David did

This question ends in 2:26. Jesus is reminding the scribes and Pharisees of something David did on the Sabbath. If this rhetorical question is translated as a statement or a command, then the question mark in 2:26 should become a period. Alternate translation: "You have read what David did" or "Remember what you read about what David did"

read what David did

Jesus refers to reading about David in the Old Testament. This can be translated showing the implicit information. Alternate translation: "read in the scriptures what David did"

## Mark 2:26

### Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes asking the question he began in verse 25.

how he went into the house of God ... to those who were with him?

This question began in 2:25. If you translated the rhetorical question as a statement or command in verse 25, then the question mark here should become a period. Alternate translation: "how he went into the house of God ... to those who were with him."

how he went into the house of God ... to those who were with him

This can be expressed as a statement separate from verse 25. If so, verse 25 should end with a period instead of a dash. Alternate translation: "He went into the house of God ... to those who were with him"

how he went

The word "he" refers to David.

the bread of the presence

This refers to the twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God.

Mark 2:27

The Sabbath was made for mankind

Jesus makes clear why God established the Sabbath. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God made the Sabbath for mankind"

mankind

"man" or "people" or "the needs of people." This word refers to both men and women.

not mankind for the Sabbath

The words "was made" are understood from the previous phrase. They can be repeated here. Alternate translation: "mankind was not made for the Sabbath" or "God did not make mankind for the Sabbath"

Mark 2:28

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

---



3 <sup>1</sup>Again Jesus walked into the synagogue, and there was a man with a withered hand.<sup>2</sup>Some people watched him closely to see if he would heal him on the Sabbath so that they could accuse him.

<sup>3</sup>Jesus said to the man with the withered hand, "Get up and stand here in the middle of everyone."<sup>4</sup>Then he said to the people, "Is it lawful to do good on the Sabbath day or to do harm; to save a life or to kill?" But they were silent.

<sup>5</sup>He looked around at them with anger, and he was grieved by their hardness of heart, and he said to the man, "Stretch out your hand." He stretched it out, and his hand was restored.<sup>6</sup>The Pharisees went out and immediately began to plot with the Herodians as to how they might put him to death.

<sup>7</sup>Then Jesus, with his disciples, went to the sea, and a great crowd of people followed from Galilee and from Judea<sup>8</sup> and from Jerusalem and from Idumea and beyond the Jordan and around Tyre and Sidon. When they heard about the things he was doing, a great crowd came to him.

<sup>9</sup>He told his disciples to have a small boat ready for him because of the crowd, so that they would not press against him.<sup>10</sup>For he healed many, so that everyone who had afflictions eagerly approached him in order to touch him.

<sup>11</sup>Whenever the unclean spirits saw him, they fell down before him and cried out, and they said, "You are the Son of God."<sup>12</sup>He strictly ordered them not to make him known.

<sup>13</sup>He went up on the mountain, and he called for those he wanted, and they came to him.<sup>14</sup>He appointed the twelve (whom he named apostles) so that they might be with him and he might send them to proclaim the message,<sup>15</sup> and to have authority to cast out demons.<sup>16</sup>He appointed the twelve: Simon, to whom he gave the name Peter;

<sup>17</sup>James son of Zebedee, and John the brother of James, to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, "Sons of Thunder";<sup>18</sup> and Andrew, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot,<sup>19</sup> and Judas Iscariot, who would betray him.

<sup>20</sup>Then he went home, and the crowd came together again, so that they could not even eat bread.<sup>21</sup>When his family heard about it, they went out to seize him, for they said, "He is out of his mind."

<sup>22</sup>The scribes who came down from Jerusalem said, "He is possessed by Beelzebul" and "By the ruler of the demons he drives out demons."

<sup>23</sup>Jesus called them to himself and said to them in parables, "How can Satan cast out Satan?"<sup>24</sup>If a kingdom is divided against itself, that kingdom cannot stand.<sup>25</sup>If a house is divided against itself, that house will not be able to stand.

<sup>26</sup>If Satan has risen up against himself and is divided, he is not able to stand, but has come to an end.<sup>27</sup>But no one can enter into the house of a strong man and steal his belongings without tying up the strong man first, and then he will plunder his house.

<sup>28</sup>Truly I say to you, all sins of the sons of men will be forgiven, even all the blasphemies which they utter,<sup>29</sup> but whoever blasphemes against the Holy Spirit will never have forgiveness, but is guilty of an eternal sin."

<sup>30</sup>Jesus said this because they were saying, "He has an unclean spirit."

<sup>31</sup>Then his mother and his brothers came and stood outside. They sent for him, summoning him.<sup>32</sup>A crowd was sitting around him and they said to him, "Your mother and your brothers and your sisters are outside, and they are looking for you."

<sup>33</sup>He answered them, "Who are my mother and my brothers?"<sup>34</sup>He looked around at those who were sitting in a circle around him and said, "See, here are my mother and my brothers!"<sup>35</sup>For whoever does the will of God, that person is my brother, and sister, and mother."

# Mark 3 General Notes

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Sabbath

It was against the law of Moses to do work on the Sabbath. The Pharisees believed healing a sick person on the Sabbath was "work," so they said that Jesus did wrong when he healed a person on the Sabbath. (See: lawofmoses)

### "Blasphemy against the Spirit"

No one knows for sure what actions people perform or what words they say when they commit this sin. However, they probably insult the Holy Spirit and his work. Part of the Holy Spirit's work is to make people understand that they are sinners and that they need to have God forgive them. Therefore, anyone who does not try to stop sinning is probably committing blasphemy against the Spirit. (See: blasphemy and holyspirit)

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### The twelve disciples

The following are the lists of the twelve disciples:

In Matthew:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James son of Zebedee, John son of Zebedee, Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.

In Mark:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James the son of Zebedee and John the son of Zebedee (to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder), Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot.

In Luke:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon (who was called the Zealot), Judas the son of James, and Judas Iscariot.

Thaddaeus is probably the same person as Jude, the son of James.

## Links:

- [Mark 3:1 Notes](#)

Mark 3:1

a man with a withered hand

Connecting Statement:

"a man with a crippled hand"

Jesus heals a man on the Sabbath in the synagogue and shows how he feels about what the Pharisees had done with the Sabbath rules. The Pharisees and Herodians begin planning to put Jesus to death.

Mark 3:2

Some people watched him closely to see if he would heal him

"Some people watched Jesus closely to see if he would heal the man with the withered hand"

Some people

"Some of the Pharisees." Later, in Mark 3:6, these people are identified as Pharisees.

so that they could accuse him

If Jesus were to heal the man that day, the Pharisees would accuse him of breaking the law by working on the Sabbath. Alternate translation: "so that they could accuse him of wrongdoing" or "so that they could accuse him of breaking the law"

Mark 3:3

in the middle of everyone

"in the middle of this crowd"

Mark 3:4

Is it lawful to do good on the Sabbath ... or to kill?

Jesus said this to challenge them. He wanted them to acknowledge that it is lawful to heal people on the Sabbath.

to do good on the Sabbath day or to do harm ... to save a life or to kill

These two phrases are similar in meaning, except that the second is more extreme.

to save a life or to kill

It may be helpful to repeat "is it lawful," as that is the question Jesus is asking again in another way. Alternate translation: "is it lawful to save a life or to kill"

to save a life

"to save someone's life" or "to save someone from dying"

But they were silent

"But they refused to answer him"

Mark 3:5

He looked around

"Jesus looked around"

was grieved

"was deeply saddened"

by their hardness of heart

This metaphor describes how the Pharisees were unwilling to have compassion on the man with the withered hand. Alternate translation: "because they were unwilling to have compassion on the man"

Stretch out your hand

"Reach out with your hand"

his hand was restored

This can be stated with an active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus restored his hand" or "Jesus made his hand the way it was before"

Mark 3:6

began to plot

"began to make a plan"

the Herodians

This is the name of an informal political party that supported Herod Antipas.

how they might put him to death

"how they might kill Jesus"

Mark 3:7

Connecting Statement:

A great crowd of people follows Jesus, and he heals many people.

the sea

This refers to the Sea of Galilee.

Mark 3:8

Idumea

This is the region, previously known as Edom, which covered the southern half of the province of Judea.

the things he was doing

This refers to the miracles Jesus was performing.  
Alternate translation: "the great miracles that Jesus was performing"

came to him

"came to where Jesus was"

Mark 3:9

General Information:

Verse 9 tells what Jesus asked his disciples to do because of the large crowd of people around him. Verse 10 tells why such a large crowd was around Jesus. The information in these verses can be reordered to present the events in the order they happened, as in the UDB.

He told his disciples to have a small boat ... not press against him

As the large crowd was pushing forward toward Jesus, he was in danger of being crushed by them. They would not crush him intentionally. It was just that there were so many people.

Mark 3:10

For he healed many, so that everyone ... to touch him

This tells why so many people were crowding around Jesus that he thought they might crush him. Alternate translation: "For, because Jesus had healed many people, everyone ... to touch him"

For he healed many

The word "many" refers to the large number of people Jesus had already healed. Alternate translation: "For he healed many people"

everyone who had afflictions eagerly approached him in order to touch him

They did this because they believed that touching Jesus would make them well. This can be expressed clearly. Alternate translation: "all the sick people pushed forward eagerly trying to touch him so that they might be healed"

Mark 3:11

saw him

"saw Jesus"

they fell down ... cried out, and they said

Here "they" refers to the unclean spirits. It is they who are causing the people they possess to do things. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "they caused the people they were possessing to fall down before him and to cry out to him"

they fell down before him

The unclean spirits did not fall down before Jesus because they loved him or wanted to worship him. They fell down before him because they were afraid of him.

You are the Son of God

Jesus has power over unclean spirits because he is the "Son of God."

Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

Mark 3:12

He strictly ordered them

"Jesus strictly ordered the unclean spirits"

not to make him known

"not to reveal who he was"

Mark 3:13

General Information:

Jesus chooses the men he wants to be his apostles.

Mark 3:14

so that they might be with him and he might send them to proclaim the message

"so that they would be with him and he could send them to proclaim the message"

### Mark 3:15

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 3:16

Simon, to whom he gave the name Peter

The author begins to list the names of the twelve apostles. Simon is the first man listed.

### Mark 3:17

to whom he gave

The phrase "to whom" refers to both James son of Zebedee and his brother John.

the name Boanerges, that is, Sons of Thunder

Jesus called them this because they were like thunder. Alternate translation: "the name Boanerges, which means men who are like thunder" or "the name Boanerges, which means Thunder Men"

### Mark 3:18

Thaddaeus

This is the name of a man.

### Mark 3:19

who would betray him

"who would betray Jesus" The word "who" refers to Judas Iscariot.

### Mark 3:20

Then he went home

"Then Jesus went to the house where he was staying."

they could not even eat bread

The word "bread" represents food. Alternate translation: "Jesus and his disciples could not eat at all" or "they could not eat anything"

### Mark 3:21

they went out to seize him

Members of his family went to the house so that they could take hold of him and force him to go home with them.

for they said

Possible meanings for the word "they" are 1) his relatives or 2) some people in the crowd.

out of his mind

This idiom describes how they thought he was acting. Alternate translation: "crazy" or "insane"

### Mark 3:22

By the ruler of the demons he drives out demons

"By the power of Beelzebul, who is the ruler of the demons, Jesus drives out demons"

### Mark 3:23

Connecting Statement:

Jesus explains with a parable why it is foolish for people to think that Jesus is controlled by Satan.

Jesus called them to himself

"Jesus called the people to come to him"

How can Satan cast out Satan?

Jesus asked this rhetorical question in response to the scribes saying that he cast out demons by Beelzebul. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Satan cannot cast out himself!" or "Satan does not go against his own evil spirits!"

### Mark 3:24

If a kingdom is divided against itself

The word "kingdom" is a metonym for the people who live in the kingdom. Alternate translation: "If the people who live in a kingdom are divided against each other"

cannot stand

Here "stand" is a metaphor that means endure, or continue to exist. Alternate translation: "cannot endure" or "will end"

Mark 3:25

house

This is a metonym for the people who live in a house. Alternate translation: "family" or "household"

Mark 3:26

If Satan has risen up against himself and is divided

The word "himself" is a reflexive pronoun that refers back to Satan, and it is also a metonym for his evil spirits. Alternate translation: "If Satan and his evil spirits were fighting one another" or "If Satan and his evil spirits have risen up against each other and are divided"

is not able to stand

Here "stand" is a metaphor that means endure, or stay strong. Alternate translation: "cannot endure" or "cannot stay strong"

Mark 3:27

plunder

to steal a person's valuables and possessions

Mark 3:28

Truly I say to you

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important.

the sons of men

"those who have been born of man." This expression is used to emphasize peoples' humanity. Alternate translation: "people"

utter

speak

Mark 3:29

will never have forgiveness

The idea in the noun forgiveness can be expressed with a phrase. Alternate translation: "will never be forgiven"

is guilty of an eternal sin

"Eternal sin" is a metonym for "a sin that will be eternally punished." Alternate translation: "is guilty of a sin that will be punished eternally"

Mark 3:30

they were saying

"the people were saying"

has an unclean spirit

This is an idiom that means to be possessed by an unclean spirit. Alternate translation: "is possessed by an unclean spirit"

Mark 3:31

Then his mother and his brothers came

"Then Jesus's mother and brothers came"

They sent for him, summoning him

"They sent someone inside to tell him that they were outside and to have him come out to them"

Mark 3:32

are looking for you

"are asking for you"

Mark 3:33

Who are my mother and my brothers?

Jesus uses this question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "I will tell you who are really my mother and brothers."

Mark 3:34

here are my mother and my brothers

This is a metaphor that means Jesus's disciples belong to Jesus's spiritual family. This is more important than belonging to his physical family.

Mark 3:35

whoever does ... that person is

"those who do ... they are"

that person is my brother, and sister, and mother

This is a metaphor that means Jesus's disciples belong to Jesus's spiritual family. This is more important than belonging to his physical family. Alternate translation: "that person is like a brother, sister, or mother to me"

---

4<sup>1</sup> Again he began to teach beside the sea, and a large crowd gathered around him. He stepped into a boat that was on the sea, and he sat down in it. The whole crowd was on the shore beside the sea.<sup>2</sup> He taught them many things in parables, and in his teaching, this is what he said to them.

<sup>3</sup> "Listen! A farmer went out to sow his seed.<sup>4</sup> As he sowed, some seed fell beside the road, and the birds came and devoured it.<sup>5</sup> Other seed fell on the rocky ground, where it did not have much soil. Immediately it sprang up, because it did not have deep soil.

<sup>6</sup> But when the sun rose, the plants were scorched, and because they had no root, they dried up.<sup>7</sup> Other seed fell among the thorn plants. The thorn plants grew up and choked it, and it did not produce a crop.

<sup>8</sup> Other seed fell into good soil, and it produced a crop growing up and increasing and yielding thirty, sixty, and even a hundred times."<sup>9</sup> Then he said, "Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear!"

<sup>10</sup> When Jesus was alone, those around him with the twelve asked him about the parables.<sup>11</sup> He said to them, "To you is given the mystery of the kingdom of God. But to those outside everything is in parables,

<sup>12</sup> so that when they look,  
yes they look,  
but do not see,  
and so that when they hear,  
yes they hear,  
but do not understand,  
or else they would turn  
and God would forgive them."

<sup>13</sup> He said to them, "Do you not understand this parable? How then will you understand all the parables?"<sup>14</sup> The sower sows the word.<sup>15</sup> These are the ones beside the road, where the word is sown. When they hear, Satan immediately comes and takes away the word that is sown in them.

<sup>16</sup> And these are the seed sown on the rocky ground; who, when they hear the word immediately receive it with joy.<sup>17</sup> But they do not have root in themselves, but they endure for a while. Afterward when tribulation or persecution arises on account of the word, they immediately fall away.

<sup>18</sup> Still others are the ones sown among the thorns. They are those who hear the word,<sup>19</sup> but the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke the word, and it is unproductive.<sup>20</sup> Those that were sown on the good soil are the ones who hear the word, accept it and bear fruit, thirty, sixty, or even a hundred times as much."

<sup>21</sup> Jesus said to them, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand.<sup>22</sup> For nothing is hidden that will not be known, and nothing is secret that will not come out into the open.<sup>23</sup> If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear!"

<sup>24</sup> He said to them, "Pay attention to what you hear, for the measure you use will be measured to you, and more will be added to you.<sup>25</sup> Because whoever has, to him will be given more, and whoever does not have, even what he has will be taken."

<sup>26</sup> He also said, "The kingdom of God is like a man who sows his seed on the ground.<sup>27</sup> He sleeps at night and gets up by day, and the seed sprouts and grows, though he does not know how.<sup>28</sup> The earth bears grain by itself: First the blade, then the ear, then the mature grain in the ear.<sup>29</sup> When the crop is ripe, he immediately sends in the sickle because the harvest has come."

<sup>30</sup> Again he said, "To what can we compare the kingdom of God, or what parable can we use to explain it?"<sup>31</sup> It is like a mustard seed, which, when it is sown, is the smallest of all the seeds on earth.<sup>32</sup> Yet, when it is sown, it grows and becomes greater than all the garden plants, and it forms large branches, so that the birds of heaven can make their nests in its shade."

<sup>33</sup> With many parables like this he spoke the word to them, as much as they were able to understand,<sup>34</sup> and he did not speak to them without a parable. But when he was alone, he explained everything to his own disciples.



<sup>35</sup>On that day, when evening had come, he said to them, "Let us go over to the other side."<sup>36</sup>So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There were other boats going along with him.<sup>37</sup>Just then a violent windstorm arose, and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was almost full of water.<sup>38</sup>But Jesus himself was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. They woke him up, saying, "Teacher, do you not care that we are about to die?"

<sup>39</sup>He got up, rebuked the wind, and said to the sea, "Peace! Be still!" Then the wind ceased, and there was a great calm.

<sup>40</sup>Then he said to them, "Why are you afraid? Do you still not have faith?"

<sup>41</sup>They were filled with great fear and said to one another, "Who then is this, because even the wind and the sea obey him?"

# Mark 4 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Mark 4:3-10 forms one parable. The parable is explained in 4:14-23.

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 4:12, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Parables

The parables were short stories that Jesus told so that people would easily understand the lesson he was trying to teach them. He also told the stories so that those who did not want to believe in him would not understand the truth.

## Links:

- [Mark 4:1 Notes](#)

Mark 4:1

Connecting Statement:

As Jesus teaches from a boat at the seaside, he tells them the parable of the soils.

the sea

This is the Sea of Galilee.

Mark 4:2

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 4:3

Listen!

"Pay attention!

A farmer went out to sow his seed

This means that he tossed seeds onto the ground so they could grow.

Mark 4:4

some seed ... devoured it

"some seeds ... devoured them"

#### Mark 4:5

Other seed ... it did not have ... it sprang ... it did not have

"Other seeds ... they did not have ... they sprang ... they did not have"

it sprang up

"the seed that landed on the rocky ground began to grow quickly"

soil

This refers to the loose dirt on the ground in which you can plant seeds.

#### Mark 4:6

the plants were scorched

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it scorched the young plants"

because they had no root, they dried up

"because the young plants had no roots, they dried up"

#### Mark 4:7

Other seed ... choked it ... it did not produce

"Other seeds ... choked them ... they did not produce"

#### Mark 4:8

yielding thirty, sixty, and even a hundred times

The amount of grain produced by each plant is being compared to the single seed from which it grew. Ellipsis is used here to shorten the phrases but they can be written out. Alternate translation: "Some plants bore thirty times as much as the seed that the man had planted, some produced sixty times as much grain, and some produced a hundred times as much grain"

thirty ... sixty ... a hundred

"30 ... 60 ... 100." These may be written as numerals.

#### Mark 4:9

Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "has ears" is a metonym for being willing to understand and obey. Alternate translation: "Whoever is willing to listen, listen" or "Whoever is willing to understand, let him understand and obey"

Whoever has ... let him hear

Since Jesus wanted his audience to pay attention, this can also be expressed with the word "you." Alternate translation: "If you have ears to hear, then hear" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey"

#### Mark 4:10

When Jesus was alone

This does not mean that Jesus was completely alone; rather, it means that the crowds were gone and Jesus was only with the twelve and some of his other close followers.

#### Mark 4:11

To you is given

This can be stated in active form. "God has given you" or "I have given you"

to those outside

"to those outside our group" or "to those who are not among us." This refers to all the other people who were not among the twelve or Jesus's other close followers.

everything is in parables

It can be stated that Jesus gives the parables to the people. Alternate translation: "I have spoken everything in parables"

#### Mark 4:12

when they look ... when they hear

It is assumed that Jesus is speaking about the people looking at what he shows them and hearing what he

tells them. Alternate translation: "when they look at what I am doing ... when they hear what I am saying"

Mark 4:15

they look, but do not see

These are the ones beside the road

Possible meanings are 1) the word "look" here refers to making an effort to see and "see" refers to actually being able to see what they have looked for and is a metaphor for "understand." Alternate translation: "they look, but they do not understand" Or 2) here the word translated "look" refers to seeing what one is looking at and the word translated "see" refers to understanding what they are seeing.

Here Jesus speaks about people. Alternate translation: "These people are the seeds that fall beside the road" or "These people are like seeds that fall beside a road"

When they hear

"When they hear the word"

Mark 4:16

they would turn

these are the seed sown on the rocky ground

"they would turn to God." Here "turn" is a metaphor for "repent." Alternate translation: "they would repent"

"These people are the seeds that fall on the rocky ground" or "These people are like seeds that fall on the rocky ground"

Mark 4:13

He said to them

Mark 4:17

"Then Jesus said to his disciples"

they do not have root in themselves

Do you not understand this parable? How then will you understand all the parables?

Having no root represents not fully understanding or believing God's word. Alternate translation: "they are like young plants that have no roots"

Jesus used these questions to show how sad he was that his disciples could not understand his parable. Alternate translation: "If you cannot understand this parable, think about how hard it will be for you to understand all the other parables."

endure

In this parable, "endure" means "continue to believe." Alternate translation: "continue in their belief"

Mark 4:14

tribulation or persecution arises on account of the word

General Information:

The phrase "on account of the word" means "because they believe God's message. Alternate translation: "tribulation or persecution comes because they believe God's message"

Jesus begins to explain the parable he told in [Mark 4:3-8]

The sower

they immediately fall away

"The farmer who sows his seed"

In this parable, "fall away" means "stop believing God's message"

sows the word

Mark 4:18

Sowing God's word represents teaching it. Alternate translation: "teaches people God's word" or "represents one who teaches God's word"

Still others are the ones sown among the thorns

the word

"Still other people are the seeds that fall among the thorns" or "And other people are like seeds that fall among the thorns"

The phrase "the word" represents God's message. Alternate translation: "God's message"

#### Mark 4:19

the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke the word

The words "cares," "deceitfulness," and "desires" are spoken of as if they were weeds that wrap around plants and keep them from growing. Alternate translation: "the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke God's message in their lives like thorns that choke young plants"

the cares of the world

"the worries in this life" or "the concerns about this present life"

the deceitfulness of wealth

"the lie that wealth will make them happy" or "the lie that having many possessions will make them happy"

it is unproductive

"the word does not produce a crop in them." The word being unproductive means that it does not have an effect on the person's life.

#### Mark 4:20

Those that were sown on the good soil are the ones who hear the word, accept it and bear fruit

"The seeds that fall on the good soil represent people who hear the word, accept it and bear fruit"

and bear fruit, thirty, sixty, or even a hundred times as much

Fruit represents the results or effect of God's word in a person's life. The numbers tell how much fruit there might be, or how great the results might be. Alternate translation: "and produce good results, like plants that bear thirty, sixty, or even a hundred times as much fruit as what was sown"

#### Mark 4:21

Jesus said to them

"Jesus said to the crowd"

Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket or under the bed?

This question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You certainly do not bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under a bed!"

#### Mark 4:22

For nothing is hidden that will not be known ... come out into the open

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "For everything that is hidden will be made known, and everything that is secret will come out into to open"

nothing is hidden ... nothing is secret

"there is nothing that is hidden ... there is nothing that is secret" Both of the phrases have the same meaning. Jesus is emphasizing that everything that is secret will be made known.

#### Mark 4:23

If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "ears to hear" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Mark 4:9]

If anyone ... let him hear

Since Jesus wanted his audience to pay attention, this can also be expressed with the word "you." See how you translated a similar phrase in [Mark 4:9]

#### Mark 4:24

He said to them

"Jesus said to the crowd"

for the measure you use

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is talking about a literal measure and giving generously to others or 2) this is a metaphor in which Jesus speaks of "understanding" as if it were "measuring."

will be measured to you, and more will be added to you.

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will measure that amount for you, and he will add it to you"

Mark 4:25

to him will be given more ... even what he has will be taken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to him God will give more ... from him God will take away" or "God will give more to him ... God will take away from him"

Mark 4:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells the people parables to teach them about the kingdom of God. Later he explains the parables to his disciples.

like a man who sows his seed

When someone sows seed, he plants the seed by scattering it on the ground. Alternate translation: "like a farmer who plants his seed" or "like a farmer who scatters his seed"

Mark 4:27

He sleeps at night and gets up by day

This is something that the man habitually does. Alternate translation: "He sleeps each night and gets up each day" or "He sleeps each night and gets up the next day"

gets up by day

"is up during the day" or "is active during the day"

though he does not know how

"though the man does not know how the seed sprouts and grows"

Mark 4:28

the blade

the stalk or sprout

the ear

the head on the stalk or the part of the plant that holds the fruit

Mark 4:29

he immediately sends in the sickle

Here "the sickle" is a metonym that stands for the farmer or the people whom the farmer sends out to harvest the grain. Alternate translation: "he immediately goes into the field with a sickle to harvest the grain" or "he immediately sends people with sickles into the field to harvest the grain"

sickle

a curved blade or a sharp hook used to cut grain

because the harvest has come

Here the words "has come" are part of an idiom that means it is time for something. Alternative translation: "because it is time for harvesting the grain" or "because the grain is ready to be gathered"

Mark 4:30

To what can we compare the kingdom of God, or what parable can we use to explain it?

Jesus asked this question to cause his hearers to think about what the kingdom of God is like. Alternate translation: "With this parable I can explain what the kingdom of God is like."

Mark 4:31

when it is sown

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when someone sows it" or "when someone plants it"

Mark 4:32

it forms large branches

The mustard tree is described as causing its branches to grow large. Alternate translation: "it has large branches"

#### Mark 4:33

he spoke the word to them

"Word" here is a synecdoche for "the message of God." The word "them" refers to the crowds. Alternate translation: "he taught them the message of God"

as much as they were able to understand

"and if they were able to understand some, he kept telling them more"

#### Mark 4:34

when he was alone

This means that he was away from the crowds, but his disciples were still with him.

he explained everything

Here "everything" refers to all his parables. Alternate translation: "he explained all his parables"

#### Mark 4:35

Connecting Statement:

As Jesus and his disciples take a boat to escape the crowds of people, a great storm arises. His disciples are afraid when they see that even the wind and the sea obey Jesus.

he said to them

"Jesus said to his disciples"

the other side

"the other side of the Sea of Galilee" or "the other side of the sea"

#### Mark 4:36

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 4:37

a violent windstorm arose

Here "arose" is an idiom for "began." Alternate translation: "a violent windstorm began"

the boat was almost full of water

It may be helpful to state that the boat was filling up with water. Alternate translation: "the boat was in danger of being filled with water"

#### Mark 4:38

the stern

The stern is the back part of the boat.

They woke him up

The word "they" refers to the disciples.

do you not care that we are about to die?

The disciples asked this question to show that they were in great danger and that they were upset that Jesus was not helping them. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "you need to pay attention to what is happening; we are all about to die!"

we are about to die

The word "we" includes the disciples and Jesus.

#### Mark 4:39

Peace! Be still!

These two phrases are similar and used to emphasize what Jesus wanted the wind and the sea to do.

a great calm

"a great stillness over the sea" or "a great calm over the sea"

#### Mark 4:40

Then he said to them

"And Jesus said to his disciples"

Why are you afraid? Do you still not have faith?

Jesus asks these questions to make his disciples consider why they are afraid when he is with them. These questions can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "You should not be afraid. You need to have more faith."

Mark 4:41

Alternate translation: "This man is not like ordinary men; even the wind and the sea obey him!"

Who then is this, because even the wind and the sea obey him?

The disciples ask this question in amazement at what Jesus did. This question can be written as a statement.

---

5 <sup>1</sup>They came to the other side of the sea, to the region of the Gerasenes.<sup>2</sup>When Jesus was getting out of the boat, a man with an unclean spirit came up to him out of the tombs.

<sup>3</sup>The man lived in the tombs. No one could restrain him anymore, not even with a chain.<sup>4</sup>He had been bound many times with shackles and with chains. He tore the chains apart and his shackles were shattered. No one had the strength to subdue him.

<sup>5</sup>Every night and day in the tombs and in the mountains, he cried out and cut himself with sharp stones.<sup>6</sup>When he saw Jesus from a distance, he ran to him and bowed down before him.

<sup>7</sup>He cried out with a loud voice, "What do I have to do with you, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? I beg you by God himself, do not torment me."<sup>8</sup>For he had been saying to him, "Come out of the man, you unclean spirit."

<sup>9</sup>He asked him, "What is your name?"

He answered him, "My name is Legion, for we are many."

<sup>10</sup>He begged him again and again not to send them out of the region.

<sup>11</sup>Now a great herd of pigs was there feeding on the hill,<sup>12</sup>and they begged him, saying, "Send us into the pigs; let us enter into them."<sup>13</sup>So he allowed them; the unclean spirits came out and entered into the pigs, and the herd rushed down the steep hill into the sea, and about two thousand pigs drowned in the sea.

<sup>14</sup>Then those who were feeding the pigs ran away and reported what had happened in the city and in the countryside, and so people went out to see what had happened.<sup>15</sup>Then they came to Jesus and they saw the demon-possessed man, the one who had been possessed by Legion, sitting there, clothed and in his right mind; and they were afraid.

<sup>16</sup>Those who had seen what happened to the demon-possessed man told them about it in detail, and they also told them about the pigs.<sup>17</sup>Then they started to beg him to leave their region.

<sup>18</sup>When he was getting into the boat, the demon-possessed man begged him that he might be with him.<sup>19</sup>But Jesus did not permit him, but said to him, "Go to your house and to your people and tell them what the Lord has done for you, and how he has shown you mercy."<sup>20</sup>So he went away and began to proclaim in the Decapolis the great things that Jesus had done for him, and everyone was amazed.

<sup>21</sup>Now when Jesus had crossed over again to the other side in the boat, a great crowd gathered around him, as he was beside the sea.<sup>22</sup>Then one of the leaders of the synagogue named Jairus came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.<sup>23</sup>He begged again and again, saying, "My little daughter is near death. I beg you, come and lay your hands on her that she may be made well and live."<sup>24</sup>So he went with him, and a great crowd followed him and pressed close around him.

<sup>25</sup>Now a woman was there who had a flow of blood for twelve years.<sup>26</sup>She had suffered much from many doctors and had spent everything that she had, but instead of getting better she grew worse.<sup>27</sup>When she had heard the reports about Jesus, she came up behind him in the crowd and touched his cloak.

<sup>28</sup>For she said, "If I touch just his clothes, I will be healed."<sup>29</sup>When she touched him, the bleeding stopped, and she felt in her body that she was healed from her affliction.

<sup>30</sup>Jesus immediately realized in himself that power had gone out from him. He turned around in the crowd and said, "Who touched my clothes?"

<sup>31</sup>His disciples said to him, "You see this crowd pressed around you, and you say, 'Who touched me?'"

<sup>32</sup>But Jesus looked around to see who had done it.

<sup>33</sup>The woman, knowing what had happened to her, feared and trembled. She came and fell down before him and told him the whole truth.<sup>34</sup>He said to her, "Daughter, your faith has made you well. Go in peace and be healed from your affliction."

<sup>35</sup>While he was speaking, some people came from the synagogue leader's house, saying, "Your daughter is dead. Why trouble the teacher any longer?"



<sup>36</sup>But when Jesus overheard the message that was spoken, he said to the leader of the synagogue, "Do not be afraid. Just believe."<sup>37</sup>He did not permit anyone to accompany him except Peter, James, and John, the brother of James.<sup>38</sup>They came to the house of the leader of the synagogue and he saw there people making a lot of noise; they were weeping and wailing loudly.

<sup>39</sup>When he entered the house, he said to them, "Why are you upset and why do you weep? The child is not dead but sleeps."<sup>40</sup>They began to mock him. But he put them all outside and took the father of the child and the mother and those who were with him, and he went in where the child was.

<sup>41</sup>He took the hand of the child and said to her, "Talitha, k Koum!" which is translated, "Little girl, I say to you, get up."<sup>42</sup>Immediately the child got up and walked (for she was twelve years of age). They were immediately astonished with overwhelming amazement.<sup>43</sup>He strictly ordered them that no one should know about this. Then he told them to give her something to eat.

# Mark 5 General Notes

Possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"Talitha, koum"

The words "Talitha, koum"

Links:

- [Mark 5:1 Notes](#)

Mark 5:1

Connecting Statement:

After Jesus calms the great storm, he heals a man who has many demons, but the local people in Gerasa are not glad about his healing, and they beg Jesus to leave.

They came

The word "They" refers to Jesus and his disciples.

the sea

This refers to the Sea of Galilee.

Gerasenes

This name refers to the people who live in Gerasa.

Mark 5:2

with an unclean spirit

This is an idiom meaning that the man is "controlled" or "possessed" by the unclean spirit. Alternate translation: "controlled by an unclean spirit" or "that an unclean spirit possessed"

Mark 5:3

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 5:4

He had been bound many times

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "People had bound him many times"

his shackles were shattered

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "he shattered his shackles"

shackles

pieces of metal that people wrap around the arms and legs of prisoners and attach with chains to objects that do not move so the prisoners cannot move

No one had the strength to subdue him

The man was so strong that no one could subdue him.  
Alternate translation: "He was so strong that no one was strong enough to subdue him"

subdue him

"control him"

Mark 5:5

cut himself with sharp stones

Often when a person is possessed by a demon, the demon will cause the person to do self-destructive things, such as cutting himself.

Mark 5:6

When he saw Jesus from a distance

When the man first saw Jesus, Jesus would have been getting out of the boat.

bowed down

This means that he knelt down before Jesus out of reverence and respect, not out of worship.

Mark 5:7

General Information:

The information in verses 7 and 8 may be reordered to present the events in the order that they happened, as in the UDB.

He cried out

"The unclean spirit cried out"

What do I have to do with you, Jesus, Son of the Most High God?

The unclean spirit asks this question out of fear. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Leave me alone, Jesus, Son of the Most High God! There is no reason for you to interfere with me."

Jesus ... do not torment me

Jesus has the power to torment unclean spirits.

Son of the Most High God

This is an important title for Jesus.

I beg you by God himself

Here the unclean spirit is swearing by God as he makes a request of Jesus. Consider how this type of request is made in your language. Alternate translation: "I beg you before God" or "I swear by God himself and beg you"

Mark 5:8

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 5:9

He asked him

"And Jesus asked the unclean spirit"

He answered him, "My name is Legion, for we are many."

One spirit was speaking for many here. He spoke of them as if they were a legion, a Roman army unit of about 6,000 soldiers. Alternate translation: "And the spirit said to him, 'Call us an army, for many of us are inside the man.'"

Mark 5:10

He begged him

"The unclean spirit begged Jesus"

not to send them

"not to send him and the other unclean spirits"

Mark 5:11

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 5:12

they begged him

"the unclean spirits begged Jesus"

### Mark 5:13

he allowed them

It may be helpful to state clearly what Jesus allowed them to do. Alternate translation: "Jesus allowed the unclean spirits to do what they asked permission to do"

into the sea, and about two thousand pigs drowned in the sea

You can make the words after the comma a separate sentence: "into the sea. There were about two thousand pigs, and they drowned in the sea"

about two thousand pigs

"about 2,000 pigs"

### Mark 5:14

reported what had happened in the city and in the countryside

"told people in the city and in the countryside what had happened"

### Mark 5:15

Legion

This was the name of the many demons that had been in the man. See how you translated this in Mark 5:9.

in his right mind

This is an idiom meaning that he is thinking clearly. Alternate translation: "of a normal mind" or "thinking clearly"

they were afraid

The word "they" refers to the group of people who went out to see what had happened.

### Mark 5:16

Those who had seen what happened

"The people who had witnessed what had happened"

### Mark 5:17

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 5:18

the demon-possessed man

Though the man is no longer demon-possessed, he is still described in this way. Alternate translation: "the man who had been demon-possessed"

### Mark 5:19

But Jesus did not permit him

What Jesus did not allow the man to do can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "But he did not allow the man to come with them"

### Mark 5:20

Decapolis

This is the name of a region that means Ten Cities. It is located to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee.

everyone was amazed

It may be helpful to state why the people were amazed. Alternate translation: "all the people who heard what the man said were amazed"

### Mark 5:21

Connecting Statement:

After healing the demon-possessed man in region of the Gerasenes, Jesus and his disciples return across the lake to Capernaum where one of the leaders of the synagogue asks Jesus to heal his daughter.

the other side

This refers to the other side of the sea

beside the sea

"on the seashore" or "on the shore"

the sea

This is the Sea of Galilee.

### Mark 5:22

Jairus

This is the name of a man.

#### Mark 5:23

lay your hands

"Laying on hands" refers to a prophet or teacher placing his hand on someone and imparting either healing or a blessing. In this case, Jairus is asking Jesus to heal his daughter.

that she may be made well and live

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "and heal her and make her live"

#### Mark 5:24

So he went with him

"So Jesus went with Jairus." Jesus's disciples also went with him. Alternate translation: "So Jesus and the disciples went with Jairus"

pressed close around him

This means they crowded around Jesus and pressed themselves together to be closer to Jesus.

#### Mark 5:25

Connecting Statement:

While Jesus is on his way to heal the man's little 12-year-old girl, a woman who has been sick for 12 years interrupts by touching Jesus for her healing.

Now a woman was there

The word "Now" is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the story with a new person. Consider how new people are introduced into a story in your language.

who had a flow of blood for twelve years

The woman did not have an open wound; rather, her monthly flow of blood would not stop. Your language may have a polite way to refer to this condition.

for twelve years

"for 12 years"

#### Mark 5:26

she grew worse

"her sickness got worse" or "her bleeding increased"

#### Mark 5:27

the reports about Jesus

She had heard reports about Jesus of how he healed people. Alternate translation: "that Jesus healed people"

cloak

outer garment or coat

#### Mark 5:28

I will be healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it will heal me" or "his power will heal me"

#### Mark 5:29

she was healed from her affliction

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the sickness left her" or "she was no longer sick"

#### Mark 5:30

that power had gone out from him

When the woman touched Jesus, Jesus felt his power healing her. Jesus himself did not lose any of his power to heal people when he healed her. Alternate translation: "that his healing power had healed someone"

#### Mark 5:31

this crowd pressed around you

This means they crowded around Jesus and pressed themselves together to be closer to Jesus. See how you translated this in Mark 5:24.

#### Mark 5:32

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 5:33

fell down before him

"knelt down before him." She knelt down before Jesus as an act of honor and submission.

told him the whole truth

The phrase "the whole truth" refers to how she had touched him and had become well. Alternate translation: "told him the whole truth about how she had touched him"

#### Mark 5:34

Daughter

Jesus called the woman "Daughter." This was a kind way for a teacher to speak to a woman. Jesus showed that he cared about her.

your faith

"your faith in me"

#### Mark 5:35

While he was speaking

"While Jesus was speaking"

the synagogue leader

This refers to Jairus ([Mark 5:22](#)).

Why trouble the teacher any longer?

This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is useless to bother the teacher any longer" or "There is no need to bother the teacher any longer."

the teacher

This refers to Jesus.

#### Mark 5:36

the message that was spoken

This can be stated as in active form. Alternate translation: "the message that they told Jairus"

Just believe

If necessary, you can state what Jesus is commanding Jairus to believe. Alternate translation: "Just believe I can make your daughter live"

#### Mark 5:37

General Information:

In verses 37 and 38, the author gives background information about the Pharisees' washing traditions in order to show why the Pharisees were bothered that Jesus's disciples did not wash their hands before eating. If you need to reorder the events in these verses, it may be helpful to use a verse bridge, as in the UDB.

He did not permit anyone to accompany him except Peter ... James

This double negative emphasizes that Peter and the others were the only ones whom he permitted to accompany him. Alternate translation: "He only permitted Peter ... James to accompany him"

He did not permit

Jesus did not permit

to accompany him

"to come with him." It may be helpful to state where they were going. Alternate translation: "to accompany him to Jairus' house"

#### Mark 5:38

General Information:

In verses 37 and 38, the author gives background information about the Pharisees' washing traditions in order to show why the Pharisees were bothered that Jesus's disciples did not wash their hands before eating. If you need to reorder the events in these verses, it may be helpful to use a verse bridge, as in the UDB.

he saw

Jesus saw

#### Mark 5:39

he said to them

"Jesus said to the people who were weeping"

Why are you upset and why do you weep?

Jesus asked this question to help them see their lack of faith. This may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is not a time to be upset and crying."

The child is not dead but sleeps

Jesus uses the common word for sleep, and so should the translation.

Mark 5:40

They began to mock him

Jesus used the common word for sleep (verse 39). The reader should understand that the people who hear Jesus speak are laughing at him because they truly do know the difference between a dead person and a sleeping person and they think he does not.

put them all outside

"sent all the other people outside the house"

those who were with him

This refers to Peter, James, and John.

went in where the child was

It may be helpful to state where the child is. Alternate translation: "went into the room where the child was lying"

Mark 5:41

Talitha, koum

This is an Aramaic sentence that Jesus spoke to the little girl in her language. Write these words as they sound, using your alphabet.

Mark 5:42

she was twelve years of age

"she was 12 years old"

Mark 5:43

He strictly ordered them that no one should know about this. Then

This can be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "He ordered them strictly, 'No one should know about this!' Then" or "He ordered them strictly, 'Do not tell anyone about what I have done!' Then"

He strictly ordered them

"He strongly commanded them"

Then he told them to give her something to eat.

This can be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "And he told them, 'Give her something to eat.'"

<sup>6</sup> He went out from there and came to his hometown, and his disciples followed him.<sup>2</sup> When the Sabbath came, he taught in the synagogue. Many people heard him and they were amazed. They said, "Where did he get these teachings?" "What is this wisdom that has been given to him?" "What are these miracles that he does with his hands?"<sup>3</sup> "Is this not the carpenter, the son of Mary and the brother of James and Joses and Judas and Simon? Are his sisters not here with us?" They were offended by Jesus. <sup>1</sup>

<sup>4</sup> Then Jesus said to them, "A prophet is not without honor, except in his hometown and among his own relatives and in his own household."<sup>5</sup> He could not do any mighty work, except to lay his hands on a few sick people and heal them.<sup>6</sup> He was amazed at their unbelief. Then he went around the villages teaching.

<sup>7</sup> Then he called the twelve and began to send them out two by two, and he gave them authority over the unclean spirits,<sup>8</sup> and instructed them to take nothing for their journey, except a staff—no bread, no bag, and no money in their belts—<sup>9</sup> but to wear sandals, and not to wear two tunics.

<sup>10</sup> He said to them, "Whenever you enter a house, remain until you go away from there.<sup>11</sup> If any town will not receive you or listen to you, when you leave that place, shake the dust off your feet as a testimony to them."

<sup>12</sup> They went out and proclaimed that people should repent.<sup>13</sup> They cast out many demons, and anointed many sick people with oil and healed them.

<sup>14</sup> King Herod heard this, for Jesus' name had become well known. Some were saying, "John the Baptist has been raised from the dead, and that is why these miraculous powers are at work in him."<sup>15</sup> Some others said, "He is Elijah." Still others said, "He is a prophet, like one of the prophets in ancient times."

<sup>16</sup> But when Herod heard this, he said, "John, whom I beheaded, has been raised."

<sup>17</sup> For Herod sent to have John arrested and he had him bound in prison on account of Herodias (his brother Philip's wife), because he had married her.

<sup>18</sup> For John told Herod, "It is not lawful for you to have your brother's wife."<sup>19</sup> But Herodias held on to anger against him and wanted to kill him, but she could not,<sup>20</sup> for Herod feared John; he knew that he was a righteous and holy man, and he kept him safe. Listening to him made him greatly perplexed, yet he heard him gladly.

<sup>21</sup> Then an opportunity came when Herod had his birthday and he made a dinner for his officials and for the commanders and leaders of Galilee.<sup>22</sup> The daughter of Herodias herself came in and danced for them, and she pleased Herod and his dinner guests. The king said to the girl, "Ask me for anything you want and I will give it to you."

<sup>23</sup> He swore to her saying, "Whatever you ask of me, I will give you, up to half of my kingdom."

<sup>24</sup> She went out and said to her mother, "What should I ask him for?"

She said, "The head of John the Baptist."

<sup>25</sup> She immediately hurried back to the king, and she asked, saying, "I want you to give me, right now, the head of John the Baptist on a wooden platter."

<sup>26</sup> Though this deeply grieved the king, he could not refuse her request because of the oath he had made and because of his dinner guests.<sup>27</sup> So the king sent a soldier from his guard and commanded him to bring him John's head. The guard went and beheaded him in the prison.<sup>28</sup> He brought his head on a platter and gave it to the girl, and the girl gave it to her mother.<sup>29</sup> When his disciples heard of this, they came and took his body and placed it in a tomb.

<sup>30</sup> The apostles came together with Jesus and told him all that they had done and taught.<sup>31</sup> Then he said to them, "Come away by yourselves into a deserted place and rest a while." For many were coming and going, and they did not even have time to eat.<sup>32</sup> So they went away in the boat to a deserted place by themselves.

<sup>33</sup> But they saw them leaving and many recognized them, and they ran there together on foot from all the towns, and they arrived there before them.<sup>34</sup> When they came ashore, he saw a great crowd and he had compassion on them because they were like sheep without a shepherd. So he began to teach them many things.

<sup>35</sup>When the hour was late, his disciples came to him and said, "This is a deserted place, and the hour is already late.<sup>36</sup> Send them away so that they may go into the nearby countryside and villages to buy something to eat for themselves."

<sup>37</sup>But he answered and said to them, "You give them something to eat."

They said to him, "Can we go and buy two hundred denarii worth of bread and give it to them to eat?"

<sup>38</sup>He said to them, "How many loaves do you have? Go and see."

When they found out, they said, "Five loaves and two fish."

<sup>39</sup>He commanded all the people to sit down in groups upon the green grass.<sup>40</sup>They sat down in groups of hundreds and fifties.<sup>41</sup>He took the five loaves and the two fish, and looking up to heaven he blessed and broke the loaves and gave them to the disciples to set before the people. He also divided the two fish among them all.

<sup>42</sup>They all ate until they were satisfied.<sup>43</sup>They took up broken pieces of bread, twelve baskets full, and also pieces of the fish.<sup>44</sup>There were five thousand men who ate the loaves.

<sup>45</sup>Immediately he made his disciples get into the boat and go ahead of him to the other side, to Bethsaida, while he sent the crowd away.<sup>46</sup>After taking leave of them, he went up the mountain to pray.<sup>47</sup>Evening came, and the boat was now in the middle of the sea, and he was alone on land.

<sup>48</sup>He saw that they were straining against the oars, for the wind was against them. About the fourth watch of the night, he came to them, walking on the sea, and he wanted to pass by them.<sup>49</sup>But when they saw him walking on the sea, they thought he was a ghost and cried out,<sup>50</sup>because they saw him and were troubled. Immediately he spoke to them and said to them, "Be courageous! It is I! Do not be afraid!"

<sup>51</sup>He got into the boat with them, and the wind ceased blowing. They were completely amazed.<sup>52</sup>For they had not understood what the loaves meant. Instead, their hearts were hardened.

<sup>53</sup>When they had crossed over, they came to land at Gennesaret and anchored the boat.<sup>54</sup>When they came out of the boat, the people recognized him immediately,<sup>55</sup>and they ran throughout the whole region and began to bring the sick on their mats to wherever they heard he was.

<sup>56</sup>Wherever he entered into villages, or cities, or into the country, they would put the sick in the marketplaces. They begged him to let them touch the edge of his garment, and as many as touched him were healed.

---

<sup>1</sup>The man called Joses here is called Joseph in Matthew 27:56. The name Joseph represents how the name was spelled in Hebrew, and the name Joses represents how his name was spelled in Greek.

---

## Mark 6 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

"Anointed with oil"

In the ancient Near East, people would try to heal sick people by putting olive oil on them.

### Links:

- [Mark 6:1 Notes](#)



## Mark 6:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus returns to his hometown, where he is not accepted.

his hometown

This refers to the town of Nazareth, where Jesus grew up and where his family lived. This does not mean that he owned land there.

## Mark 6:2

What is this wisdom that has been given to him?

This question can be asked in active form. Alternate translation: "What is this wisdom that he has gained?"

that he does with his hands

This phrase emphasizes that Jesus himself does the miracles. Alternate translation: "that he himself works"

## Mark 6:3

Is this not the carpenter, the son of Mary and the brother of James and Joses and Judas and Simon? Are his sisters not here with us?

These questions can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "He is just an ordinary carpenter! We know him and his family. We know Mary his mother. We know his younger brothers James, Joses, Judas and Simon. And his younger sisters also live here with us."

## Mark 6:4

to them

"to the crowd"

A prophet is not without honor, except

This sentence uses a double negative to emphasize the positive. Alternate translation: "A prophet is always honored, except" or "People always honor prophets, except those"

## Mark 6:5

to lay his hands on a few sick people

Prophets and teachers would put their hands on people in order to heal them or bless them. In this case, Jesus was healing people.

## Mark 6:6

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 6:7

Connecting Statement:

Jesus sends his disciples out in sets of two to preach and to heal.

he called the twelve

Here the word "called" means that he summoned the twelve to come to him.

two by two

"2 by 2" or "in pairs"

## Mark 6:8

General Information:

Jesus's instructions in verses 8 and 9 can be reordered to separate what he told the disciples to do from what he told them not to do, as in the UDB.

to take nothing for their journey, except a staff

This double negative emphasizes that a staff is the only thing that they were to take. Alternate translation: "to take only a staff for their journey"

no bread

Here "bread" is a synecdoche for food in general. Alternate translation: "no food"

## Mark 6:9

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 6:10

He said to them

"Jesus said to the twelve"

remain until you go away from there

Here "remain" represents daily going back to that house to eat and sleep there. Alternate translation: "eat and sleep in that house until you leave that area"

#### Mark 6:11

as a testimony to them

"as a testimony against them." The testimony can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "as a testimony that they did not welcome you" or "to show them that they did wrong when they did not welcome you"

#### Mark 6:12

They went out

The word "They" refers to the twelve and does not include Jesus. Also, it may be helpful to state that they went out to various towns. Alternate translation: "They went out to various towns"

repent

"stop sinning"

#### Mark 6:13

They cast out many demons

It may be helpful to state that they cast the demons out of people. Alternate translation: "They cast many demons out of people"

#### Mark 6:14

Connecting Statement:

Before this time, Herod commanded that John the Baptist be killed. When Herod hears about Jesus's miracles, he worries, thinking that someone has raised John the Baptist from the dead.

King Herod heard this

The word "this" refers to everything that Jesus and his disciples had been doing in various towns, including casting out demons and healing people.

Some were saying, "John the Baptist has been raised

Some people thought that Jesus was John the Baptist. This can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: "Some people were saying, 'He is John the Baptist, who has been raised'"

John the Baptist has been raised from the dead

"Raised from the dead" is an idiom that means "caused to live again." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has raised John the Baptist from the dead" or "John the Baptist has become alive again"

#### Mark 6:15

Some others said, "He is Elijah."

It may be helpful to state why some people thought he was Elijah. Alternate translation: "Some others said, 'He is Elijah, whom God promised to send back again.'"

#### Mark 6:16

whom I beheaded

Herod said "I beheaded" because he had commanded his soldier to behead John. Alternate translation: "whom I commanded my soldier to behead"

has been raised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "has risen" or "has become alive again"

#### Mark 6:17

General Information:

Here the author begins to give background information about Herod and why he beheaded John the Baptist.

Herod sent to have John arrested and he had him bound in prison

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Herod sent his soldiers to arrest John and to bind him in prison"

on account of Herodias

"because of Herodias"

his brother Philip's wife

"the wife of his brother Philip." Herod's brother Philip is not the same Philip who was an evangelist in the book of Acts or the Philip who was one of Jesus's twelve disciples.

because he had married her

"because Herod had married her"

Mark 6:18

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 6:19

Herodias held on to anger against him

"Herodias continued to be angry at John"

and wanted to kill him

Herodias wanted someone to kill John. Alternate translation: "and she wanted someone to kill him"

but she could not

What she could not do can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "but she could not kill him" or "but she could not have him killed"

Mark 6:20

for Herod feared John; he knew

These two clauses can be linked differently to show more clearly why Herod feared John. Alternate translation: "for Herod feared John because he knew"

he knew that he was a righteous

"Herod knew that John was a righteous"

Listening to him

"Listening to John"

Mark 6:21

Connecting Statement:

The author continues to give background information about Herod and the beheading of John the Baptist.

an opportunity came

"a convenient day" or "there was an opportune time." This was a time when Herodias could finally do something so that John the Baptist would be killed.

he made a dinner for his officials ... of Galilee

This means that he invited those people to a special dinner to celebrate his birthday with him. Alternate translation: "he had a banquet for his officials ... of Galilee" or "he invited his officials ... of Galilee to eat and celebrate with him"

a dinner

a formal meal or banquet

Mark 6:22

Herodias herself

The word "herself" is a reflexive pronoun used to emphasize that it was significant that it was Herodias's own daughter who danced at the dinner.

came in

"came into the room"

Mark 6:23

Whatever you ask ... my kingdom

"I will give you whatever you ask me to give to you, even half of what I own and rule, if you ask for that"

Mark 6:24

went out

"went out of the room"

Mark 6:25

on a wooden platter

"on a board" or "on a large wooden dish"

Mark 6:26

because of the oath he had made

The oath was what Herod swore to the girl in verse 23.  
Alternate translation: "because of what he had sworn to the girl" or "because he had sworn to give the girl whatever she asked for"

and because of his dinner guests

This can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: "and because his dinner guests had heard his oath"

Mark 6:27

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 6:28

on a platter

"on a tray"

Mark 6:29

When his disciples

"When John's disciples"

Mark 6:30

Connecting Statement:

After the disciples return from preaching and healing, they go somewhere to be alone, but there are many people who come to hear Jesus teach. When it becomes late, he feeds the people and then sends everyone away while he prays alone.

Mark 6:31

a deserted place

a place where there are no people

many were coming and going

This means that people were continually coming to the apostles and then going away from them.

they did not even

The word "they" refers to the apostles.

Mark 6:32

So they went away

Here the word "they" includes both the apostles and Jesus.

Mark 6:33

they saw them leaving and many recognized them, and they ran there together on foot from all the towns, and they arrived there before them

The people saw Jesus and the apostles leaving, and many of the people recognized Jesus and the apostles, and the people ran there together on foot from all the towns, and the people arrived there before Jesus and the apostles did.

on foot

The people are going on foot by land, which contrasts with how the disciples went by boat.

Mark 6:34

When they came ... on them because they were like ... to teach them

When Jesus and the disciples came ... on the people in the crowd because the people in the crowd were like ... to teach the people in the crowd

they were like sheep without a shepherd

Jesus compares the people to sheep who are confused when they do not have their shepherd to lead them.

Mark 6:35

When the hour was late

This means it was late in the day. Alternate translation: "When it was getting late" or "Late in the afternoon"

a deserted place

This refers to a place where there are no people. See how you translated this in Mark 6:31.

## Mark 6:36

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 6:37

But he answered and said to them

"But Jesus answered and said to his disciples"

Can we go and buy two hundred denarii worth of bread and give it to them to eat?

The disciples ask this question to say that there is no way they could afford to buy enough food for this crowd. Alternate translation: "We could not buy enough bread to feed this crowd, even if we had two hundred denarii!"

two hundred denarii

"200 denarii." The singular form of the word "denarii" is "denarius." A denarius was a Roman silver coin worth one day's wages.

## Mark 6:38

loaves

lumps of bread dough that have been shaped and baked

## Mark 6:39

green grass

Describe the grass with the color word used in your language for healthy grass, which may or may not be the color green.

## Mark 6:40

in groups of hundreds and fifties

This refers to the number of people in each of the groups. Alternate translation: "with about fifty people in some groups and about a hundred people in other groups"

## Mark 6:41

looking up to heaven

This means that he looked up toward the sky, which is associated with the place where God lives.

he blessed

"he spoke a blessing" or "he gave thanks"

He also divided the two fish among them all

"he divided the two fish so that everyone could have some"

## Mark 6:42

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

## Mark 6:43

They took up

Possible meaning are 1) "The disciples took up" or 2) "The people took up."

broken pieces of bread, twelve baskets full

"twelve baskets full of broken pieces of bread"

twelve baskets

"12 baskets"

## Mark 6:44

There were five thousand men who ate the loaves

Telling the number of men in the crowd hints at how large the crowd was. The women and children also ate. Alternate translation: "So many people ate the loaves of bread; the number of just the men was five thousand"

five thousand men

"5,000 men"

#### Mark 6:45

to the other side

This refers to the Sea of Galilee. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "to the other side of the Sea of Galilee"

Bethsaida

This is a town on the northern shore of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 6:46

After taking leave of them

"After saying goodbye to them" or "After they had left." Use the common words your language uses for a time when friends leave each other and expect to see each other after a few hours or days.

#### Mark 6:47

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 6:48

Connecting Statement:

A storm arises while the disciples are trying to cross the lake. Seeing Jesus walking on the water terrifies them. They do not understand how Jesus can calm the storm.

fourth watch

This is the time between 3 a.m. and sunrise.

#### Mark 6:49

a ghost

the spirit of a dead person or some other kind of spirit

#### Mark 6:50

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 6:51

They were completely amazed

If you need to be more specific, it can be stated what they were amazed by. Alternate translation: "They were completely amazed at what he had done"

#### Mark 6:52

what the loaves meant

Here the phrase "the loaves" refers to when Jesus multiplied the loaves of bread. Alternate translation: "what it meant when Jesus multiplied the loaves of bread" or "what it meant when Jesus caused the few loaves to become many"

their hearts were hardened

Having a hard heart represents being too stubborn to understand. Alternate translation: "they were too stubborn to understand"

#### Mark 6:53

Connecting Statement:

When Jesus and his disciples arrive at Gennesaret in their boat, people see him and bring people for him to heal. This happens wherever they go.

Gennesaret

This is the name of the region to the northwest of the Sea of Galilee.

#### Mark 6:54

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 6:55

they ran throughout the whole region

It may be helpful to state why they ran through the region. Alternate translation: "they ran throughout the whole district in order to tell others that Jesus was there"

they ran ... they heard

The word "they" refers to the people who recognized Jesus, not to the disciples.

the sick

This phrase refers to people. Alternate translation: "the sick people"

Mark 6:56

Wherever he entered

"Wherever Jesus entered"

they would put

Here "they" refers to the people. It does not refer to Jesus's disciples.

the sick

This phrase refers to people. Alternate translation: "the sick people"

They begged him

Possible meanings are 1) "The sick begged him" or 2) "The people begged him."

let them touch

The word "them" refers to the sick.

the edge of his garment

"the hem of his robe" or "the edge of his clothes"

as many as

"all those who"

---

7 <sup>1</sup>The Pharisees and some of the scribes who had come from Jerusalem gathered around him.

<sup>2</sup>They saw that some of his disciples ate bread with hands that were unclean, that is, unwashed.<sup>3</sup>(For the Pharisees and all the Jews do not eat unless they wash their hands carefully, because they hold to the tradition of the elders.<sup>4</sup>When the Pharisees come from the marketplace, they do not eat unless they bathe themselves, and they hold to many other things they have received, such as the washing of cups, pots, copper vessels, and the couches upon which they eat.)

<sup>5</sup>The Pharisees and the scribes asked Jesus, "Why do your disciples not walk according to the tradition of the elders, but eat their bread with unclean hands?"

<sup>6</sup>But he said to them, "Isaiah prophesied well about you hypocrites. As it is written,  
"This people honors me with their lips,  
but their heart is far from me.

<sup>7</sup> In vain they worship me,  
teaching the commands of men as their doctrines.'

<sup>8</sup>You abandon the commandment of God and hold on to the tradition of men."<sup>9</sup>He also said to them, "How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!"<sup>10</sup>For Moses said, 'Honor your father and your mother,' and, 'He who speaks evil of his father or mother will surely be put to death.'

<sup>11</sup>But you say, 'If a man says to his father or mother, "Whatever help you would have received from me is Corban"' (that is to say, 'a Gift'),<sup>12</sup> then you no longer permit him to do anything for his father or his mother.<sup>13</sup>You are making the word of God void by your tradition which you have handed down. And many similar things you do."

<sup>14</sup>He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand."<sup>15</sup>There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what comes out of the person that defiles him."<sup>16</sup>

<sup>17</sup>Now when Jesus left the crowd and entered the house, his disciples asked him about the parable.<sup>18</sup>Jesus said, "Are you also still without understanding? Do you not know that whatever enters into a person from outside cannot defile him,<sup>19</sup> because it cannot go into his heart, but it goes into his stomach and then passes out into the latrine?" With this statement Jesus declared all foods clean.

<sup>20</sup>He said, "It is that which comes out of the person that defiles him."<sup>21</sup>For from within a person, out of the heart, proceed evil thoughts, sexual immorality, theft, murder,<sup>22</sup> adultery, coveting, wickedness, deceit, sensuality, envy, slander, pride, folly.<sup>23</sup>All these evils come from within, and they are what defile a person."

<sup>24</sup>He got up from there and went away to the region of Tyre and Sidon. There he went into a house, and he wanted no one to know where he was, yet he could not be hidden.<sup>25</sup>But immediately <sup>2</sup>a woman whose little daughter had an unclean spirit heard about him and came and fell down at his feet.<sup>26</sup>Now the woman was a Greek, a Syrophoenician by descent. She begged him to cast out the demon from her daughter.

<sup>27</sup>He said to her, "Let the children first be fed. For it is not proper to take the children's bread and throw it to the dogs."

<sup>28</sup>But she answered and said to him, "Yes, Lord, even the dogs under the table eat the children's crumbs."

<sup>29</sup>He said to her, "Because of what you have said, you are free to go. The demon has gone out of your daughter."<sup>30</sup>She went back to her house and found the child lying on the bed, and the demon was gone.

<sup>31</sup>Then he went out again from the region of Tyre, and went through Sidon to the Sea of Galilee up into the region of the Decapolis.<sup>32</sup>They brought to him someone who was deaf and had difficulty speaking, and they begged him to lay his hand on him.

<sup>33</sup>Then taking him aside away from the crowd privately, he put his fingers into his ears, and then he spit and touched his tongue.<sup>34</sup>Then he looked up to heaven, sighed, and said to him, "Ephphatha," that is to say, "Open!"<sup>35</sup>At once his ears were opened, the bond of his tongue was released, and he began to speak plainly.

<sup>36</sup>Jesus ordered them to tell no one. But the more he ordered them, the more abundantly they proclaimed it.<sup>37</sup>They were extremely astonished, saying, "He has done all things well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak."



<sup>1</sup>The best ancient copies do not have verse 16. If any man has ears to hear, let him hear .  
<sup>2</sup>Some ancient copies do not have the words, But immediately .

---

# Mark 7 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 7:6-7, which is from the Old Testament.

## Special concepts in this chapter

### Hand washing

The Pharisees washed many things that were not dirty because they were trying to make God think that they were good. They washed their hands before they ate, even when their hands were not dirty, though the law of Moses did not say that they had to do it. Jesus told them that they were wrong and that people make God happy by thinking and doing the right things. (See: lawofmoses and clean)

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

### "Ephphatha"

This is an Aramaic word. Mark wrote it the way it sounds using Greek letters and then explained what it means.

## Links:

- [Mark 7:1 Notes](#)
- 

### Mark 7:1

#### Connecting Statement:

Jesus rebukes the Pharisees and scribes.

gathered around him

"gathered around Jesus"

### Mark 7:2

They saw

"The Pharisees and the scribes saw"

that is, unwashed

The word "unwashed" explains why the disciples' hands were defiled. It can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: "that is, with hands that they had not washed" or "that is, they had not washed their hands"

### Mark 7:3

#### General Information:

In verses 3 and 4, the author gives background information about the Pharisees' washing traditions in order to show why the Pharisees were bothered that Jesus's disciples did not wash their hands before eating. If you need to reorder the events in these verses, it may be helpful to use a verse bridge, as in the UDB.

For the Pharisees and all the Jews do not eat unless they wash their hands carefully

The words "do not" and "unless" are a double negative. This can be stated in a positive way. Alternate translation: "For the Pharisees and all the Jews eat only after they wash their hands carefully"

unless they wash their hands carefully

This kind of hand washing was an important ceremonial or religious act, not just an act of making ones hands clean physically. The Jews washed their

hands carefully to obey all religious traditions and rules about cleanness. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "unless they make their hands ceremonially clean"

elders

Jewish elders were leaders in their communities and were also judges for the people.

Mark 7:4

they hold to many other things they have received

The words "things they have received" refers to traditions that they learned from their elders. Alternate translation: "they follow many other traditions" or "they do many other things that they were taught to do"

copper vessels

"copper kettles" or "metal containers"

the couches upon which they eat

"benches" or "beds." At that time, the Jews would recline when eating.

Mark 7:5

Why do your disciples not walk according to the tradition of the elders, but eat their bread with unclean hands?

Here "walk according to" is a metaphor for "obey." The Pharisees and scribes asked this question to challenge Jesus's authority. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Your disciples should not disobey the traditions of our elders by eating their bread with unclean hands."

unclean

The hands were ritually unclean because the disciples had not performed the ceremonial washing. The Pharisees were not accusing them of eating with physical dirt on their hands.

bread

This is a synecdoche, representing food in general. Alternate translation: "food"

Mark 7:6

General Information:

Here Jesus quotes the prophet Isaiah, who had written scripture many years earlier.

with their lips

Here "lips" is a metonym for speaking. Alternate translation: "by what they say"

but their heart is far from me

Here "heart" refers to a person's thoughts or emotions. This is a way of saying the people are not truly devoted to God. Alternate translation: "but they do not really love me"

Mark 7:7

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 7:8

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to rebuke the scribes and Pharisees.

You abandon the commandment of God

"You refuse to obey the commandment of God"

hold on to

This phrase is a metaphor for strictly obeying. Alternate translation: "strictly obey"

Mark 7:9

How well you reject the commandment ... keep your tradition

Jesus uses this ironic statement to rebuke his listeners for forsaking God's commandment. Alternate translation: "You think you have done well in how you have rejected the commandment of God so you may keep your own traditions, but what you have done is not good at all"

How well you reject

"How skillfully you reject"

## Mark 7:10

He who speaks evil of his father or mother will surely be put to death

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The authorities must execute a person who speaks evil about his father or mother"

who speaks evil of

"who curses"

## Mark 7:11

General Information:

In verses 11 and 12, Jesus shows how the Pharisees teach people that they do not have to obey God's commandment to honor their parents. In verse 11 Jesus tells what the Pharisees allow people to say about their possessions, and in verse 12 he tells how that affects what people do for their parents.

is Corban

"Corban" is a Hebrew word that refers to things that people promise to give to God. Translators normally transliterate it using the target language alphabet. Some translators translate its meaning, and then leave out Mark's explanation of the meaning that follows. Alternate translation: "is a gift to God" or "belongs to God"

Whatever help you would have received from me is Corban

A person might say this so that he would not have to give anything to help his parents. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "I will not help you, because whatever help you would have received from me is Corban"

a Gift

This phrase explains the meaning of the Hebrew word "Corban." Mark explained the meaning so that his non-Jewish readers could understand what Jesus said. This seems to have been the proper name of a sacrifice. You may need to make explicit who the gift was given to. Alternate translation: "a Gift to God"

## Mark 7:12

then you no longer permit him to do anything for his father or his mother

Possible meanings are that by telling people that they could say that their possessions are Corban, 1) the Pharisees did not allow people to help their parents, or 2) the Pharisees allowed people to refuse to help their parents. Alternate translation: "then you permit him to do nothing for his father or his mother"

then you no longer permit him to do anything for his father or his mother

Here "do anything" refers to helping his parents by giving to them. This can be translated as "then you no longer permit him to give anything to his father or his mother" or "then you permit him to give nothing to his father or his mother"

## Mark 7:13

the word of God

Jesus is speaking specifically of the command to love father and mother. Alternate translation: "God's command"

void

canceled or done away with

many similar things you do

"you are doing many other things similar to this"

## Mark 7:14

Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable to the crowd to help them understand what he has been saying to the scribes and Pharisees.

He called

"Jesus called"

Listen to me, all of you, and understand

The words "Listen" and "understand" are related. Jesus uses them together to emphasize that his hearers should pay close attention to what he is saying.

understand

It may be helpful to state what Jesus is telling them to understand. Alternate translation: "try to understand what I am about to tell you"

Mark 7:15

nothing from outside of a person

Jesus is speaking about what a person eats. This is in contrast to "what comes out of the person." Alternate translation: "nothing from outside a person that he can eat"

It is what comes out of the person

This refers to the things a person does or says. This is in contrast to what is "outside a person that ... enters into him." Alternate translation: "It is what comes out of a person that he says or does"

Mark 7:16

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 7:17

Connecting Statement:

The disciples still do not understand what Jesus has just said to the scribes, Pharisees, and crowds. Jesus explains his meaning more thoroughly to them.

Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story. Jesus is now away from the crowd, in a house with his disciples.

Mark 7:18

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach his disciples by asking a question.

Are you also still without understanding?

Jesus uses this question to express his disappointment that they do not understand. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "After all I have said and done, I would expect you to understand."

Mark 7:19

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes asking the question he is using to teach his disciples.

because ... latrine?

This is the end of the question that begins with the words "Do you not see" in verse 18. Jesus uses this question to teach his disciples something they should already know. It can be expressed as a statement. "You should already understand that whatever enters into a person from outside cannot defile him, because it cannot go into his heart, but it goes into his stomach and then passes out into the latrine."

it cannot go into his heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's inner being or mind. Here Jesus means that food does not affect a person's character. Alternate translation: "it cannot go into his inner being" or "it cannot go into his mind"

because it

Here "it" refers to what goes into a person; that is, what a person eats.

all foods clean

It may be helpful to explain clearly what this phrase means. Alternate translation: "all foods clean, meaning that people can eat any food without God considering the eater defiled"

Mark 7:20

He said

"Jesus said"

It is that which comes out of the person that defiles him

"What defiles a person is what comes out of him"

Mark 7:21

out of the heart, proceed evil thoughts

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's inner being or mind. Alternate translation: "out of the inner being, come evil thoughts" or "out of the mind, come evil thoughts"

#### Mark 7:22

sensuality

not controlling one's lustful desires

slander

or blasphemy

#### Mark 7:23

come from within

Here the word "within" describes a person's heart. Alternate translation: "come from within a person's heart" or "come from within a person's thoughts"

#### Mark 7:24

Connecting Statement:

When Jesus goes away to Tyre, he heals the daughter of a Gentile woman who has extraordinary faith.

#### Mark 7:25

had an unclean spirit

This is an idiom meaning that she was possessed by the unclean spirit. Alternate translation: "was possessed by an unclean spirit"

fell down

"knelt." This is an act of honor and submission.

#### Mark 7:26

Now the woman was a Greek, a Syrophoenician by descent

The word "Now" is used here to mark a pause in the story, as the author gives us background information about the woman.

Syrophoenician

This is the name of the woman's nationality. She was born in the Phoenician region in Syria.

#### Mark 7:27

Let the children first be fed. For it is not proper ... throw it to the dogs

Here Jesus speaks about the Jews as if they are children and the Gentiles as if they are dogs. Alternate translation: "Let the children of Israel first be fed. For it is not right to take the children's bread and throw it to the Gentiles, who are like dogs"

Let the children first be fed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "We must first feed the children of Israel"

proper

morally right

bread

This refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "food"

dogs

This refers to small dogs kept as pets.

#### Mark 7:28

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 7:29

you are free to go

Jesus was implying that she no longer needed to stay to ask him to help her daughter. He would do it. Alternate translation: "you may go now" or "you may go home in peace"

The demon has gone out of your daughter

Jesus has caused the unclean spirit to leave the woman's daughter. This can be expressed clearly. Alternate translation: "I have caused the evil spirit to leave your daughter"

Mark 7:30

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 7:31

Connecting Statement:

After healing people in Tyre, Jesus goes to the Sea of Galilee. There he heals a deaf man, which amazes the people.

went out again from the region of Tyre

"left the region of Tyre"

up into the region

Possible meanings are 1) "in the region" as Jesus is at the sea in the region of the Decapolis or 2) "through the region" as Jesus went through the region of the Decapolis to get to the sea.

Decapolis

This is the name of a region that means Ten Cities. It is located to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee. See how you translated this in [Mark 5:20]

Mark 7:32

They brought

"And people brought"

who was deaf

"who was not able to hear"

they begged him to lay his hand on him

Prophets and teachers would put their hands on people in order to heal them or bless them. In this case, people are begging Jesus to heal a man. Alternate translation: "they begged Jesus to put his hand on the man to heal him"

Mark 7:33

Then taking him ... privately, he

"Then Jesus took the man ... privately, and he"

he put his fingers into his ears

Jesus is putting his own fingers in the man's ears.

then he spit and touched his tongue

It may be helpful to state that Jesus spit on his fingers. Alternate translation: "then he spit on his fingers and touched the man's tongue with them"

Mark 7:34

looked up to heaven

This means that he looked up toward the sky, which is associated with the place where God lives.

sighed

This means that Jesus groaned or that he let out a long deep breath that could be heard.

said to him

"said to the man"

Ephphatha

This is an Aramaic word. It should be copied into your language using your alphabet.

Mark 7:35

his ears were opened

This means he was able to hear. Alternate translation: "his ears were opened and he was able to hear" or "he was able to hear"

the bond of his tongue was released

This metaphor speaks of the man's tongue as if it were bound by a rope or chain that kept the man from speaking and that Jesus broke or loosened so the man could speak. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus released the bond of his tongue" or "Jesus set his tongue free" or "Jesus enabled the man to speak"

#### Mark 7:36

But the more he ordered them, the more abundantly they proclaimed it

The refers to him ordering them not to tell anyone about what he had done. Alternate translation: "But though he continually ordered them not to tell anyone, they continually proclaimed it"

the more abundantly

"the more widely" or "the more"

#### Mark 7:37

were extremely astonished

"were utterly amazed" or "were exceedingly astonished" or "were astonished beyond all measure"

the deaf hear and the mute speak

These refer to people. Alternate translation: "the deaf people hear and the mute people speak" or "people who cannot hear, hear, and people who cannot speak, speak"

<sup>8</sup> <sup>1</sup>In those days, there was again a great crowd, and they had nothing to eat. Jesus called his disciples and said to them, <sup>2</sup>"I have compassion on the crowd because they continue to be with me already for three days and have nothing to eat. <sup>3</sup>If I send them away to their home without eating, they may faint on the way. Some of them have come a long way."

<sup>4</sup>His disciples answered him, "Where can we get enough loaves of bread in such a deserted place to satisfy these people?"

<sup>5</sup>He asked them, "How many loaves do you have?"

They said, "Seven."

<sup>6</sup>He commanded the crowd to sit down on the ground. He took the seven loaves, gave thanks, and broke them. He gave them to his disciples to set before them, and they set them before the crowd.

<sup>7</sup>They also had a few small fish, and after he gave thanks for them, he commanded the disciples to serve these as well. <sup>8</sup>They ate and were satisfied, and they picked up the remaining broken pieces, seven large baskets. <sup>9</sup>There were about four thousand people. Then he sent them away. <sup>10</sup>Immediately he got into the boat with his disciples, and they went into the region of Dalmanutha.

<sup>11</sup>Then the Pharisees came out and began to argue with him. They sought from him a sign from heaven, to test him. <sup>12</sup>He sighed deeply in his spirit and said, "Why does this generation seek for a sign? Truly I say to you, no sign will be given to this generation." <sup>13</sup>Then he left them, got into a boat again, and went away to the other side.

<sup>14</sup>Now the disciples had forgotten to take bread with them. They had no more than one loaf of bread in the boat.

<sup>15</sup>He instructed them, saying, "Keep watch and be on guard against the yeast of the Pharisees and the yeast of Herod."

<sup>16</sup>The disciples were arguing with one another about having no bread.

<sup>17</sup>When he understood this, he asked them, "Why are you arguing about having no bread? Do you still not see or understand? Do you have hardened hearts?"

<sup>18</sup>You have eyes; do you not see? You have ears; do you not hear? Do you not remember? <sup>19</sup>When I broke the five loaves among the five thousand, how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you take up?"

They said to him, "Twelve."

<sup>20</sup>"When I broke the seven loaves among the four thousand, how many basketfuls of broken pieces of bread did you take up?"

They said to him, "Seven."

<sup>21</sup>He said, "Do you not yet understand?"

<sup>22</sup>They came to Bethsaida. The people there brought to him a blind man and begged Jesus to touch him. <sup>23</sup>Jesus took hold of the blind man by the hand and led him out of the village. When he had spit on his eyes and laid his hands on him, he asked him, "Do you see anything?"

<sup>24</sup>He looked up, and said, "I see men who look like walking trees."

<sup>25</sup>Then he again laid his hands upon his eyes, and the man opened his eyes, his sight was restored, and he saw all things clearly. <sup>26</sup>Jesus sent him away to his home and said, "Do not enter the village."

<sup>27</sup>Jesus went out with his disciples into the villages of Caesarea Philippi. On the way he asked his disciples, "Who do the people say that I am?"

<sup>28</sup>They answered him and said, "John the Baptist. Others say, 'Elijah,' and others, 'One of the prophets.'"

<sup>29</sup>He asked them, "But who do you say that I am?"



Peter said to him, "You are the Christ."

<sup>30</sup>Jesus warned them not to tell anyone about him.

<sup>31</sup>He began to teach them that the Son of Man must suffer many things, and would be rejected by the elders and the chief priests and the scribes, and would be killed, and after three days rise up. <sup>32</sup>He spoke that message openly. Then Peter took him aside and began to rebuke him.

<sup>33</sup>But Jesus turned and looked at his disciples and then he rebuked Peter and said, "Get behind me, Satan! You are not setting your mind on the things of God, but on the things of people."<sup>34</sup>Then he called the crowd and his disciples together, and he said to them, "If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.

<sup>35</sup>For whoever wants to save his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake and for the gospel will save it. <sup>36</sup>What does it profit a person to gain the whole world and then forfeit his life? <sup>37</sup>What can a person give in exchange for his life?

<sup>38</sup>Whoever is ashamed of me and my words in this adulterous and sinful generation, the Son of Man will be ashamed of him when he comes in the glory of his Father with the holy angels."

---

## Mark 8 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Bread

When Jesus worked a miracle and provided bread for a large crowd of people, they probably thought about when God miraculously provided food for the people of Israel when they were in the wilderness.

Yeast is the ingredient that causes bread to become larger before it is baked. In this chapter, Jesus uses yeast as a metaphor for things that change the way people think, speak, and act.

#### "Adulterous generation"

When Jesus called the people an "adulterous generation," he was telling them that they were not faithful to God. (See: faithful and people of God)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Rhetorical Questions

Jesus used many rhetorical questions as a way of both teaching the disciples

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus uses a paradox when he says, "Whoever wants to save his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake will find it" ([Mark 8:35-37](#)).

### Links:

- [Mark 8:1 Notes](#)
-

#### Mark 8:1

Connecting Statement:

A great, hungry crowd is with Jesus. He feeds them using only seven loaves and a few fish before Jesus and his disciples get in a boat to go to another place.

In those days

This phrase is used to introduce a new event in the story.

#### Mark 8:2

they continue to be with me already for three days and have nothing to eat

"this is this third day these people have been with me, and they have nothing to eat"

#### Mark 8:3

they may faint

Possible meanings are 1) literal, "they may lose consciousness temporarily" or 2) hyperbolic exaggeration, "they may become weak."

#### Mark 8:4

Where can we get enough loaves of bread in such a deserted place to satisfy these people?

The disciples are expressing surprise that Jesus would expect them to be able to find enough food. Alternate translation: "This place is so deserted that there is no place here for us to get enough loaves of bread to satisfy these people!"

loaves of bread

Loaves of bread are lumps of dough that have been shaped and baked.

#### Mark 8:5

He asked them

"Jesus asked his disciples"

#### Mark 8:6

He commanded the crowd to sit down on the ground.

This can be written as a direct quote. "Jesus commanded the crowd, 'Sit down on the ground.'"

sit down

Use your language's word for how people customarily eat when there is no table, whether sitting or lying down.

#### Mark 8:7

They also had

Here the word "they" is used to refer to Jesus and his disciples.

he gave thanks for them

"Jesus gave thanks for the fish"

#### Mark 8:8

They ate

"The people ate"

they picked up

"the disciples picked up"

the remaining broken pieces, seven large baskets

This refers to the broken pieces of fish and bread that were left over after the people ate. Alternate translation: "the remaining broken pieces of bread and fish, which filled seven large baskets"

#### Mark 8:9

Then he sent them away

It may be helpful to clarify when he sent them away. Alternate translation: "After they ate, Jesus sent them away"

## Mark 8:10

they went into the region of Dalmanutha

It may be helpful to clarify how they got to Dalmanutha. Alternate translation: "they sailed around the Sea of Galilee to the region of Dalmanutha"

Dalmanutha

This is the name of a place on the northwestern shore of the Sea of Galilee.

## Mark 8:11

Connecting Statement:

In Dalmanutha, Jesus refuses to give the Pharisees a sign before he and his disciples get in a boat and leave.

They sought from him

"They asked him for"

a sign from heaven

They wanted a sign that would prove that Jesus's power and authority were from God. Possible meanings are 1) The word "heaven" is a metonym for God. Alternate translation: "a sign from God" or 2) the word "heaven" refers to the sky. Alternate translation: "a sign from the sky"

to test him

The Pharisees tried to test Jesus to make him prove that he was from God. Some information can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "to prove that God had sent him"

## Mark 8:12

He sighed deeply in his spirit

This means that he groaned or that he let out a long deep breath that could be heard. It probably shows Jesus's deep sadness that the Pharisees refused to believe him. See how you translated this in Mark 7:34.

in his spirit

"in himself"

Why does this generation seek for a sign?

Jesus is scolding them. This question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This generation should not seek a sign."

this generation

When Jesus speaks of "this generation," he is referring to the people who lived at that time. The Pharisees are included in this group. Alternate translation: "you and the people of this generation"

no sign will be given

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will not give a sign"

## Mark 8:13

he left them, got into a boat again

Jesus's disciples went with him. Some information can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "he left them, got into a boat again with his disciples"

to the other side

This describes the Sea of Galilee, which can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "to the other side of the sea"

## Mark 8:14

Connecting Statement:

While Jesus and his disciples are in a boat, they have a discussion about the lack of understanding among the Pharisees and Herod, though they had seen many signs.

Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here the author tells background information about the disciples forgetting to bring bread.

no more than one loaf

The negative phrase "no more" is used to emphasize how small an amount of bread they had. Alternate translation: "only one loaf"

#### Mark 8:15

Keep watch and be on guard

These two terms have a common meaning and are repeated here for emphasis. They can be combined.  
Alternate translation: "Keep watch"

the yeast of the Pharisees and the yeast of Herod

Here Jesus is speaking to his disciples in a metaphor they do not understand. Jesus is comparing the Pharisees' and Herod's teachings to yeast, but you should not explain this when you translate it because the disciples themselves did not understand it.

#### Mark 8:16

no bread

The word "no" is an exaggeration. The disciples did have one loaf of bread

#### Mark 8:17

Why are you arguing about having no bread?

Here Jesus is mildly rebuking his disciples because they should have understood what he had been talking about. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not be thinking that I am talking about actual bread."

Do you still not see or understand?

These questions have the same meaning and are used together to emphasize that they do not understand. This can be written as one question or as a statement. Alternate translation: "Do you not yet understand?" or "You should perceive and understand by now the things I say and do."

Do you have hardened hearts?

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's mind and "hardened" is a metaphor for not being able or willing to understand something. Jesus uses a question to scold the disciples. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are so slow to understand what I mean!" or "You are unwilling to understand what I mean!"

#### Mark 8:18

You have eyes; do you not see? You have ears; do you not hear? Do you not remember?

Jesus continues to mildly rebuke his disciples. These questions can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "You have eyes, but you do not understand what you see. You have ears, but you do not understand what you hear. You should remember."

#### Mark 8:19

the five thousand

This refers to the 5,000 people Jesus fed. Alternate translation: "the 5,000 people"

how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you take up

It may be helpful to state when they collected the baskets of pieces. Alternate translation: "how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you collect after everyone finished eating"

#### Mark 8:20

the four thousand

This refers to the 4,000 people Jesus fed. Alternate translation: "the 4,000 people"

how many basketfuls of broken pieces of bread did you take up

It may be helpful to state when they collected these. Alternate translation: "how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you collect after everyone finished eating"

#### Mark 8:21

Do you not yet understand?

Jesus is mildly rebuking his disciples for not understanding. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should understand by now the things I say and do."

#### Mark 8:22

Connecting Statement:

When Jesus and his disciples get out of their boat at Bethsaida, Jesus heals a blind man.

Bethsaida

This is a town on the northern shore of the Sea of Galilee. See how you translated the name of this town in [Mark 6:45]

to touch him

It may be helpful to state why they wanted Jesus to touch the man. Alternate translation: "to touch him in order to heal him"

Mark 8:23

When he had spit on his eyes ... he asked him

"When Jesus had spit on the man's eyes ... Jesus asked the man"

Mark 8:24

He looked up

"The man looked up"

I see men who look like walking trees

The man sees men walking around, yet they are not clear to him, so he compares them to trees. Alternate translation: "Yes, I see people! They are walking around, but I cannot see them clearly. They look like trees"

Mark 8:25

Then he again

"Then Jesus again"

and the man opened his eyes, his sight was restored

The phrase "his sight was restored" can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "restoring the man's sight, and then the man opened his eyes"

Mark 8:26

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 8:27

Connecting Statement:

Jesus and his disciples talk on their way to the villages of Caesarea Philippi about who Jesus is and what will happen to him.

Mark 8:28

They answered him and said

"They answered him, saying,"

John the Baptist

The disciples answer that this was who some people said Jesus was. This can be shown more clearly. Alternate translation: "Some people say that you are John the Baptist"

Others say ... others

The word "others" refers to other people. This refers to their responses to Jesus's question. Alternate translation: "Other people say you are ... other people say you are"

Mark 8:29

He asked them

"Jesus asked his disciples"

Mark 8:30

Jesus warned them not to tell anyone about him.

Jesus did not want them to tell anyone that he was the Christ. This can be made more explicit. This can also be written as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "Jesus warned them not to tell anyone that he is the Christ." or "Jesus warned them, 'Do not tell anyone that I am the Christ.'"

Mark 8:31

Son of Man

This is an important title for Jesus.

would be rejected by the elders and the chief priests and the scribes, and would be killed, and after three days rise up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the elders and the chief priests and the scribes would reject him, and that men would kill him, and that after three days he would rise up"

Mark 8:32

He spoke that message openly

Possible meanings are 1) "He said this so that people could hear him" or 2) "He said this in a way that was easy to understand."

began to rebuke him

Peter rebuked Jesus for saying the things he said would happen to the Son of Man. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "began to rebuke him for saying these things"

Mark 8:33

Connecting Statement:

After rebuking Peter for his not wanting Jesus to die and rise, Jesus tells both his disciples and the crowd how to follow him.

Get behind me, Satan

Jesus means that Peter is acting like Satan because Peter is trying to prevent Jesus from accomplishing what God sent him to do. Alternate translation: "Get behind me, because you are acting like Satan"

Get behind me

"Get away from me"

Mark 8:34

follow me

Following Jesus here represents being one of his disciples. Alternate translation: "be my disciple" or "be one of my disciples"

must deny himself

"must not give in to his own desires" or "must forsake his own desires"

take up his cross, and follow me

"carry his cross and follow me." The cross represents suffering and death. Taking up the cross represents being willing to suffer and die. Alternate translation: "must obey me even to the point of suffering and dying"

follow me

Following Jesus here represents obeying him. Alternate translation: "obey me"

Mark 8:35

For whoever wants

"For anyone who wants"

life

This refers to both physical life and spiritual life.

for my sake and for the gospel

"because of me and because of the gospel." Jesus is talking about people who lose their lives because they follow Jesus and the gospel. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "because he follows me and tells others the gospel"

Mark 8:36

What does it profit a person to gain the whole world and then forfeit his life?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Even if a person gains the whole world, it will not benefit him if he forfeits his life."

to gain the whole world and then forfeit his life

This can also be expressed as a condition starting with the word "if." Alternate translation: "if he gains the whole world and then forfeits his life"

to gain the whole world

The words "the whole world" are an exaggeration for great riches. Alternate translation: "to gain everything he ever wanted"

forfeit

To forfeit something is to lose it or to have another person take it away.

Mark 8:37

What can a person give in exchange for his life?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "There is nothing a person can give in exchange for his life." or "No one can give anything in exchange for his life."

What can a person give

If in your language "giving" requires someone to receive what is given, "God" can be stated as the receiver. Alternate translation: "What can a person give to God"

Mark 8:38

ashamed of me and my words

"ashamed of me and my message"

in this adulterous and sinful generation

Jesus speaks of this generation as "adulterous," meaning that they are unfaithful in their relationship with God. Alternate translation: "in this generation of people who have committed adultery against God and are very sinful" or "in this generation of people who are unfaithful to God and are very sinful"

the Son of Man will be ashamed

Jesus speaks of himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, will be ashamed"

when he comes

"when he comes back"

in the glory of his Father

When Jesus returns he will have the same glory as his Father.

with the holy angels

"accompanied by the holy angels"

---

9<sup>1</sup>He said to them, "Truly I say to you, there are some of you who are standing here who will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God come with power."

<sup>2</sup>Six days later, Jesus took Peter and James and John with him up a high mountain, alone by themselves. Then he was transfigured before them.<sup>3</sup>His garments became radiantly brilliant, extremely white, whiter than any bleacher on earth could bleach them.

<sup>4</sup>Then Elijah with Moses appeared to them, and they were talking with Jesus.<sup>5</sup>Peter answered and said to Jesus, "Rabbi, it is good for us to be here, and so let us make three shelters, one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah."<sup>6</sup>(For he did not know what to say, for they were terrified.)

<sup>7</sup>A cloud came and overshadowed them. Then a voice came out of the cloud, "This is my beloved Son. Listen to him."<sup>8</sup>Suddenly, when they looked around, they no longer saw anyone with them, but only Jesus.

<sup>9</sup>As they were coming down the mountain, he commanded them to tell no one what they had seen until the Son of Man had risen from the dead.<sup>10</sup>So they kept the matter to themselves, but they discussed among themselves what "rising from the dead" could mean.

<sup>11</sup>They asked him, "Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?"

<sup>12</sup>He said to them, "Elijah does come first to restore all things. Why then is it written that the Son of Man must suffer many things and be despised?"<sup>13</sup>But I say to you that Elijah has come, and they did whatever they wanted to him, just as it is written about him."

<sup>14</sup>When they came to the disciples, they saw a great crowd around them, and scribes were arguing with them.<sup>15</sup>As soon as they saw Jesus, the whole crowd was amazed, and as they ran up to him, they greeted him.<sup>16</sup>He asked his disciples, "What are you arguing with them about?"

<sup>17</sup>Someone in the crowd answered him, "Teacher, I brought my son to you. He has a spirit that makes him unable to speak."<sup>18</sup>It seizes him and it throws him down, and he foams at the mouth, grinds his teeth, and becomes rigid. I asked your disciples to drive it out of him, but they could not."

<sup>19</sup>He answered them, "Unbelieving generation, how long will I have to stay with you? How long will I bear with you? Bring him to me."

<sup>20</sup>They brought the boy to him. When the spirit saw Jesus, it immediately threw him into a convulsion. The boy fell on the ground and foamed at the mouth.<sup>21</sup>Jesus asked his father, "For how much time has he been like this?"

The father said, "Since childhood.

<sup>22</sup>It has often thrown him into the fire or into the waters and tried to destroy him. If you are able to do anything, have pity on us and help us."

<sup>23</sup>Jesus said to him, "'If you are able'? All things are possible for the one who believes."

<sup>24</sup>Immediately the father of the child cried out and said, "I believe! Help my unbelief!"

<sup>25</sup>When Jesus saw the crowd running to them, he rebuked the unclean spirit and said, "You mute and deaf spirit, I command you, come out of him, and never enter into him again."

<sup>26</sup>It cried out and convulsed the boy greatly and then came out. The boy looked like one who was dead, so that many said, "He is dead."<sup>27</sup>But Jesus took him by the hand and lifted him up, and the boy stood up.

<sup>28</sup>When Jesus came into the house, his disciples asked him privately, "Why could we not cast it out?"

<sup>29</sup>He said to them, "This kind cannot be cast out except by prayer."

<sup>30</sup>They went out from there and passed through Galilee. He did not want anyone to know where they were,<sup>31</sup>for he was teaching his disciples. He said to them, "The Son of Man will be given over into the hands of men, and they will put him to death. When he has been put to death, after three days he will rise again."<sup>32</sup>But they did not understand this statement, and they were afraid to ask him.



<sup>33</sup>Then they came to Capernaum. After he entered the house he asked them, "What were you discussing on the way?"<sup>34</sup>But they were silent. For they had been arguing with one another on the way about who was the greatest.<sup>35</sup>Sitting down, he called the twelve together and he said to them, "If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all and servant of all."

<sup>36</sup>He took a little child and placed him in their midst. He took him in his arms and said to them,<sup>37</sup>"Whoever receives such a child in my name receives me; whoever receives me does not receive me but the one who sent me."

<sup>38</sup>John said to him, "Teacher, we saw someone driving out demons in your name and we stopped him, because he does not follow us."

<sup>39</sup>But Jesus said, "Do not stop him, for there is no one who will do a mighty work in my name and can soon afterwards say anything bad about me.

<sup>40</sup>Whoever is not against us is for us.<sup>41</sup>Whoever gives you a cup of water to drink in my name because you belong to Christ, truly I say to you, he will not lose his reward.

<sup>42</sup>Whoever causes one of these little ones who believes in me to stumble, it would be better for him to have a large millstone tied around his neck and be thrown into the sea.<sup>43</sup>If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed than to have two hands and to go into hell, into the unquenchable fire.<sup>44</sup><sup>1</sup>

<sup>45</sup>If your foot causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life lame than to have your two feet and be thrown into hell.<sup>46</sup><sup>2</sup>

<sup>47</sup>If your eye causes you to stumble, tear it out. It is better for you to enter into the kingdom of God with one eye than to have two eyes and to be thrown into hell,<sup>48</sup> where their worm does not die, and the fire is not put out.

<sup>49</sup>For everyone will be salted with fire.<sup>50</sup>Salt is good, but if the salt has lost its saltiness, how can you make it salty again? Have salt among yourselves, and be at peace with one another."

---

<sup>1</sup>The best ancient copies do not have this phrase, and verse 44 is not included in the ULB, where their worm does not die, and the fire is not put out. This phrase does appear in verse 48.

<sup>2</sup>The best ancient copies do not have this phrase, and verse 46 is not included in the ULB, where their worm does not die, and the fire is not put out. This phrase does appear in verse 48.

---

## Mark 9 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

"transfigured"

Scripture often speaks of God's glory as a great, brilliant light. When people see this light, they are afraid. Mark says in this chapter that Jesus's clothing shone with this glorious light so that his followers could see that Jesus truly was God's Son. At the same time, God told them that Jesus was his Son. (See: glory and fear)

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

Hyperbole

Jesus said things that he did not expect his followers to understand literally. When he said, "If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off" ([Mark 9:43](#)), he was exaggerating so they would know that they should stay away from anything that caused them to sin, even if it was something they loved or thought they needed.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Elijah and Moses

Elijah and Moses suddenly appeared to Jesus, James, John, and Peter, and then they disappeared. All four of them saw Elijah and Moses, and because Elijah and Moses spoke with Jesus, the reader should understand that Elijah and Moses appeared physically.

"Son of Man"

Jesus referred to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus used a paradox when he said, "If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all and servant of all" ([Mark 9:35](#)).

## Links:

- [Mark 9:1 Notes](#)

Mark 9:1

He said to them

"Jesus said to his disciples"

the kingdom of God come with power

The kingdom of God coming represents God showing himself as king. Alternate translation: "God show himself with great power as king"

Mark 9:2

alone by themselves

The author uses the reflexive pronoun "themselves" here to emphasize that they were alone and that only Jesus, Peter, James, and John went up the mountain.

he was transfigured

"Transfigure" means for a person's outward appearance to change. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "his appearance had changed" or "he appeared very different"

before them

"in front of them"

Mark 9:3

radiantly brilliant

"shining" or "glowing." Jesus's garments were so white they were emitting or giving off light.

extremely

"very"

whiter than any bleacher on earth could bleach them

Bleaching describes the process of making natural white wool even whiter by using chemicals like bleach or ammonia. Alternate translation: "whiter than any person on earth could whiten them"

Mark 9:4

Elijah with Moses appeared

It may be helpful to state who these men are. Alternate translation: "two prophets who had lived long ago, Elijah and Moses, appeared"

they were talking

The word "they" refers to Elijah and Moses.

Mark 9:5

Peter answered and said to Jesus

"Peter said to Jesus." Here the word "answered" is used to introduce Peter into the conversation. Peter was not answering a question.

it is good for us to be here

It is not clear whether "us" refers only to Peter, James, and John, or if it refers to everyone there, including Jesus, Elijah, and Moses. If you can translate so that both options are possible, do so.

shelters

simple, temporary places in which to sit or sleep

#### Mark 9:6

For he did not know what to say, for they were terrified

This parenthetical sentence tells background information about Peter, James, and John.

they were terrified

"they were very frightened" or "they were very afraid"

#### Mark 9:7

came and overshadowed

"appeared and covered"

Then a voice came out of the cloud

Here "a voice came out" is a metonym for someone speaking. It can also be stated clearly who spoke. Alternate translation: "Then someone spoke from the cloud" or "Then God spoke from the cloud"

This is my beloved Son. Listen to him

God the Father expresses his love for his "beloved Son," the Son of God.

beloved Son

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

#### Mark 9:8

when they looked

Here "they" refers to Peter, James, and John.

#### Mark 9:9

he commanded them to tell no one ... until the Son of Man had risen

This implies that he was permitting them to tell people about what they had seen after he rose from being dead.

risen from the dead

"risen from among the dead." This speaks of becoming alive again. The phrase "the dead" refers to "dead people" and is a metonym for death. Alternate translation: "risen from death"

#### Mark 9:10

rising from the dead

"to rise from among the dead." This speaks of becoming alive again. The phrase "the dead" refers to "dead people" and is a metonym for death. Alternate translation: "rising from death"

So they kept the matter to themselves

Here "kept the matter to themselves" is an idiom that means they did not tell anyone about what they had seen. Alternate translation: "So they did not tell anyone about what they had seen"

#### Mark 9:11

Connecting Statement:

Though Peter, James, and John wondered what Jesus might mean by "rising from the dead," they asked him instead about Elijah's coming.

They asked him

The word "they" refers to Peter, James, and John.

Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come first?

Prophecy foretold that Elijah would come again from heaven. Then the Messiah, who is the Son of Man, would come to rule and reign. The disciples are confused about how the Son of Man could die and rise again. Alternate translation: "Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come before the Messiah comes?"

#### Mark 9:12

Elijah does come first to restore all things

By saying this, Jesus affirms that Elijah would come first.

Why then is it written ... be despised?

Jesus uses this question to remind his disciples that the scriptures also teach that the Son of Man must suffer and be despised. This may be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "But I also want you to consider what is written about the Son of Man. The scriptures say that he must suffer many things and be hated."

be despised

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people would hate him"

Mark 9:13

they did whatever they wanted to him

It may be helpful to state what people did to Elijah. Alternate translation: "our leaders treated him very badly, just as they wanted to do"

Mark 9:14

Connecting Statement:

When Peter, James, John, and Jesus came down from the mountain, they found the scribes arguing with the other disciples.

When they came to the disciples

Jesus, Peter, James, and John returned to the other disciples who had not gone with them up the mountain.

they saw a great crowd around them

"Jesus and those three disciples saw a great crowd around the other disciples"

scribes were arguing with them

The scribes were arguing with the disciples who had not gone with Jesus.

Mark 9:15

was amazed

It may be helpful to state why they were amazed. Alternate translation: "was amazed that Jesus had come"

Mark 9:16

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 9:17

He has a spirit

This means the boy is possessed by an unclean spirit. "He has an unclean spirit" or "He is possessed by an unclean spirit"

Mark 9:18

down, and he foams at the mouth, grinds his teeth, and becomes

A convulsion, or seizure, can cause a person to have trouble breathing or swallowing. This causes white foam to come out of the mouth. If your language has a way to describe that, you could use it. Alternate translation: "down, and bubbles come out of his mouth, and he grinds his teeth and becomes"

becomes rigid

"becomes stiff" or "his body becomes rigid"

they could not

This refers to the disciples not being about to drive the spirit out of the boy. Alternate translation: "they could not drive it out of him"

Mark 9:19

He answered them

Though it was the boy's father who made a request of Jesus, Jesus responds to the whole crowd. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Jesus responded to the crowd"

Unbelieving generation

"You unbelieving generation." Jesus calls the crowd this as he begins to respond to them.

how long will I have to stay with you? How long will I bear with you?

Jesus uses these questions to express his frustration. Both questions have the same meaning. They can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "Your unbelief tires me! I wonder how long I must bear with you."

bear with you

"endure you" or "put up with you"

Bring him to me	for the one
"Bring the boy to me"	"for the person" or "for anyone"
Mark 9:20	believes
spirit	This refers to belief in God. Alternate translation: "believes in God"
This refers to the unclean spirit. See how you translated this in Mark 9:17.	Mark 9:24
convulsion	Help my unbelief
This is the violent shaking of a person's body that can occur when that person has no control over his body.	The man is asking Jesus to help him overcome his unbelief and increase his faith. Alternate translation: "Help me when I do not believe" or "Help me have more faith"
Mark 9:21	Mark 9:25
For how much time	the crowd running to them
"How long"	This means that more people were running toward where Jesus was and that the crowd there was growing larger.
Since childhood	You mute and deaf spirit
"Since he was a small child." It may be helpful to state this as a full sentence. Alternate translation: "He has been like this since he was a small child"	The words "mute" and "deaf" can be explained. Alternate translation: "You unclean spirit, you who are causing the boy to be unable to speak and unable to hear"
Mark 9:22	Mark 9:26
have pity	It cried out
"have compassion"	"The unclean spirit cried out"
Mark 9:23	convulsed the boy greatly
'If you are able?'	"shook the boy violently"
Jesus repeated what the man had said to him. Alternate translation: "Do you say to me 'If you are able?'" or "Why do you say 'If you are able?'"	came out
'If you are able?'	It is implied that the spirit came out of the boy. Alternate translation: "came out of the boy"
Jesus used this question to rebuke the man's doubt. It can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not say to me, 'If you are able.'" or "You ask me if I am able. Of course I am able."	The boy looked like one who was dead
All things are possible for the one who believes	The boy's appearance is compared to that of a dead person. Alternate translation: "The boy appeared dead" or "The boy looked like a dead person"
"God can do anything for people who believe in him"	

so that many

"so that many people"

Mark 9:27

took him by the hand

This means that Jesus grasped the boy's hand with his own hand. Alternate translation: "grasped the boy by the hand"

lifted him up

"helped him get up"

Mark 9:28

privately

This means they were alone.

cast it out

"cast the unclean spirit out." This refers to casting the spirit out of the boy. Alternate translation: "cast the unclean spirit out of the boy"

Mark 9:29

This kind cannot be cast out except by prayer

The words "cannot" and "except" are both negative words. In some languages it is more natural to use a positive statement. Alternate translation: "This kind can be cast out only by prayer"

This kind

This describes unclean spirits. Alternate translation: "This kind of unclean spirit"

Mark 9:30

Connecting Statement:

After he heals the demon-possessed boy, Jesus and his disciples leave the house where they are staying. He takes time to teach his disciples alone.

They went out from there

"Jesus and his disciples left that region"

passed through

"traveled through" or "passed by"

Mark 9:31

for he was teaching his disciples

Jesus was teaching his disciples privately, away from the crowd. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "for he was teaching his disciples privately"

The Son of Man will be given over

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone will give the Son of Man over"

The Son of Man

Here Jesus refers to himself as the Son of Man. This is an important title for Jesus. "I, the Son of Man,"

into the hands of men

Here "hands" is a metonym for control. Alternate translation: "into the control of men" or "so that men will be able to control him"

When he has been put to death, after three days he

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After they have put him to death and three days have passed, he"

Mark 9:32

they were afraid to ask him

They were afraid to ask Jesus what his statement meant. Alternate translation: "they were afraid to ask him what it meant"

Mark 9:33

Connecting Statement:

When they come to Capernaum, Jesus teaches his disciples about being humble servants.

they came to

"they arrived at." The word "they" refers to Jesus and his disciples.

were you discussing

"were you discussing with one another"

Mark 9:34

they were silent

They were silent because they were ashamed to tell Jesus what they had been discussing. Alternate translation: "they were silent because they were ashamed"

who was the greatest

Here "the greatest" refers to "the greatest" among the disciples. Alternate translation: "who was the greatest among them"

Mark 9:35

If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all

Here the words "first" and "last" are opposites of one another. Jesus speaks of being the "most important" as being "first" and of being the "least important" as being "last." Alternate translation: "If anyone wants God to consider him to be the most important person of all, he must consider himself to be the least important of all"

of all ... of all

"of all people ... of all people"

Mark 9:36

in their midst

"among them." The word "their" refers to the crowd.

He took him in his arms

This means that he hugged the child or picked him up and placed him on his lap.

Mark 9:37

such a child

"a child like this"

in my name

This means to do something because of love for Jesus. Alternate translation: "because he loves me" or "for my sake"

the one who sent me

This refers to God, who has sent him to earth. Alternate translation: "God, who has sent me"

Mark 9:38

John said to him

"John said to Jesus"

driving out demons

"sending away demons." This refers to casting demons out of people. Alternate translation: "driving demons out of people"

in your name

Here "name" is associated with Jesus's authority and power. Alternate translation: "by the authority of your name" or "by the power of your name"

he does not follow us

This means that he is not among their group of disciples. Alternate translation: "he is not one of us" or "he does not walk with us"

Mark 9:39

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 9:40

is not against us

"is not opposing us"

is for us

It can be explained clearly what this means. Alternate translation: "is trying to achieve the same goals that we are"

#### Mark 9:41

gives you a cup of water to drink in my name because you belong to Christ

Jesus speaks about giving someone a cup of water as an example of how one person may help another. This is a metaphor for helping someone in any way.

not lose

This negative sentence emphasizes the positive meaning. In some languages, it is more natural to use a positive statement. Alternate translation: "definitely receive"

#### Mark 9:42

millstone

a large, round stone used for grinding grain into flour

#### Mark 9:43

If your hand causes you to stumble

Here "hand" is a metonym for desiring to do something sinful that you would do with your hand. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful with one of your hands"

to enter into life maimed

"to be maimed and then to enter into life" or "to be maimed before entering into life"

to enter into life

Dying and then beginning to live eternally is spoken of as entering into life. Alternate translation: "to enter into eternal life" or "to die and begin to live forever"

maimed

missing a body part as a result of having it removed or being injured. Here it refers to missing a hand. Alternate translation: "without a hand" or "missing a hand"

into the unquenchable fire

"where the fire cannot be put out"

#### Mark 9:44

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 9:45

If your foot causes you to stumble

Here the word "foot" is a metonym for desiring to do something sinful that you would do with your feet, such as going to a place you should not go to. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful with one of your feet"

to enter into life lame

"to be lame and then to enter into life" or "to be lame before entering into life"

to enter into life

Dying and then beginning to live eternally is spoken of as entering into life. Alternate translation: "to enter into eternal life" or "to die and begin to live forever"

lame

"unable to walk easily." Here it refers not being able to walk well because of missing a foot. Alternate translation: "without a foot" or "missing a foot"

be thrown into hell

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for God to throw you into hell"

#### Mark 9:46

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 9:47

If your eye causes you to stumble, tear it out

Here the word "eye" is a metonym for either 1) desiring to sin by looking at something. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful by looking at something, tear your eye out" or 2) Desiring to sin because of what you have looked at. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful because of what you look at, tear your eye out"



to enter into the kingdom of God with one eye than to have two eyes

This refers to the state of a person's physical body when he dies. A person does not take his physical body with him into eternity. Alternate translation: "to enter into the kingdom of God after having lived on earth with only one eye than to have lived on earth with two eyes"

to be thrown into hell

This can be stated in the active form. Alternate translation: "for God to throw you into hell"

Mark 9:48

where their worm does not die

The meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "where worms that eat people there do not die"

Mark 9:49

everyone will be salted with fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will salt everyone with fire" or "Just as salt purifies a sacrifice, God will purify everyone by allowing them to suffer"

will be salted with fire

Here "fire" is a metaphor for suffering, and putting salt on people is a metaphor for purifying them. So "will be salted with fire" is a metaphor for being purified through suffering. Alternate translation: "will be made pure in the fire of suffering" or "will suffer in order to be purified as a sacrifice is purified with salt"

Mark 9:50

its saltiness

"its salty taste"

how can you make it salty again?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "you cannot make it salty again."

salty again

"taste salty again"

Have salt among yourselves

Jesus speaks of doing good things for one another as if good things were salt that people possess. Alternate translation: "Do good to each other, like salt adds flavor to food"

**10** <sup>1</sup>Jesus left that place and went to the region of Judea and to the area beyond the Jordan River, and the crowds came to him again. He was teaching them again, as he was accustomed to do.<sup>2</sup> Then Pharisees came to him to test him and asked, "Is it lawful for a husband to divorce his wife?"

<sup>3</sup>He answered, "What did Moses command you?"

<sup>4</sup>They said, "Moses allowed a man to write a certificate of divorce and then to send her away."

<sup>5</sup>"It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law," Jesus said to them. <sup>6</sup>"But from the beginning of creation, 'God made them male and female.'

<sup>7</sup> 'For this reason

a man will leave his father and mother  
and be united to his wife,

<sup>8</sup> and the two will become one flesh.'

So they are no longer two, but one flesh.

<sup>9</sup>Therefore what God has joined together, let no man tear apart."

<sup>10</sup>When they were in the house, the disciples asked him again about this.<sup>11</sup> He said to them, "Whoever divorces his wife and marries another woman commits adultery against her.<sup>12</sup> If she divorces her husband and marries another man, she commits adultery."

<sup>13</sup>Then they brought their little children to him so that he might touch them, but the disciples rebuked them.<sup>14</sup> But when Jesus noticed it, he was angry and said to them, "Permit the little children to come to me, and do not forbid them, for the kingdom of God belongs to those who are like them.

<sup>15</sup>Truly I say to you, whoever will not receive the kingdom of God as a little child will definitely not enter it."<sup>16</sup> Then he took the children into his arms and blessed them as he placed his hands on them.

<sup>17</sup>When he began his journey, a man ran up to him and knelt before him and asked, "Good Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?"

<sup>18</sup>Jesus said, "Why do you call me good? No one is good except God alone.<sup>19</sup> You know the commandments: 'Do not murder, do not commit adultery, do not steal, do not testify falsely, do not defraud, honor your father and mother.'"

<sup>20</sup>The man said, "Teacher, all these things I have obeyed from the time I was a youth."

<sup>21</sup>Jesus looked at him and loved him. He said to him, "One thing you lack. You must sell all that you have and give it to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven. Then come, follow me."<sup>22</sup> But because of this statement he looked very sad and he went away sorrowful, because he had many possessions.

<sup>23</sup>Jesus looked around and said to his disciples, "How difficult it is for those who are rich to enter the kingdom of God!"<sup>24</sup> The disciples were astonished at his words. But Jesus said to them again, "Children, how hard it is to enter into the kingdom of God!<sup>25</sup> It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich person to enter the kingdom of God."

<sup>26</sup>They were greatly astonished and said to each other, "Then who can be saved?"

<sup>27</sup>Jesus looked at them and said, "With people it is impossible, but not with God. For all things are possible with God."

<sup>28</sup>Peter began to speak to him: "Look, we have left everything and have followed you."

<sup>29</sup>Jesus said, "Truly I say to you, there is no one who has left house or brothers or sisters or mother or father or children or lands for my sake and for the gospel<sup>30</sup> who will not receive a hundred times as much now in this age: houses and brothers and sisters and mothers and children and lands, with persecutions, and in the world to come, eternal life.<sup>31</sup> But many who are first will be last, and the last first."

<sup>32</sup>They were on the road going up to Jerusalem, and Jesus was going ahead of them. The disciples were amazed, and those who were following behind were afraid. Then Jesus took the twelve aside again and began to tell them what would soon happen to him.<sup>33</sup>"See, we are going up to Jerusalem, and the Son of Man will be given over to the chief priests and the scribes. They will condemn him to death and give him over to the Gentiles.<sup>34</sup>They will mock him, spit on him, whip him, and put him to death. But after three days he will rise."

<sup>35</sup>James and John, the sons of Zebedee, came up to him and said, "Teacher, we want you to do for us whatever we ask you."

<sup>36</sup>He said to them, "What do you want me to do for you?"

<sup>37</sup>They said, "Allow us to sit with you in your glory, one at your right hand and the other at your left."

<sup>38</sup>But Jesus replied to them, "You do not know what you are asking. Are you able to drink the cup which I will drink or be baptized with the baptism with which I will be baptized?"

<sup>39</sup>They said to him, "We are able."

Jesus said to them, "The cup that I will drink, you will drink, and with the baptism with which I am baptized, you also will be baptized.

<sup>40</sup>But who is to sit at my right hand or at my left hand is not mine to give, but it is for those for whom it has been prepared."

<sup>41</sup>When the other ten disciples heard about this, they began to be very angry with James and John.<sup>42</sup>Jesus called them to himself and said, "You know those who are considered rulers of the Gentiles dominate them, and their high officials exercise authority over them.

<sup>43</sup>But it is not this way among you. Whoever wishes to become great among you must be your servant,<sup>44</sup>and whoever wishes to be first among you must be the slave of all.<sup>45</sup>For the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give his life as a ransom for many."

<sup>46</sup>They came to Jericho. As he left Jericho with his disciples and a great crowd, the son of Timaeus, Bartimaeus, a blind beggar, sat by the road.<sup>47</sup>When he heard that it was Jesus the Nazarene, he began to shout and to say, "Jesus, Son of David, have mercy on me!"

<sup>48</sup>Many rebuked the blind man, telling him to be quiet. But he cried out all the more, "Son of David, have mercy on me!"

<sup>49</sup>Jesus stopped and commanded him to be called. They called the blind man, saying, "Be brave! Get up! He is calling for you."<sup>50</sup>He threw aside his coat, sprang up, and came to Jesus.

<sup>51</sup>Jesus answered him and said, "What do you want me to do for you?"

The blind man said, "Rabboni, I want to receive my sight."

<sup>52</sup>Then Jesus said to him, "Go. Your faith has healed you." Immediately he could see again, and he followed him on the road.

---

## Mark 10 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted material in 10:7-8.

Special concepts in this chapter

Jesus's teaching about divorce

The Pharisees wanted to find a way to make Jesus say that it is good to break the law of Moses, so they asked him about divorce. Jesus tells how God originally designed marriage to show that the Pharisees taught wrongly about divorce.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Metaphors are pictures of visible objects that speakers use to explain invisible truths. When Jesus spoke of "the cup which I will drink," he was speaking of the pain he would suffer on the cross as if it were a bitter, poisonous liquid in a cup.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus used a paradox when he said, "Whoever wishes to become great among you must be your servant" ([Mark 10:43](#)).

Links:

- [Mark 10:1 Notes](#)

Mark 10:1

Connecting Statement:

After Jesus and his disciples leave Capernaum, Jesus reminds the Pharisees, as well as his disciples, what God really expects in marriage and divorce.

Jesus left that place

Jesus's disciples were traveling with him. They were leaving Capernaum. Alternate translation: "Jesus and his disciples left Capernaum"

and to the area beyond the Jordan River

"and to the land on the other side of the Jordan River" or "and to the area east of the Jordan River"

He was teaching them again

The word "them" refers to the crowds.

he was accustomed to do

"was his custom" or "he usually did"

Mark 10:2

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 10:3

What did Moses command you

Moses gave the law to their ancestors, which they now were also supposed to follow. Alternate translation: "What did Moses command your ancestors about this"

Mark 10:4

a certificate of divorce

This was a paper saying that the woman was no longer his wife.

Mark 10:5

"It was because ... this law," Jesus said to them.

In some languages speakers do not interrupt a quote to say who is speaking. Rather they say who is speaking at

the beginning or end of the complete quote. Alternate translation: "Jesus said to them, 'It was because ... this law.'"

because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law

Long before this time, Moses wrote this law for the Jews and their descendants because they had hard hearts. The Jews of Jesus's time also had hard hearts, so Jesus included them by using the words "your" and "you." Alternate translation: "because your ancestors had hard hearts like yours that he wrote this law"

your hard hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's inner being or mind. The phrase "hard hearts" is a metaphor for "stubbornness." Alternate translation: "your stubbornness"

Mark 10:6

God made them

"God made people"

Mark 10:7

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to quote what God said in the book of Genesis.

For this reason

"Therefore" or "Because of this"

be united to his wife

"join with his wife"

Mark 10:8

and the two ... one flesh

Jesus finishes quoting what God said in the book of Genesis.

they are no longer two, but one flesh

This is a metaphor to illustrate their close union as husband and wife. Alternate translation: "the two people are like one person" or "they are no longer two, but together they are one body"

Mark 10:9

Therefore what God has joined together, let no man tear apart

The phrase "what God has joined together" refers to any married couple. Alternate translation: "Therefore since God has joined together husband and wife, let no one tear them apart"

Mark 10:10

When they were

"When Jesus and his disciples were"

were in the house

Jesus's disciples were speaking to him privately. Alternate translation: were alone in the house"

asked him again about this

The word "this" refers to the conversation that Jesus had just had with the Pharisees about divorce.

Mark 10:11

Whoever

"Anyone who"

commits adultery against her

Here "her" refers to the first woman he was married to.

Mark 10:12

she commits adultery

In this situation she commits adultery against her previous husband. Alternate translation: "she commits adultery against him" or "she commits adultery against the first man"

Mark 10:13

Connecting Statement:

When the disciples rebuke the people for bringing their little children to Jesus, he blesses the children and reminds the disciples that people must be as humble as a child to enter the kingdom of God.

Then they brought

"Now people were bringing." This is the next event in the story.

he might touch them

This means that Jesus would touch them with his hands and bless them. Alternate translation: "he might touch them with his hands and bless them" or "he might lay his hands on them and bless them"

rebuked them

"rebuked the people"

Mark 10:14

Jesus noticed it

The word "it" refers to the disciples rebuking the people who were bringing the children to Jesus.

was angry

Jesus was angry with the disciples.

Permit the little children to come to me, and do not forbid them

These two clauses have similar meanings, repeated for emphasis. In some languages it is more natural to emphasize this in another way. Alternate translation: "Be sure to allow the little children to come to me"

do not forbid

"allow"

for the kingdom of God belongs to those who are like them

The kingdom belonging to people represents the kingdom including them. Alternate translation: "the kingdom of God includes people who are like them" or "because only people like them are members of the kingdom of God"

Mark 10:15

whoever will not receive ... child will definitely not enter it

"if anyone will not receive ... child, he will definitely not enter it"

as a little child

Jesus is comparing how people must receive the kingdom of God to how little children would receive it. Alternate translation: "in the same manner as a little child would"

will not receive the kingdom of God

"will not accept God as their king"

definitely not enter it

The word "it" refers to the kingdom of God.

Mark 10:16

he took the children into his arms

"he hugged the children"

Mark 10:17

to inherit eternal life

Here the man speaks of "receiving" as if it were "inheriting." This metaphor is used to emphasize the importance of receiving. Also, "inherit" here does not mean that someone has to die first. Alternate translation: to receive eternal life"

Mark 10:18

Why do you call me good?

Jesus asks this question to remind the man that no man is good the way God is good. Alternate translation: "You do not understand what you are saying when you call me good."

No one is good except God alone

This double negative emphasizes that God is the only one who is good. Alternate translation: "The only one who is good is God"

Mark 10:19

do not testify falsely

"do not testify falsely against anyone" or "do not lie about someone in court"

Mark 10:20

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 10:21

One thing you lack

"There is one thing you are missing." Here "lack" is a metaphor for needing to do something. Alternate translation: "One thing you need to do" or "There is one thing you have not yet done" or

give it to the poor

Here the word "it" refers to the things he sells and is a metonym for the money he receives when he sells them. Alternate translation: "give the money to the poor"

the poor

This refers to poor people. Alternate translation: "poor people"

treasure

wealth, valuable things

Mark 10:22

had many possessions

"owned many things"

Mark 10:23

How difficult it is

"It is very difficult"

Mark 10:24

Jesus said to them again

"Jesus said to his disciples again"

Children, how

"My children, how." Jesus is teaching them as a father would teach his children. Alternate translation: "My friends, how"

how hard it is

"it is very hard"

Mark 10:25

It is easier for a camel ... kingdom of God

It is impossible for a camel to go through the eye of a needle. Jesus uses an exaggeration to emphasize how very difficult it is for rich people to get into the kingdom of God.

It is easier for a camel

This speaks of an impossible situation. If you cannot state this in this way in your language, you can use the word "would." Alternate translation: "It would be easier for a camel"

the eye of a needle

Here "the eye" refers to the small hole in one end of a sewing needle. The thread goes through this hole and ties to the needle. Alternate translation: "the hole of a needle"

Mark 10:26

They were

"The disciples were"

Then who can be saved?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "If that is so, then no one will be saved!"

Mark 10:27

With people it is impossible, but not with God

The understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation: "It is impossible for people to save themselves, but God can save them"

Mark 10:28

Look, we have left everything and have followed you

Here the word "Look" is used to draw attention to the words that come next. Similar emphasis can be expressed in other ways. Alternate translation: "We have left everything and have followed you"

have left everything

"have left everything behind"

Mark 10:29

Truly I say to you, there is no one

This sentence ends in verse 30. It can be stated in positive form. If so, in verse 30, "who will not receive" would become "will receive." Alternate translation: "Truly I say to you, everyone"

or lands

"or plots of ground" or "or the land that he owns"

for my sake

"for my cause" or "for me"

for the gospel

"to proclaim the gospel"

Mark 10:30

who will not receive

This sentence began in verse 29. If you the sentence was stated in positive form in verse 29, verse 30 would be changed to positive form also. Alternate translation: "will receive"

this age

"the world as you know it" or "this present age"

brothers and sisters and mothers and children

Like the list in verse 29, this describes the family in general. The word "fathers" is missing in verse 30, but it does not significantly change the meaning.

with persecutions, and in the world to come, eternal life

This can be reworded so that the ideas in the abstract noun "persecution" are expressed with the verb "persecute." Because the sentence is so long and complicated, "will receive" can be repeated. Alternate translation: "and even though people persecute them, in the world to come, they will receive eternal life"

in the world to come

"in the future world" or "in the future

Mark 10:31

are first will be last, and the last first

Here the words "first" and "last" are opposites of one another. Jesus speaks of being the "important" as being "first" and of being the "unimportant" as being "last." Alternate translation: "are important will be unimportant, and those who are unimportant will be important"

the last first

The phrase "the last" refers to people who are "last." Also, the understood verb in this clause may be supplied. Alternate translation: "those who are last will be first"

Mark 10:32

They were on the road ... and Jesus was going ahead of them

"Jesus and his disciples were walking on the road ... and Jesus was in front of his disciples"

those who were following behind

"those who were following behind them." Some people were walking behind Jesus and his disciples.

Mark 10:33

See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

the Son of Man will

Jesus is speaking about himself. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, will"

the Son of Man will be given over to

The words "given over" mean "betrayed" or "put into the power of." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone will hand the Son of Man to" or "they will hand the Son of Man over to"



They will condemn

The word "They" refers to the chief priests and the scribes.

give him over to the Gentiles

"betray him to the Gentiles" or "put him under the control of the Gentiles"

Mark 10:34

They will mock

"People will mock"

put him to death

"kill him"

he will rise

This refers to rising from the dead. Alternate translation: "he will rise from being dead"

Mark 10:35

we ... us

These words refer only to James and John.

Mark 10:36

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 10:37

in your glory

"when you are glorified." The phrase "in your glory" refers to when Jesus is glorified and rules over his kingdom. Alternate translation: "when you rule in your kingdom"

Mark 10:38

You do not know

"You do not understand"

drink the cup which I will drink

Here "cup" refers to what Jesus must suffer. Suffering is often referred to as drinking from a cup. Alternate translation: "drink the cup of suffering that I will drink" or "drink from the cup of suffering that I will drink from"

be baptized with the baptism with which I will be baptized

Here "baptism" and being baptized represent suffering. Just as water covers a person during baptism, suffering will overwhelm Jesus. Alternate translation: "endure the baptism of suffering which I will suffer"

Mark 10:39

We are able

They respond this way, meaning that they are able to drink the same cup and endure the same baptism.

you will drink

"you will drink as well"

Mark 10:40

But who is to sit at my right hand or at my left hand is not mine to give

"But I am not the one who allows people to sit at my right hand or my left hand"

but it is for those for whom it has been prepared

"but those places are for those for whom they have been prepared." The word "it" refers to the places to his right hand and to his left hand.

it has been prepared

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has prepared it" or "God has prepared them"

Mark 10:41

heard about this

The word "this" refers to James and John asking to sit at Jesus's right and left hands.

Mark 10:42

Jesus called them

"Jesus called his disciples"

those who are considered rulers of the Gentiles

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) people in general consider these people the rulers of the Gentiles. Alternate translation: "those whom people consider to be the rulers of the Gentiles" or 2) the Gentiles consider these people their rulers. Alternate translation: "those whom the Gentiles think of as their rulers"

dominate

have control or power over

exercise authority

"flaunt their authority." This means that they show or use their authority in an overbearing way.

Mark 10:43

But it is not this way among you

This refers back to the previous verse about the Gentile rulers. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "But do not be like them"

become great

"be highly respected"

Mark 10:44

to be first

This is a metaphor for being the most important. Alternate translation: "to be the most important"

Mark 10:45

For the Son of Man did not come to be served

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "For the Son of Man did not come to have people serve him"

to be served, but to serve

"to be served by people, but to serve people"

for many

"for many people"

Mark 10:46

Connecting Statement:

As Jesus and his disciples continue walking toward Jerusalem, Jesus heals blind Bartimaeus, who then walks with them.

the son of Timaeus, Bartimaeus, a blind beggar

"a blind beggar named Bartimaeus, the son of Timaeus." Bartimaeus is the name of a man. Timaeus is his father's name.

Mark 10:47

When he heard that it was Jesus

Bartimaeus heard people saying that it was Jesus. Alternate translation: "When he heard people saying that it was Jesus"

Son of David

Jesus is called the Son of David because he is a descendant of King David. Alternate translation: "You who are the Messiah descended from King David"

Mark 10:48

Many rebuked

"Many people rebuked"

all the more

"even more"

Mark 10:49

commanded him to be called.

This can be translated in active form or as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "commanded others to call him." or "commanded them, 'Call him to come over here.'"

They called

The word "They" refers to the crowd.

Be brave

"Have courage" or "Do not be afraid"

He is calling for you

"Jesus is calling for you"

Mark 10:50

sprang up

"jumped up"

Mark 10:51

answered him

"answered the blind man"

---

to receive my sight

"to be able to see"

Mark 10:52

Your faith has healed you

This phrase is written this way to place emphasis on the man's faith. Jesus heals the man because he believes that Jesus can heal him. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "I am healing you because you have believed in me"

he followed him

"he followed Jesus"

**11** <sup>1</sup>Now as they came to Jerusalem, they were close to Bethphage and Bethany at the Mount of Olives, and Jesus sent out two of his disciples<sup>2</sup> and said to them, "Go into the village opposite us. As soon as you enter it, you will find a colt that has never been ridden. Untie it and bring it to me.<sup>3</sup> If anyone says to you, 'Why are you doing this?' you should say, 'The Lord has need of it and will immediately send it back here.'"

<sup>4</sup>They went away and found a colt tied at a door outside in the street, and they untied it.<sup>5</sup> Some people were standing there and said to them, "What are you doing, untying that colt?"<sup>6</sup> They spoke to them as Jesus told them, and the people let them go their way.

<sup>7</sup>They brought the colt to Jesus and threw their cloaks on it, and he sat on it.<sup>8</sup> Many people spread their garments on the road, and others spread branches they had cut from the fields.<sup>9</sup> Those who went before him and those who followed shouted,

"Hosanna! Blessed is the one  
who comes in the name of the Lord.

<sup>10</sup> Blessed is the coming kingdom of our father David!  
Hosanna in the highest!"

<sup>11</sup>Then Jesus entered into Jerusalem and went into the temple and looked around at everything. Now the time being late, he went out to Bethany with the twelve.<sup>12</sup> The next day while they were going out from Bethany, he was hungry.

<sup>13</sup>Seeing from far away a fig tree that had leaves, he went to see if he could find any fruit on it, and when he came to it, he found nothing but leaves, for it was not the season for figs.<sup>14</sup> He said to it, "No one will ever eat fruit from you again." And his disciples heard it.

<sup>15</sup>They came to Jerusalem, and he entered the temple and began to cast out the sellers and the buyers in the temple. He turned over the tables of the money changers and the seats of those who sold pigeons.<sup>16</sup> He did not allow anyone to carry anything through the temple that could be sold.

<sup>17</sup>He taught them and said, "Is it not written,  
"My house will be called  
a house of prayer for all the nations"?  
But you have made it a den of robbers."

<sup>18</sup>The chief priests and the scribes heard what he had said, and they looked for a way to destroy him. For they feared him because the entire crowd was amazed at his teaching.<sup>19</sup> When evening came, they left the city.

<sup>20</sup>As they walked by in the morning, they saw the fig tree withered away to its roots.<sup>21</sup> Peter remembered and said, "Rabbi, look! The fig tree you cursed has withered away."

<sup>22</sup>Jesus answered them, "Have faith in God.<sup>23</sup> Truly I say to you that if anyone says to this mountain, 'Get up and cast yourself into the sea,' and if he does not doubt in his heart but believes that what he said will happen, that is what God will do.

<sup>24</sup>Therefore I say to you: Everything you pray and ask for, believe that you have received it, and it will be yours.

<sup>25</sup>When you stand and pray, you must forgive whatever you have against anyone, so that your Father who is in heaven will also forgive you your trespasses."<sup>26</sup> [1](#)

<sup>27</sup>They came to Jerusalem again. As Jesus was walking in the temple, the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders came to him.<sup>28</sup> They said to him, "By what authority do you do these things, and who gave you the authority to do them?"

<sup>29</sup>Jesus said to them, "I will ask you one question. Tell me and I will tell you by what authority I do these things.

<sup>30</sup>The baptism of John—was it from heaven or from men? Answer me."

<sup>31</sup>They discussed between themselves and argued and said, "If we say, 'From heaven,' he will say, 'Why then did you not believe him?'<sup>32</sup> But if we say, 'From men,' ... ." They were afraid of the people, for everyone was convinced that John was a prophet.<sup>33</sup> Then they answered Jesus and said, "We do not know."

Then Jesus said to them, "Neither will I tell you by what authority I do these things."

# Mark 11 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 11:9-10, 17, which is from the Old Testament.

## Special concepts in this chapter

### The donkey and the colt

Jesus rode into Jerusalem on an animal. In this way he was like a king who came into a city after he had won an important battle. Also, the kings of Israel in the Old Testament rode on a donkeys. Other kings rode on horses. So Jesus was showing that he was the king of Israel and that he was not like other kings.

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about this event. Matthew and Mark wrote that the disciples brought Jesus a donkey. John wrote that Jesus found a donkey. Luke wrote that they brought him a colt. Only Matthew wrote that there were both a donkey had a colt. No one knows for sure whether Jesus rode the donkey or the colt. It is best to translate each of these accounts as it appears in the ULB without trying to make them all say exactly the same thing. (See: [Matthew 21:1-7](#) and [Mark 11:1-7](#) and [Luke 19:29-36](#) and [John 12:14-15](#))

## Links:

- [Mark 11:1 Notes](#)
- 

### Mark 11:1

that has never been ridden

Now as they came to Jerusalem, they were close to Bethphage and Bethany at the Mount of Olives

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "that no one has ever ridden"

"When Jesus and his disciples came near to Jerusalem, they came to Bethphage and Bethany, near the Mount of Olives" They have come to Bethphage and Bethany in the vicinity of Jerusalem.

### Mark 11:3

Why are you doing this

Bethphage

It can be written clearly what the word "this" refers to. Alternate translation: "Why are you untying and taking the colt"

This is the name of a village.

has need of it

### Mark 11:2

"needs it"

opposite us

will immediately send it back here

"ahead of us"

a colt

Jesus will send it back promptly when he is finished using it. Alternate translation: "will immediately send it back when he no longer needs it"

This refers to a young donkey that is large enough to carry a man.

#### Mark 11:4

They went

"The two disciples went"

colt

This refers to a young donkey that is large enough to carry a man. See how you translated this in Mark 11:2.

#### Mark 11:5

What are you doing, untying that colt?

The people wanted to know why the two men were untying the colt. They may have been concerned that the two men were doing something they should not have been doing. Alternate translation: "Why are you untying that colt?"

#### Mark 11:6

They spoke

"They responded"

as Jesus told them

"as Jesus had told them to respond." This refers to how Jesus had told them to respond to people's questions about taking the colt.

let them go their way

This means that they allowed them to continue doing what they were doing. Alternate translation: "let them take the donkey with them"

#### Mark 11:7

They brought the colt to Jesus

The word "They" refers to the two disciples.

threw their cloaks on it, and he sat on it

"laid their cloaks on its back and Jesus sat on it." It is easier to ride a colt or a horse when there is a blanket or something similar on its back. In this case, the disciples put their cloaks on it.

cloaks

"coats" or "robes"

#### Mark 11:8

Many people spread their garments on the road

It was a tradition to lay garments on the road in front of important people to honor them. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Many people spread their garments on the road to honor him"

others spread branches they had cut from the fields

It was a tradition to lay palm branches on the road in front of important people to honor them. Alternate translation: "others spread on the road branches that they had cut from the fields to honor him"

#### Mark 11:9

who followed

"who followed him"

Hosanna

This word means "save us," but people also shouted it joyfully when they wanted to praise God. You can translate it according to how it was used, or you can write "Hosanna" using your language's way of spelling that word. Alternate translation: "Praise God"

Blessed is the one

This is referring to Jesus. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Blessed are you, the one"

in the name of the Lord

This is a metonym for the Lord's authority. Alternate translation: "with the authority of the Lord"

Blessed is

"May God bless"

#### Mark 11:10

Blessed is the coming kingdom of our father David

"Blessed is our father David's coming kingdom." This refers to Jesus coming and ruling as king. The word "blessed" can be translated as an active verb. Alternate translation: "Blessed be the coming of your kingdom" or "May God bless you as you rule your coming kingdom"

of our father David

Here David's descendant who will rule is referred to as David himself. Alternate translation: "of the greatest descendant of our father David" or "that David's greatest descendant will rule"

Hosanna in the highest

Possible meanings are 1) "Praise God who is in heaven" or 2) "Let those who are in heaven shout 'Hosanna'."

the highest

Here heaven is spoken of as "the highest." Alternate translation: "the highest heaven" or "heaven"

Mark 11:11

the time being late

"because it was late in the day"

he went out to Bethany with the twelve

"he and his twelve disciples left Jerusalem and went to Bethany"

Mark 11:12

he was hungry

"Jesus was hungry"

Mark 11:13

Connecting Statement:

This happens while Jesus and his disciples are walking to Jerusalem.

if he could find any fruit on it

"if there was any fruit on it"

he found nothing but leaves

This means that he did not find any figs. Alternate translation: "he found only leaves and no figs on the tree"

the season

"the time of year"

Mark 11:14

He said to it, "No one will ever eat fruit from you again

Jesus speaks to the fig tree and curses it. He speaks to it so that his disciples hear him.

his disciples heard it

The word "it" refers to what Jesus said.

Mark 11:15

They came

"Jesus and his disciples came"

began to cast out the sellers and the buyers in the temple

Jesus is driving these people out of the temple. This can be written clearly. Alternate translation: "began to drive the sellers and buyers out of the temple"

the sellers and the buyers

"the people who were buying and selling"

Mark 11:16

to carry anything through the temple that could be sold

"to carry anything that could be sold through the temple"

Mark 11:17

General Information:

God had said earlier in his word, through the prophet Isaiah, that his temple would be a house of prayer for all the nations.

Is it not written, 'My house will be called ... the nations'?

Jesus is rebuking the Jewish leaders for their misuse of the temple. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is written in the scriptures that God said, 'I want my house to be called a house where people from all nations may pray.'"

But you have made it a den of robbers

Jesus compares the people to robbers and the temple to a robbers' den. Alternate translation: "But you are like robbers who have made my house into a robbers' den"

a den of robbers

"a cave where robbers hide"

Mark 11:18

they looked for a way

"they sought a way" or "they tried to find a way"

to destroy him

"to kill him"

Mark 11:19

When evening came

"In the evening"

they left the city

"Jesus and his disciples left the city"

Mark 11:20

Connecting Statement:

Jesus uses the example of the fig tree to remind the disciples to have faith in God.

walked by

"were walking along the road"

they saw the fig tree withered away to its roots

Translate this statement to clarify that the tree died.  
Alternate translation: "they saw that the fig tree had withered away down to its roots and died"

withered away

"dried up"

Mark 11:21

Peter remembered

It may be helpful to state what Peter remembered.  
Alternate translation: "Peter remembered what Jesus had said to the fig tree"

Mark 11:22

Jesus answered them

"Jesus replied to his disciples"

Mark 11:23

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

if he does not doubt in his heart but believes

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's mind or inner being. Alternate translation: "if he truly believes in his heart" or "if he does not doubt but believes"

God will do

"God will make happen"

Mark 11:24

Therefore I say to you

"So I tell you"

it will be yours

It is understood that this will happen because God will provide what you ask for. This can be stated clearly.  
Alternate translation: "God will give it to you"

Mark 11:25

When you stand and pray

It is common in Hebrew culture to stand when praying to God. Alternate translation: "When you pray"

whatever you have against anyone

"whatever grudge you have against anyone." Here the word "whatever" refers to any grudge you hold against someone for sinning against you or any anger you have against someone.

Mark 11:26

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.



Mark 11:27

Connecting Statement:

The next day when Jesus returns to temple, he gives the chief priests, scribes, and elders an answer to their question about his casting the money changers out of the temple area, by asking them a question that they were not willing to answer.

They came to

"Jesus and his disciples came to"

Jesus was walking in the temple

This means that Jesus was walking around inside of the temple; he was not walking into the temple.

Mark 11:28

They said to him

The word "They" refers to the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders.

By what authority do you do these things, and who gave you the authority to do them?

Possible meanings: 1) Both of these questions have the same meaning and are asked together to strongly question Jesus's authority and so can be combined. Alternate translation: "Who gave you authority to do these things?" 2) They are two separate questions, the first asking about the nature of the authority and the second about who gave it to him.

you do these things

The words "these things" refer to Jesus turning over the sellers' tables in the temple and speaking against what the chief priests and scribes taught. Alternate translation: "things like those you did here yesterday"

Mark 11:29

Tell me

"Answer me"

Mark 11:30

The baptism of John

"The baptism that John performed"

was it from heaven or from men

"was it authorized by heaven or by men"

from heaven

Here "heaven" refers to God. Alternate translation: "from God"

from men

"from people"

Mark 11:31

If we say, 'From heaven,'

This refers to the source of the baptism of John. Alternate translation: "If we say, 'It was from heaven,'"

From heaven

Here "heaven" refers to God. See how you translated this in [Mark 11:30]

not believe him

The word "him" refers to John the Baptist.

Mark 11:32

But if we say, 'From men,'

The religious leaders imply that they will suffer from the people if they give this answer. This refers to the source of the baptism of John. Alternate translation: "But if we say, 'The baptism of John was from men,'" or "But if we say, 'From men,' that would not be good." or "But we do not want to say that it was from men."

From men

"It came from a person"

They were afraid of the people

The author, Mark, explains why the religious leaders did not want to say that John's baptism was from men. This can be stated clearly. "They said this to each other because they were afraid of the people" or "They did not want to say that John's baptism was from men because they were afraid of the people"

Mark 11:33

"We do not know where the baptism of John came from"

We do not know

This refers to the baptism of John. This understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation:

---

**12** <sup>1</sup>Then Jesus began to teach them in parables. He said, "A man planted a vineyard, put a hedge around it, and dug a pit for a winepress. He built a watchtower and then leased the vineyard to vine growers. Then he went away on a journey.<sup>2</sup> At the right time, he sent a servant to the vine growers to receive from them some of the fruit of the vineyard.<sup>3</sup> But they took him, beat him, and sent him away empty-handed.

<sup>4</sup>Again he sent to them another servant, and they wounded him in the head and treated him shamefully.<sup>5</sup> He sent yet another, and this one they killed. They treated many others in the same way, beating some and killing others.<sup>6</sup> He had still one more person to send, a beloved son. He was the last one he sent to them. He said, "They will respect my son."

<sup>7</sup>"But the vine growers said to one another, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him, and the inheritance will be ours.'

<sup>8</sup>They seized him, killed him, and threw him out of the vineyard.<sup>9</sup> Therefore, what will the owner of the vineyard do? He will come and destroy the vine growers and will give the vineyard to others.

<sup>10</sup>Have you not read this scripture?

"The stone which the builders rejected  
has been made the cornerstone.

<sup>11</sup> This was from the Lord,  
and it is marvelous in our eyes."

<sup>12</sup>After this the Jewish leaders sought a way to arrest Jesus because they understood that he spoke the parable against them. But they were afraid of the crowd. So they left him and went away.

<sup>13</sup>Then they sent some of the Pharisees and the Herodians to him to trap him with words.<sup>14</sup> When they came, they said to him, "Teacher, what people think is not a concern to you because you do not show partiality to anyone. You truly teach the way of God. Is it lawful to pay taxes to Caesar or not? Should we pay or not?"

<sup>15</sup>But Jesus knew their hypocrisy and said to them, "Why do you test me? Bring me a denarius so I can look at it."

<sup>16</sup>They brought one to Jesus. He said to them, "Whose likeness and inscription is this?"

They said, "Caesar's."

<sup>17</sup>Jesus said, "Give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's, and to God the things that are God's." They marveled at him.

<sup>18</sup>Then Sadducees, who say there is no resurrection, came to him. They asked him, saying,<sup>19</sup> "Teacher, Moses wrote for us, 'If a man's brother dies and leaves a wife behind him, but had no child, the man should take the brother's wife, and raise up children for his brother.'

<sup>20</sup>There were seven brothers; the first took a wife and then died, having no children.<sup>21</sup> Then the second took her and died, leaving no child, and the third in the same way.<sup>22</sup> The seven left no children. Last of all, the woman also died.<sup>23</sup> In the resurrection, when they rise again, whose wife will she be? For all seven brothers had her as their wife."

<sup>24</sup>Jesus said, "Is this not the reason you are mistaken, because you do not know the scriptures nor the power of God?<sup>25</sup> For when they rise from the dead, they neither marry nor are given in marriage, but they are like angels in heaven.

<sup>26</sup>But concerning the dead that are raised, have you not read in the book of Moses, in the account about the bush, how God spoke to him and said, 'I am the God of Abraham and the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob'?<sup>27</sup> He is not the God of the dead, but of the living. You are quite mistaken."

<sup>28</sup>One of the scribes came and heard their discussion; he saw that Jesus answered them well. He asked him, "What commandment is the most important of all?"

<sup>29</sup>Jesus answered, "The most important is, 'Hear, Israel, the Lord our God, the Lord is one.'<sup>30</sup> You must love the Lord your God with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your mind, and with all your strength.<sup>31</sup> The second

commandment is this, 'You must love your neighbor as yourself.' There is no other greater commandment than these."

<sup>32</sup>The scribe said, "Good, Teacher! You have truly said that God is one, and that there is no other besides him.<sup>33</sup> To love him with all the heart and with all the understanding and with all the strength, and to love one's neighbor as oneself is even more than all burnt offerings and sacrifices."

<sup>34</sup>When Jesus saw that he had given a wise answer, he said to him, "You are not far from the kingdom of God." After that, no one dared to ask Jesus any more questions.

<sup>35</sup>While Jesus was teaching in the temple courts, he said, "How is it that the scribes say the Christ is the son of David?"<sup>36</sup>David himself, in the Holy Spirit, said,  
"The Lord said to my Lord,  
"Sit at my right hand  
until I put your enemies under your feet.""

<sup>37</sup>David himself calls him 'Lord,' so how can the Christ be David's son?" The large crowd gladly listened to him.

<sup>38</sup>In his teaching Jesus said, "Beware of the scribes, who like to walk in long robes and be greeted in the marketplaces,<sup>39</sup> and have the most important seats in the synagogues and the places of honor at feasts.<sup>40</sup> They also devour widows' houses, and they pray long prayers for people to see. These men will receive greater condemnation."

<sup>41</sup>Then Jesus sat down across from an offering box in the temple area; he was watching people as they dropped their money into the box. Many rich people put in large amounts of money.<sup>42</sup>Then a poor widow came and put in two mites, worth about a penny.

<sup>43</sup>He called his disciples and said to them, "Truly I say to you, this poor widow has put in more than all of them who contributed to the offering box.<sup>44</sup>For all of them gave out of their abundance. But this widow, out of her poverty, put in all of the money which she had to live on."

# Mark 12 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 12:10-11, 36, which is from the Old Testament.

## Links:

- [Mark 12:1 Notes](#)

Mark 12:1	put a hedge around it
Connecting Statement:	He put a barrier around the vineyard. It could have been a row of shrubs, a fence, or a stone wall.
Jesus speaks this parable against the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders.	dug a pit for a winepress
Then Jesus began to teach them	This means that he carved a pit on the rock, which would be the bottom part of the winepress used for collecting the squeezed grape juice. Alternate translation: "carved a pit into rock for the winepress" or "he made a vat to collect the juice from the winepress"
The word "them" here refers to the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders to whom Jesus had been talking in the previous chapter.	

leased the vineyard to vine growers

The owner still owned the vineyard, but he allowed the vine growers to take care of it. When the grapes became ripe, they were to give some of them to the owner and keep the rest.

Mark 12:2

At the right time

This refers to the time of harvest. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "When the time came to harvest the grapes"

Mark 12:3

But they took him

"But the vine growers took the servant"

empty-handed

This means that they did not give him any of the fruit. Alternate translation: "without any grapes"

Mark 12:4

he sent to them

"the owner of the vineyard sent to the vine growers"

they wounded him in the head

This can be written more clearly. Alternate translation: "they beat that one on the head, and they hurt him terribly"

Mark 12:5

yet another ... many others

These phrases refer to other servants. Alternate translation: "yet another servant ... many other servants"

They treated many others in the same way

This refers to servants that the owner sent. The phrase "in the same way" refers to them being mistreated. This can be written clearly. Alternate translation: "They also mistreated many other servants whom he sent"

Mark 12:6

a beloved son

It is implied that this is the owner's son. Alternate translation: "his beloved son"

Mark 12:7

the heir

This is the owner's heir, who would inherit the vineyard after his father died. Alternate translation: "the owner's heir"

the inheritance

The tenants are referring to the vineyard as "the inheritance." Alternate translation: "this vineyard"

Mark 12:8

They seized him

"The vine growers seized the son"

Mark 12:9

Therefore, what will the owner of the vineyard do?

Jesus asks a question and then gives the answer to teach the people. The question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "So I will tell you what the owner of the vineyard will do."

Therefore

Jesus has finished telling the parable and is now asking the people what they think will happen next.

destroy

kill

will give the vineyard to others

The word "others" refers to other vine growers who will care for the vineyard. Alternate translation: "he will give the vineyard to vine growers to care for it"

Mark 12:10

General Information:

This scripture was written long before in God's word.

Have you not read this scripture?

Jesus reminds the people of a scripture passage. He uses a rhetorical question here to rebuke them. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Surely you have read this scripture." or "You should remember this scripture."

has been made the cornerstone

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Lord made into the cornerstone"

Mark 12:11

This was from the Lord

"The Lord has done this"

it is marvelous in our eyes

Here "in our eyes" stands for seeing, which is a metaphor for the people's opinion. Alternate translation: "we have seen it and think that it is marvelous" or "we think that it is wonderful"

Mark 12:12

sought a way

"wanted to find a way"

they were afraid of the crowd

They were afraid of what the crowd would do to them if they arrested Jesus. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "but they feared what the crowd would do if they arrested him"

against them

"to accuse them"

Mark 12:13

Connecting Statement:

In an effort to trap Jesus, some of the Pharisees and Herodians, and then the Sadducees, come to Jesus with questions.

Then they sent

"Then the Jewish leaders sent"

the Herodians

This was the name of an informal political party that supported Herod Antipas.

to trap him

Here the author describes tricking Jesus as trying to "trap him." Alternate translation: "to trick him"

Mark 12:14

When they came, they said

Here "they" refers to those sent from among the Pharisees and the Herodians.

what people think is not a concern to you

The abstract noun "concern" may be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "you are not concerned about what people think of you" or "you do not try to win people's favor"

you do not show partiality to anyone

"you do not judge people by how they look" or "you judge people by what is in their hearts"

Mark 12:15

Jesus knew their hypocrisy

They were acting hypocritically. This can be explained more clearly. Alternate translation: "Jesus knew that they did not really want to know what God wanted them to do"

Why do you test me?

Jesus rebukes the Jewish leaders because they were trying to trick him. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I know you are trying to make me say something wrong so you can accuse me."

denarius

This coin was worth a day's wages.

Mark 12:16

They brought one

"The Pharisees and the Herodians brought a denarius"

likeness and inscription

"picture and name"

They said, "Caesar's

Here "Caesar's" refers to his likeness and inscription. Alternate translation: "They said, 'They are Caesar's likeness and inscription'"

Mark 12:17

Give to Caesar the things that are Caesar's

Jesus is teaching that his people must respect the government by paying taxes. This figure of speech can be clarified by changing Caesar to Roman government. Alternate translation: "Give to the Roman government the things that belong to the Roman government"

and to God

The understood verb may be supplied. Alternate translation: "and give to God"

They marveled at him

They were amazed at what Jesus had said. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "They marveled at him and at what he had said"

Mark 12:18

who say there is no resurrection

This phrase explains who the Sadducees were. This can be written more clearly. Alternate translation: "who say there is no resurrection from the dead"

Mark 12:19

Moses wrote for us, 'If a man's brother dies ... brother.'

The Sadducees are quoting what Moses had written in the law. Moses's quote can be expressed as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "Moses wrote for us that if a man's brother dies ... brother."

wrote for us

"wrote for us Jews." The Sadducees were a group of Jews. Here they use the word "us" to refer to themselves and all Jews.

the man should take the brother's wife

"the man should marry his brother's wife"

raise up children for his brother

"have a son for his brother." The man's first son would be considered to be the dead brother's son, and the son's descendants would be considered to be the dead brother's descendants. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "have a son who will be considered to be the dead brother's son"

Mark 12:20

There were seven brothers

The Sadducees tell Jesus a story because they want to ask him a question about it to test him. The story is not about things that really happened. Alternate translation: "Suppose there were seven brothers"

the first

the first brother

the first took a wife

"the first brother married a woman." Here marrying a woman is spoken of as "taking" her.

Mark 12:21

the second ... the third

These numbers refer to each of the brothers and can be expressed as such. Alternate translation: "the second brother ... the third brother"

the second took her

"the second married her." Here marrying a woman is spoken of as "taking" her.

the third in the same way

"the third brother married her as his other brothers had done, and he also died leaving no children"

Mark 12:22

The seven

This refers to all the brothers. Alternate translation: "The seven brothers"

The seven left no children

Each of the brothers married the woman and then died before he had any children with her. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Eventually all seven brothers married that woman one by one, but none of them had any children with her, and one by one they died"

Mark 12:23

In the resurrection, when they rise again, whose wife will she be?

The Sadducees are testing Jesus by asking this question. If your readers can only understand this as a request for information, this can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Now tell us whose wife she will be in the resurrection, when they all rise again."

Mark 12:24

Is this not the reason you are mistaken, because ... power of God?

Jesus rebukes the Sadducees because they are mistaken about God's law. This may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are mistaken because ... power of God."

you do not know the scriptures

This means that they do not understand what is written in the Old Testament scriptures.

the power of God

"how powerful God is"

Mark 12:25

For when they rise

Here the word "they" refers to the brothers and the woman from the example.

rise

Waking and getting up from sleep is a metaphor for becoming alive after having been dead.

from the dead

The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. To rise from among them speaks of becoming alive again. Alternate translation: "from among all those who have died"

they neither marry nor are given in marriage

"they do not marry, and they are not given in marriage"

nor are given in marriage

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "and no one gives them in marriage"

heaven

This refers to the place where God lives.

Mark 12:26

that are raised

This can be expressed with an active verb. Alternate translation: "who rise" or "who rise to live again"

the book of Moses

"the book that Moses wrote"

the account about the bush

This refers to the part of the book of Moses that tells about when God spoke to Moses out of a bush that was burning but that did not burn up. Alternate translation: "the passage about the burning bush" or "the words about the fiery bush"

the bush

This refers to a shrub, a woody plant that is smaller than a tree.

how God spoke to him

"about when God spoke to Moses"

I am the God of Abraham ... Isaac ... Jacob

This means that Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob worship God. These men have died physically, but they are still alive spiritually and still worship God.

Mark 12:27

not the God of the dead, but of the living

Here "the dead" refers to people who are dead, and "the living" refers to people who are alive. Also, the words "the God" can be stated clearly in the second phrase.



Alternate translation: "not the God of dead people, but the God of living people"

the living

This includes people who are alive physically and spiritually.

You are quite mistaken

It may be helpful to state what they are mistaken about. Alternate translation: "When you say that dead people do not rise again, you are quite mistaken"

quite mistaken

"completely mistaken" or "very wrong"

Mark 12:28

He asked him

"The scribe asked Jesus"

Mark 12:29

The most important is

"The most important" refers to the most important commandment. Alternate translation: "The most important commandment is"

Hear, Israel, the Lord our God, the Lord is one

"Listen, O Israel! The Lord our God is one Lord"

Mark 12:30

with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your mind, and with all your strength

Here "heart" and "soul" are metonyms for a person's inner being. These four phrases are used together to mean "completely" or "earnestly."

Mark 12:31

love your neighbor as yourself

Jesus uses this simile to compare how people are to love each other with the same love as they love themselves. Alternate translation: "love your neighbor as much as you love yourself"

than these

Here the word "these" refers to the two commandments that Jesus had just told the people.

Mark 12:32

Good, Teacher

"Good answer, Teacher" or "Well said, Teacher"

God is one

This means that there is only one God. Alternate translation: "there is only one God"

that there is no other

The word "God" is understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "that there is no other God"

Mark 12:33

with all the heart ... all the understanding ... all the strength

Here "heart" is a metonym for person's thoughts, feelings, or inner being. These three phrases are used together to mean "completely" or "earnestly."

to love one's neighbor as oneself

This simile compares how people are to love each other with the same love that they love themselves. Alternate translation: "to love your neighbor as much as you love yourself"

is even more than

This idiom means that something is more important than something else. In this case, these two commandments are more pleasing to God than burnt offering and sacrifices. This may be written clearly. Alternate translation: "is even more important than" or "is even more pleasing to God than"

Mark 12:34

You are not far from the kingdom of God

This can be stated in positive form. Here Jesus speaks of the man being ready to submit to God as king as being physically close to the kingdom of God, as if it were a physical place. Alternate translation: "You are close to submitting to God as king"

no one dared

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "everyone was afraid"

Mark 12:35

While Jesus was teaching in the temple courts, he said

Some time has passed and Jesus is now in the temple. This is not part of the previous conversation. Alternate translation: "Later, while Jesus was teaching in the temple area, he said to the people"

How is it that the scribes say the Christ is the son of David?

Jesus uses this question to get the people to think deeply about the Psalm he is about to quote. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Consider why the scribes say the Christ is the son of David."

the son of David

"a descendant of David"

Mark 12:36

David himself

This word "himself" refers to David and is used to place emphasis on him and what he said. Alternate translation: "It was David who"

in the Holy Spirit

This means that he was inspired by the Holy Spirit. That is, the Holy Spirit directed David in what he said. Alternate translation: "inspired by the Holy Spirit"

said, 'The Lord said to my Lord

Here David calls God "The Lord" and calls the Christ "my Lord." This can be written more clearly. Alternate translation: "said about the Christ, 'The Lord God said to my Lord'"

Sit at my right hand

Jesus is quoting a psalm. Here God is speaking to the Christ. To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "Sit in the place of honor beside me"

until I put your enemies under your feet

In this quote, God speaks of defeating enemies as putting them under the feet of the victor. Alternate translation: "until I completely defeat your enemies"

Mark 12:37

calls him 'Lord,'

Here the word "him" refers to the Christ.

so how can the Christ be David's son?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "so consider how the Christ can be a descendant of David"

Mark 12:38

be greeted in the marketplaces

This can be expressed with an active form. These greetings showed that the people respected the scribes. Alternate translation: "to have people greet them respectfully in the marketplaces"

Mark 12:39

the most important seats ... the places of honor

You may want to make explicit that the scribes liked to sit in these places. Alternate translation: "to sit in the most important seats ... to have people seat them in the places of honor"

Mark 12:40

They also devour widows' houses

Here Jesus describes the scribes' cheating of widows and stealing of their houses as "devouring" their houses. Alternate translation: "They also cheat widows in order to steal their houses from them"

widows' houses

The words "widows" and "houses" are synecdoches for helpless people and all of a person's important possessions, respectively. Alternate translation: "everything from helpless people"

These men will receive greater condemnation

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will certainly punish them with greater condemnation" or "God will certainly punish them severely"

will receive greater condemnation

The word "greater" implies a comparison. Here the comparison is to other men who are punished. Alternate translation: "will receive greater condemnation than other people"

Mark 12:41

Connecting Statement:

Still in the temple area, Jesus comments on the value of the widow's offering.

an offering box

This box, which everyone could use, held temple offerings.

Mark 12:42

two mites

"two small copper coins." These were the least valuable coins available.

worth about a penny

"worth very little." A penny is worth very little. Translate "penny" with the name of the smallest coin in your language if you have one that is worth very little.

Mark 12:43

General Information:

In verse 43 Jesus says that the widow put more money in the offering than the rich people put in, and in verse 44 he tells his reason for saying that. The information can be reordered so that Jesus tells his reason first and then says that the widow put in more, as in the UDB.

He called

"Jesus called"

Truly I say to you

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important. See how you translated this in Mark 3:28.

all of them who contributed to

"all the other people who put money into"

Mark 12:44

abundance

much wealth, many valuable things

her poverty

"lack" or "the little she had"

to live on

"to survive on"

**13** <sup>1</sup>As Jesus was walking away from the temple, one of his disciples said to him, "Teacher, look at the wonderful stones and wonderful buildings!"

<sup>2</sup>Jesus said to him, "Do you see these great buildings? Not one stone will be left on another which will not be torn down."

<sup>3</sup>As he sat on the Mount of Olives opposite the temple, Peter, James, John, and Andrew asked him privately, <sup>4</sup>"Tell us, when will these things happen? What will be the sign when all these things are about to happen?"

<sup>5</sup>Jesus began to say to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. <sup>6</sup>Many will come in my name and say, 'I am he,' and they will lead many astray.

<sup>7</sup>When you hear of wars and rumors of wars, do not be frightened; these things must happen, but the end is not yet. <sup>8</sup>For nation will rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom. There will be earthquakes in many places, and famines. These are the beginnings of birth pains.

<sup>9</sup>"Be on your guard. They will give you over to councils, and you will be beaten in synagogues. You will stand before both governors and kings for my sake, as a testimony to them. <sup>10</sup>But the gospel must first be proclaimed to all the nations.

<sup>11</sup>When they arrest you and hand you over, do not worry about what you should say. For in that hour, what you should say will be given to you; it will not be you who speak, but the Holy Spirit. <sup>12</sup>Brother will deliver up brother to death, and a father his child. Children will rise up against their parents and cause them to be put to death. <sup>13</sup>You will be hated by everyone because of my name. But whoever endures to the end, that person will be saved.

<sup>14</sup>"When you see the abomination of desolation standing where it should not be standing" (let the reader understand), "let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains, <sup>15</sup>let him who is on the housetop not go down into the house or take anything out of it, <sup>16</sup>and let him who is in the field not return to take his cloak.

<sup>17</sup>But woe to those who are pregnant and to those who are nursing infants in those days! <sup>18</sup>Pray that it might not occur in the winter. <sup>19</sup>For those will be days of great tribulation, such as has not been from the beginning of creation, which God created, until now, no, nor ever will be again. <sup>20</sup>Unless the Lord had shortened the days, no flesh would be saved. But for the sake of the elect, those whom he chose, he cut short the days.

<sup>21</sup>Then if anyone says to you, 'Look, here is the Christ!' or 'Look, there he is!' do not believe it. <sup>22</sup>For false Christs and false prophets will appear and will give signs and wonders so as to deceive, if possible, even the elect. <sup>23</sup>Be on guard! I have told you all these things ahead of time.

<sup>24</sup>"But after the tribulation of those days,  
    'the sun will be darkened,  
    the moon will not give its light,  
<sup>25</sup> the stars will fall from the sky,  
    and the powers that are in the heavens  
    will be shaken.'

<sup>26</sup>Then they will see the Son of Man coming in the clouds with great power and glory. <sup>27</sup>Then he will send his angels and he will gather together his elect from the four winds, from the ends of the earth to the ends of the sky.

<sup>28</sup>"Learn a lesson from the fig tree. As soon as the branch becomes tender and puts out its leaves, you know that summer is near. <sup>29</sup>So also, when you see these things happening, recognize that he is near, close to the gates.

<sup>30</sup>Truly I say to you, this generation will not pass away until all of these things occur. <sup>31</sup>Heaven and earth will pass away, but my words will never pass away. <sup>32</sup>But concerning that day or that hour, no one knows, not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but the Father.

<sup>33</sup>"Be alert! Watch, because you do not know what time it is. <sup>34</sup>It is like a man who goes on a journey—he leaves his house and puts his servants in charge of the house, each one with his work, and he commands the doorkeeper to stay alert.

<sup>35</sup>Therefore stay alert because you do not know when the master of the house will come home; it could be in the evening, at midnight, when the rooster crows, or in the morning. <sup>36</sup>If he comes suddenly, do not let him find you sleeping. <sup>37</sup>What I say to you I say to everyone: Watch!"

# Mark 13 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 13:24-25, which is from the Old Testament.

## Special concepts in this chapter

### The return of Christ

Jesus said much about what would happen before he returned ([Mark 13:6-37](#)). He told his followers that bad things would happen to the world and bad things would happen to them before he returned, but they needed to be ready for him to return at any time.

## Links:

- [Mark 13:1 Notes](#)
- 

### Mark 13:1

#### General Information:

As they leave the temple area, Jesus tells his disciples what will happen to the wonderful temple that Herod the Great has built.

the wonderful stones and wonderful buildings

The "stones" refer to the stones that the buildings were built with. Alternate translation: "the wonderful buildings and the wonderful stones that they are made of"

### Mark 13:2

Do you see these great buildings? Not one stone

This question is used to draw attention to the buildings. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Look at these great buildings! Not one stone" or "You see these great buildings now, but not one stone"

Not one stone will be left on another which will not be torn down

It is implied that enemy soldiers will tear down the stones. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Not one stone will remain on top of another, for enemy soldiers will come and destroy these buildings"

### Mark 13:3

#### Connecting Statement:

In answer to the disciples' questions about the temple's destruction and what is going to happen, Jesus tells them what was going to take place in the future.

As he sat on the Mount of Olives opposite the temple, Peter

It can be expressed clearly that Jesus and his disciples had walked to the Mount of Olives. Alternate translation: "After arriving at the Mount of Olives, which is opposite the temple, Jesus sat down. Then Peter"

privately

when they were alone

### Mark 13:4

these things happen ... are about to happen

This refers to what Jesus had just said will happen to the stones of the temple. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "these things happen to the buildings of the temple ... are about to happen to the temple buildings"

when all these things

"that all these things"

Mark 13:5

to them

"to his disciples"

leads you astray

Here "leads you astray" is a metaphor for "persuades you to believe what is not true." Alternate translation: "deceives you"

Mark 13:6

lead many astray

Here "lead many astray" is a metaphor "persuades many to believe what is not true." Alternate translation: "deceive many people"

in my name

This is metonym. Possible meanings are 1) Alternate translation: "claiming my authority" or 2) Alternate translation: "claiming that God sent them."

I am he

"I am the Christ"

Mark 13:7

hear of wars and rumors of wars

"hear of wars and reports about wars." Possible meanings are 1) "hear the sounds of wars close by and news of wars far away" or 2) "hear of wars that have started and reports about wars that are about to start"

but the end is not yet

"but it is not yet the end" or "but the end will not happen until later" or "but the end will be later"

the end

This probably refers to the end of the world.

Mark 13:8

will rise against

This idiom means to fight against one another. Alternate translation: "will fight against"

kingdom against kingdom

The words "will rise" are understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "kingdom will rise against kingdom" or "the people of one kingdom will fight against the people of another kingdom"

These are the beginnings of birth pains

Jesus speaks of these disasters as the beginnings of birth pains because more severe things will happen after them. Alternate translation: "These events will be like the first pains a woman suffers when she is about to bear a child"

Mark 13:9

Be on your guard

"Be ready for what people will do to you"

will give you over to councils

"take you and put you under the control of councils"

you will be beaten

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people will beat you"

You will stand before

This means to be put on trial and judged. Alternate translation: "You will be put on trial before" or "You will be brought to trial and judged by"

for my sake

"because of me" or "on account of me"

as a testimony to them

This means they will testify about Jesus. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "and testify to them about me" or "and you will tell them about me"

#### Mark 13:10

But the gospel must first be proclaimed to all the nations

Jesus is still speaking about things that must happen before the end comes. This can be made clear.  
Alternate translation: "But the gospel must first be proclaimed to all the nations before the end will come"

#### Mark 13:11

hand you over

Here this means to put people under the control of the authorities. Alternate translation: "give you over to the authorities"

but the Holy Spirit

The words "who will speak" are understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "but the Holy Spirit, who will speak through you"

#### Mark 13:12

Brother will deliver up brother to death

"One brother will put another brother under the control of people who will kill him" or "Brothers will put their brothers under the control of people who will kill them." This will happen many times to many different people. Jesus is not speaking of just one person and his brother.

Brother ... brother

This refers to both brothers and sisters. Alternate translation: "People ... their siblings"

a father his child

The words "will deliver up to death" are understood from the previous phrase. This means that some fathers will betray their children, and this betrayal will cause their children to be killed. Alternate translation: "fathers will deliver up their children to death" or "fathers will betray their children, handing them over to be killed"

Children will rise up against their parents

This means that children will oppose their parents and betray them. Alternate translation: "Children will oppose their parents"

cause them to be put to death

This means that the authorities will sentence the parents to be put to death. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "cause the authorities to sentence the parents to die" or "the authorities will kill the parents"

#### Mark 13:13

You will be hated by everyone

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Everyone will hate you"

because of my name

Jesus uses the metonym "my name" to refer to himself. Alternate translation: "because of me" or "because you believe in me"

whoever endures to the end, that person will be saved

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whoever endures to the end, God will save that person" or "God will save whoever endures to the end"

whoever endures to the end

Here "endures" represents continuing to be faithful to God even while suffering. Alternate translation: "whoever suffers and stays faithful to God to the end"

to the end

Possible meanings are 1) "to the end of his life" or 2) "to the end of that time of trouble"

#### Mark 13:14

the abomination of desolation

This phrase is from the book of Daniel. Jesus's audience would have been familiar with this passage and the prophecy about the abomination entering the temple and defiling it. Alternate translation: "the shameful thing that defiles the things of God"

standing where it should not be standing

Jesus's audience would have known that this refers to the temple. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "standing in the temple, where it should not be standing"

let the reader understand

Mark added this to get the readers' attention, so that they would think about what Jesus meant when he spoke about the abomination of desolation standing where it should not be standing. Alternate translation: "may everyone who reads this understand what it means"

Mark 13:15

on the housetop

Housetops where Jesus lived were flat, and people could stand on them.

Mark 13:16

not return

This refers to returning to his house. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "not return to his house"

to take his cloak

"to get his cloak"

Mark 13:17

those who are nursing infants

women who give babies breast milk

Mark 13:18

Pray that it

"Pray that these times" or "Pray that these things"

the winter

"the cold season" or "the cold, rainy season." This refers to the time of year when it is cold and unpleasant and difficult to travel.

Mark 13:19

such as has not been from the beginning

"greater than there has ever been since the beginning of the world." This describes how great and terrible the tribulation will be. There has never been a tribulation as terrible as this one will be.

the beginning of creation, which God created

the beginning of creation, when God created the world

no, nor ever will be again

"and greater than there will ever be again" or "and after that tribulation, there will never again be a tribulation like it"

Mark 13:20

Unless the Lord had shortened the days

The writer uses past tense to describe a future event. Alternate translation: "If the Lord had not decided that he would shorten those days"

had shortened the days

"had shortened the time." It may be helpful to specify which "days" are referred to. Alternate translation: "had reduced the days of suffering" or "had shortened the time of suffering"

no flesh would be saved

The word "flesh" refers to people, and "saved" refers to physical salvation. Alternate translation: "no one would be saved" or "everyone would die"

for the sake of the elect

"in order to help the elect"

the elect, those whom he chose

The phrase "those whom he chose" means the same thing as "the elect." Together, they emphasize that God chose these people.

Mark 13:21

General Information:

In verse 21 Jesus gives a command, and in 22 he tells the reason for the command. This can be reordered with the reason first, and the command second, as in the UDB.

Mark 13:22

false Christs

"people who claim they are Christ"



so as to deceive

"in order to deceive" or "hoping to deceive" or "trying to deceive"

so as to deceive, if possible, even the elect

The phrase "even the elect" implies that the false Christs and false prophets will expect to deceive some people, but they will not know if they will be able to deceive the elect. Alternate translation: "in order to deceive people, and even deceive the elect, if that is possible"

the elect

"the people whom God has chosen"

Mark 13:23

Be on guard

"Be watchful" or "Be alert"

I have told you all these things ahead of time

Jesus told them these things to warn them. Alternate translation: "I have told you all these things ahead of time to warn you"

Mark 13:24

the sun will be darkened

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the sun will become dark"

the moon will not give its light

Here the moon is spoken of as if it were alive and able to give something to someone else. Alternate translation: "the moon will not shine" or "the moon will be dark"

Mark 13:25

the stars will fall from the sky

This does not mean that they will fall to earth but that they will fall from where they are now. Alternate translation: "the stars will fall from their places in the sky"

the powers that are in the heavens will be shaken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the powers in the heavens will shake" or "God will shake the powers that are in the heavens"

the powers that are in the heavens

"the powerful things in the heavens." These words could refer to 1) the sun, moon, and stars or 2) powerful spiritual beings

in the heavens

"in the sky"

Mark 13:26

Then they will see

"Then people will see"

with great power and glory

"powerfully and gloriously"

Mark 13:27

he will gather

The word "he" refers to God and is a metonym for his angels, as they are the ones who will gather the elect. Alternate translation: "they will gather" or "his angels will gather"

the four winds

The whole earth is spoken of as "the four winds," which refer to the four directions: north, south, east, and west. Alternate translation: "the north, south, east, and west" or "all parts of the earth"

from the ends of the earth to the ends of the sky

These two extremes are given to emphasize that the elect will be gathered from the entire earth. Alternate translation: "from every place on earth"

Mark 13:28

Connecting Statement:

Jesus gives two short parables here to remind people to be aware when the things that he has been explaining happen.

the branch becomes tender and puts out its leaves

The phrase "the branch" refers to the branches of the fig tree. Alternate translation: "its branches become tender and put out their leaves"

tender

"green and soft"

puts out its leaves

Here the fig tree is spoken of as if it were alive and able to willingly cause its leaves to grow. Alternate translation: "its leaves begin to sprout"

summer

the warm part of the year or the growing season

Mark 13:29

these things

This refers to the days of tribulation. Alternate translation: "these things I have just described"

recognize that he is near

Many modern translations read, "you recognize" or "you know." It is not clear whether Jesus is stating a fact or issuing a command.

he is near

"the Son of Man is near"

close to the gates

This idiom means that he is very near and has almost arrived, referring to a traveler being close to arriving at the city gates. Alternate translation: "and is almost here"

Mark 13:30

Truly I say to you

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially important. See how you translated this in Mark 3:28.

will not pass away

"Pass away" is a polite way of saying "die." Alternate translation: "will not die" or "will not end"

until all of these things

The phrase "these things" refers to the days of tribulation.

Mark 13:31

Heaven and earth

The two extremes are given to refer to all of the sky, including the sun, moon, stars, and planets, and all of the earth. Alternate translation: "The sky, the earth, and everything in them"

will pass away

"will cease to exist." Here this phrase refers to the world ending.

my words will never pass away

Jesus speaks of words not losing their power as if they were something that will never physically die. Alternate translation: "my words will never lose their power"

Mark 13:32

that day or that hour

This refers to the time that the Son of Man will return. Alternate translation: "that day or that hour that the Son of Man will return" or "the day or the hour that I will return"

no one knows, not even the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but the Father

These words specify some of those who do not know when the Son of Man will return, different from the Father, who does know. Alternate translation: "no one knows—neither the angels in heaven nor the Son know—but the Father" or "neither the angels in heaven nor the Son know; no one knows but the Father"

the angels in heaven

Here "heaven" refers to the place where God lives.

but the Father

It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language naturally uses to refer to a human father. Also, this is an ellipsis, stating that the Father knows when the Son will return. Alternate translation: "but only the Father knows"

Mark 13:33

what time it is

It can be stated clearly what "time" refers to here. Alternate translation: "when all these events will happen"

Mark 13:34

each one with his work

"telling each one what work he should do"

Mark 13:35

it could be in the evening

"he could return in the evening"

rooster crows

The rooster is a bird that "crows" very early in the morning by making a loud call.

Mark 13:36

find you sleeping

Here Jesus speaks of not being ready as "sleeping." Alternate translation: "find you not ready for his return"

Mark 13:37

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

---

**14** <sup>1</sup>It was now two days before the Passover and the Festival of Unleavened Bread. The chief priests and the scribes were seeking ways to stealthily arrest Jesus and then kill him.<sup>2</sup>For they were saying, "Not during the festival, so that a riot does not arise among the people."

<sup>3</sup>While Jesus was in Bethany in the house of Simon the leper, as he was reclining at the table, a woman came to him having an alabaster jar of very expensive perfume, which was pure nard. She broke the jar and poured the nard on his head.<sup>4</sup>But there were some who were angry. They spoke among themselves and said, "What is the reason for the waste of this perfume?<sup>5</sup>This perfume could have been sold for more than three hundred denarii, and given to the poor." Then they scolded her.

<sup>6</sup>But Jesus said, "Leave her alone. Why are you troubling her? She has done a beautiful thing for me.<sup>7</sup>You always have the poor with you, and whenever you desire you can do good to them, but you will not always have me.<sup>8</sup>She has done what she could. She has anointed my body for burial.<sup>9</sup>Truly I say to you, wherever the gospel is preached in the whole world, what this woman has done will be spoken of, in memory of her."

<sup>10</sup>Then Judas Iscariot, one of the twelve, went away to the chief priests so that he might give him over to them.

<sup>11</sup>When the chief priests heard it, they were glad and promised to give him money. He began looking for an opportunity to give him over to them.

<sup>12</sup>On the first day of unleavened bread, when they sacrificed the Passover lamb, his disciples said to him, "Where do you want us to go to prepare, so you may eat the Passover meal?"

<sup>13</sup>He sent two of his disciples and said to them, "Go into the city, and a man bearing a pitcher of water will meet you. Follow him.<sup>14</sup>Where he enters a house, follow him in and say to the owner of that house, 'The Teacher says, "Where is my guest room where I will eat the Passover with my disciples?"'"

<sup>15</sup>He will show you a large furnished upper room that is ready. Make the preparations for us there."<sup>16</sup>The disciples left and went to the city. They found everything as he had said to them, and they prepared the Passover meal.

<sup>17</sup>When it was evening, he came with the twelve.<sup>18</sup>As they were lying down at the table and eating, Jesus said, "Truly I say to you, one of you eating with me will betray me."

<sup>19</sup>They were all very sorrowful, and one by one they said to him, "Surely not I?"

<sup>20</sup>Jesus answered and said to them, "It is one of the twelve, the one now dipping bread with me in the bowl.<sup>21</sup>For the Son of Man will go as it is written about him. But woe to that man through whom the Son of Man is betrayed! It would have been better for him if he had not been born."

<sup>22</sup>As they were eating, Jesus took bread, blessed it, and broke it. He gave it to them and said, "Take this. This is my body."<sup>23</sup>He took a cup, gave thanks, and gave it to them, and they all drank from it.<sup>24</sup>He said to them, "This is my blood of the covenant, the blood that is poured out for many.<sup>25</sup>Truly I say to you, I will not drink again of this fruit of the vine until that day when I drink it new in the kingdom of God."

<sup>26</sup>When they had sung a hymn, they went out to the Mount of Olives.<sup>27</sup>Jesus said to them, "All of you will fall away, for it is written,

'I will strike the shepherd  
and the sheep will be scattered.'

<sup>28</sup>But after I am raised up, I will go ahead of you into Galilee."

<sup>29</sup>Peter said to him, "Even if all fall away, I will not."

<sup>30</sup>Jesus said to him, "Truly I say to you, today—yes, this very night—before the rooster crows twice you will deny me three times."

<sup>31</sup>But Peter said emphatically, "If I must die with you, I will not deny you." They all made the same promise.

<sup>32</sup>They came to the place called Gethsemane, and Jesus said to his disciples, "Sit here while I pray."<sup>33</sup>He took Peter, James, and John with him and began to be distressed and deeply troubled.<sup>34</sup>He said to them, "My soul is deeply grieved, even to the point of death. Remain here and watch."

<sup>35</sup> Going a little farther, Jesus fell to the ground and prayed that if it were possible the hour might pass from him.

<sup>36</sup> He said, "Abba, Father, all things are possible with you. Remove this cup from me. But not my will, but yours."

<sup>37</sup> He came back and found them sleeping, and he said to Peter, "Simon, are you asleep? Could you not watch for one hour?"<sup>38</sup> Watch and pray that you do not enter into temptation. The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak."<sup>39</sup> Again he went away and prayed, and he used the same words.

<sup>40</sup> When he came back again, he found them sleeping, for their eyes were heavy. They did not know what to say to him.<sup>41</sup> He came the third time and said to them, "Are you still sleeping and taking your rest? Enough! The hour has come. Look! The Son of Man is being betrayed into the hands of sinners."<sup>42</sup> Get up; let us go. Look, the one who is betraying me is near."

<sup>43</sup> While he was still speaking, Judas, one of the twelve, arrived, and a large crowd was with him with swords and clubs, from the chief priests, the scribes, and the elders.<sup>44</sup> Now his betrayer had given them a sign, saying, "The one I kiss is the man. Seize him and lead him away under guard."<sup>45</sup> When Judas arrived, immediately he came up to Jesus and said, "Rabbi," and he kissed him.<sup>46</sup> Then they laid hands on him and seized him.

<sup>47</sup> But one of them who stood by drew his sword and struck the servant of the high priest and cut off his ear.

<sup>48</sup> Jesus said to them, "Do you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs, to arrest me?"<sup>49</sup> When I was daily with you and I was teaching in the temple, you did not arrest me. But this was done that the scriptures might be fulfilled."<sup>50</sup> All those with Jesus left him and ran away.

<sup>51</sup> A young man, wearing only a linen garment that was wrapped around him, was following Jesus. When the men seized him,<sup>52</sup> he left the linen garment and ran away naked.

<sup>53</sup> They led Jesus to the high priest. There were gathered with him all the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes.

<sup>54</sup> Now Peter followed him from a distance, as far as the courtyard of the high priest. He sat among the officers, warming himself near the fire.

<sup>55</sup> Now the chief priests and the entire Jewish council were seeking testimony against Jesus so they might put him to death. But they did not find any.<sup>56</sup> For many brought false testimony against him, but even their testimony did not agree.

<sup>57</sup> Some stood up and brought false testimony against him; they said,<sup>58</sup> "We heard him say, 'I will destroy this temple made with hands, and in three days I will build another made without hands.'"<sup>59</sup> Yet even their testimony did not agree.

<sup>60</sup> The high priest stood up among them and asked Jesus, "Have you no answer? What is it these men testify against you?"<sup>61</sup> But he was silent and answered nothing. Again the high priest questioned him and said, "Are you the Christ, the Son of the Blessed One?"

<sup>62</sup> Jesus said, "I am;  
and you will see the Son of Man  
when he sits at the right hand of power  
and comes with the clouds of heaven."

<sup>63</sup> The high priest tore his garments and said, "Do we still need witnesses?"<sup>64</sup> You have heard the blasphemy. What is your decision?" They all condemned him as one who deserved death.

<sup>65</sup> Some began to spit on him and to cover his face and strike him with their fists and say to him, "Prophecy!" The officers took him and beat him.

<sup>66</sup> While Peter was below in the courtyard, one of the servant girls of the high priest came to him.<sup>67</sup> She saw Peter warming himself, and she looked closely at him and said, "You were also with the Nazarene, Jesus."

<sup>68</sup> But he denied it, saying, "I neither know nor understand what you are talking about." Then he went out into the gateway. And the rooster crowed. [1](#)

<sup>69</sup> But the servant girl saw him and began to say again to those who stood there, "This man is one of them!"

<sup>70</sup> But he denied it again. After a little while, those who stood there were saying to Peter, "Surely you are one of them, for you also are a Galilean."

<sup>71</sup>But he began to put himself under curses and to swear, "I do not know this man you are talking about."

<sup>72</sup>The rooster immediately crowed a second time. Then Peter remembered the words that Jesus had said to him: "Before the rooster crows twice, you will deny me three times," and he broke down and wept.

---

<sup>1</sup>Some ancient copies do not have, And the rooster crowed .

---

# Mark 14 General Notes

## Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 14:27, 62, which is from the Old Testament.

## Special concepts in this chapter

The eating of the body and blood

[Mark 14:22-25](#) describes Jesus's last meal with his followers. At this time, Jesus told them that what they were eating and drinking were his body and his blood. Nearly all Christian churches celebrate "the Lord's Supper," the "Eucharist," or "Holy Communion" to remember this meal.

## Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Abba, Father

"Abba" is an Aramaic word that the Jews used to speak to their fathers. Mark writes it as it sounds and then translates it.

"Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

## Links:

- [Mark 14:1 Notes](#)

Mark 14:1

Connecting Statement:

Just two days before the Passover, the chief priests and scribes are secretly plotting to kill Jesus.

stealthily

without people noticing

Mark 14:2

For they were saying

The word "they" refers to the chief priests and the scribes.

Not during the festival

This refers to them not arresting Jesus during the festival. Alternate translation: "We must not do it during the festival"

### Mark 14:3

Connecting Statement:

Though some were angry that the oil was used to anoint Jesus, Jesus says that the woman has anointed his body for burial before he will die.

Simon the leper

This man previously had leprosy but was no longer ill. This is a different man than Simon Peter and Simon the Zealot.

he was reclining at the table

In Jesus's culture, when people gathered to eat, they reclined on their sides, propping themselves up on pillows beside a low table.

alabaster jar

This is a jar made from alabaster. Alabaster is a very expensive yellow-white stone. Alternate translation: "beautiful white stone jar"

of very expensive perfume, which was pure nard

"that contained expensive, fragrant perfume called nard." Nard is a very expensive, sweet-smelling oil used to make perfume.

on his head

"on Jesus's head"

### Mark 14:4

What is the reason for the waste of this perfume?

They asked this question to show that they disapproved of the woman pouring the perfume on Jesus. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is terrible that she wasted that perfume!"

### Mark 14:5

This perfume could have been sold

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "We could have sold this perfume" or "She could have sold this perfume"

three hundred denarii

"300 denarii." Denarius is the singular form of denarii. A denarius is a roman silver coin and it is worth one day's wage.

given to the poor

The phrase "the poor" refers to poor people. This refers to giving the money from the sale of the perfume to the poor. Alternate translation: "the money given to poor people"

### Mark 14:6

Why are you troubling her?

Jesus rebukes the guests for questioning this woman's action. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not trouble her!"

### Mark 14:7

the poor

This refers to poor people. Alternate translation: "poor people"

### Mark 14:8

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 14:9

Truly I say to you

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important. See how you translated this in Mark 3:28.

wherever the gospel is preached

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "wherever my followers preach the gospel"

what this woman has done will be spoken of

"what this woman has done will also be spoken of"

#### Mark 14:10

Connecting Statement:

After the woman anoints Jesus with perfume, Judas promises to deliver Jesus to the chief priests.

so that he might give him over to them

Judas did not deliver Jesus over to them yet, rather he went to make arrangements with them. Alternate translation: "in order to arrange with them that he would give Jesus over to them"

give him over

"bring him to them so they could capture him" or "put him in their power" or "betray him"

#### Mark 14:11

When the chief priests heard it

It may be helpful to state clearly what the chief priests heard. Alternate translation: "When the chief priests heard what he was willing to do for them"

to give him money

"to give him silver coins"

give him over to them

"put them in their power" or "betray him to them"

#### Mark 14:12

Connecting Statement:

Jesus sends two of the disciples to prepare the Passover meal.

when they sacrificed the Passover lamb

At the beginning of the Festival of Unleavened Bread, it was customary to sacrifice a lamb. Alternate translation: "when it was customary to sacrifice the Passover lamb"

eat the Passover

Here the "Passover" refers to the Passover meal. Alternate translation: "eat the Passover meal"

#### Mark 14:13

bearing a pitcher of water

"carrying a large jar full of water"

#### Mark 14:14

The Teacher says, "Where is my guest room ... with my disciples?"

This can be written as an indirect quote. Translate this so that it is a polite request. Alternate translation: "Our Teacher would like to know where the guest room is where he may eat the Passover with his disciples."

guest room

a room for visitors

#### Mark 14:15

Make the preparations for us there

They were to prepare the meal for Jesus and his disciples to eat. Alternate translation: "Prepare the meal for us there"

#### Mark 14:16

The disciples left

"The two disciples left"

as he had said

"as Jesus had said"

#### Mark 14:17

Connecting Statement:

That evening as Jesus and the disciples eat the Passover meal, Jesus tells them that one of them will betray him.

he came with the twelve

It may be helpful to state where they came to. Alternate translation: "he came with the twelve to the house"



Mark 14:18

lying down at the table

In Jesus's culture, when people gathered to eat, they lay down on their sides, propping themselves up on pillows beside a low table.

Truly I say to you

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important. See how you translated this in Mark 3:28.

Mark 14:19

one by one

This means that "one at a time" each disciple asked him.

Surely not I?

Possible meanings are 1) this was a question for which the disciples expected the answer to be no or 2) this was a rhetorical question that did not require a response. Alternate translation: "Surely I am not the one who will betray you!"

Mark 14:20

It is one of the twelve, the one now

"He is one of the twelve of you, the one now"

dipping bread with me in the bowl

In Jesus's culture, people would often eat bread, dipping it in a shared bowl of sauce or of oil mixed with herbs.

Mark 14:21

For the Son of Man will go as it is written about him

Here Jesus refers to the scriptures prophesying about his death. If you have a polite way to talk about death in your language, use it here. Alternate translation: "For the Son of Man will die in the way that the scriptures say"

it is written

"the scripture says" or "as they wrote in the scripture"

through whom the Son of Man is betrayed

This can be stated more directly. Alternate translation: "who betrays the Son of Man"

Mark 14:22

bread

This was a flat loaf of unleavened bread, which was eaten as part of the Passover meal.

broke it

This means that he broke the bread into pieces for the people to eat. Alternate translation: "broke it into pieces"

Take this. This is my body

"Take this bread. It is my body." Though most understand this to mean that the bread is a symbol of Jesus's body and that it is not actual flesh, it is best to translate this statement literally.

Mark 14:23

He took a cup

Here "cup" is a metonym for wine. Alternate translation: "He took the cup of wine"

Mark 14:24

This is my blood of the covenant, the blood that is poured out for many

The covenant is for the forgiveness of sins. This can be written more explicitly. Alternate translation: "This is my blood that confirms the covenant, the blood that is poured out so that many may receive the forgiveness of sins"

This is my blood

"This wine is my blood." Though most understand this to mean that the wine is a symbol of Jesus's blood and that it is not actual blood, it is best to translate this statement literally.

Mark 14:25

Truly I say to you

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important. See how you translated this in Mark 3:28.

fruit of the vine

"wine." This is a descriptive way to refer to wine.

new

Possible meanings are 1) "again" or 2) "in a new way"

Mark 14:26

hymn

A hymn is a type of song. It was traditional for them to sing an Old Testament psalm.

Mark 14:27

Jesus said to them

"Jesus said to his disciples"

will fall away

This is an idiom that means leave. Alternate translation: "will leave me"

I will strike

"kill." Here "I" refers to God.

the sheep will be scattered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will scatter the sheep"

Mark 14:28

I am raised up

This idiom means that God will cause Jesus to become alive again after he has died. This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "God raises me from the dead" or "God makes me alive again"

I will go ahead of you

"I will go before you"

Mark 14:29

all fall away

"everyone else falls away" or "everyone else leaves you"

Mark 14:30

Truly I say to you

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important. See how you translated this in Mark 3:28.

rooster crows

The rooster is a male bird that calls out loudly very early in the morning. When he makes that sound he "crows."

twice

two times

you will deny me

"you will say that you do not know me"

Mark 14:31

said emphatically

"said insistently" or "said strongly"

If I must die

"Even if I must die"

They all made the same promise

This means that all of the disciples said the same thing that Peter said.

Mark 14:32

Connecting Statement:

When they go to Gethsemane on the Mount of Olives, Jesus encourages three of his disciples to stay awake while he prays. Twice he awakens them, and the third time he tells them to wake up because it is time for the betrayal.

They came to the place

The word "they" refers to Jesus and his disciples.

Mark 14:33

distressed

overwhelmed with sorrow

deeply troubled

The word "deeply" refers to Jesus being greatly troubled in his soul. Alternate translation: "extremely troubled"

Mark 14:34

My soul is

Jesus speaks of himself as his "soul." Alternate translation: "I am"

even to the point of death

Jesus is exaggerating because he feels so much distress and sorrow that he feels like he is about to die, though he knows he will not die until after the sun rises.

watch

The disciples were to stay alert while Jesus prayed. This does not mean that they were supposed to watch Jesus pray.

Mark 14:35

if it were possible

This means that if God would allow it to happen. Alternate translation: "if God would allow it"

the hour might pass

Here "this hour" refers to Jesus's time of suffering, both now in the garden and later. Alternate translation: "that he would not have to go through this time of suffering"

Mark 14:36

Abba

a term used by Jewish children to address their father. Since it is followed by "Father," it is best to transliterate this word.

Father

This is an important title for God.

Remove this cup from me

Jesus speaks of the suffering that he must endure as if it were a cup.

But not my will, but yours

Jesus is asking God to do what he wants to be done and not what Jesus wants. Alternate translation: "But do not do what I want, do what you want"

Mark 14:37

found them sleeping

The word "them" refers to Peter, James, and John.

Simon, are you asleep? Could you not watch for one hour?

Jesus rebukes Simon Peter for sleeping. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Simon, you are asleep when I told you to stay awake. You could not even stay awake for one hour."

Mark 14:38

that you do not enter into temptation

Jesus speaks of being tempted as if it were entering into a physical place. Alternate translation: "that you are not tempted"

The spirit indeed is willing, but the flesh is weak

Jesus warns Simon Peter that he is not strong enough to do what he wants to do in his own strength. Alternate translation: "You are willing in your spirit, but you are too weak to do what you want to do" or "You want to do what I say, but you are weak"

The spirit ... the flesh

These refer to two different aspects of Peter. "The spirit" is his inmost desires. "The flesh" is his human ability and strength.

Mark 14:39

used the same words

"prayed again what he prayed before"

Mark 14:40

found them sleeping

The word "them" refers to Peter, James, and John.

for their eyes were heavy

Here the author speaks of a sleepy person having a hard time keeping his eyes open as having "heavy eyes." Alternate translation: "for they were so sleepy they were having a hard time keeping their eyes open"

Mark 14:41

He came the third time

Jesus had gone and prayed again. Then he returned to them a third time. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Then he went and prayed again. He returned the third time"

Are you still sleeping and taking your rest?

Jesus rebukes his disciples for not staying awake and praying. You can translate this rhetorical question as a statement if needed. Alternate translation: "You are still sleeping and resting!"

The hour has come

The time of Jesus's suffering and betrayal is about to begin.

Look!

"Listen!"

The Son of Man is being betrayed

Jesus warns his disciples that his betrayer is approaching them. This can be stated in active form.

Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, am being betrayed"

Mark 14:42

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 14:43

one of the twelve

"one of the twelve disciples"

Mark 14:44

General Information:

Here Mark gives background information about how Judas had arranged with the Jewish leaders to betray Jesus.

his betrayer

This refers to Judas.

The one I kiss is the man

Here "the man" refers to the man that Judas was going to identify. Alternate translation: "The man I kiss is the one you want"

Mark 14:45

he kissed him

"Judas kissed him"

Mark 14:46

laid hands on him and seized him

These two phrases have the same meaning to emphasize that they seized Jesus. Alternate translation: "grabbed Jesus and seized him" or "seized him"

Mark 14:47

who stood by

"who was standing nearby"

Mark 14:48

Jesus said to them

"Jesus said to the crowd"

Do you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs, to arrest me?

Jesus is rebuking the crowd. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is ridiculous that you come here to seize me with swords and clubs, as if I were a robber!"

Mark 14:49

But this was done that

"But this has happened so that"

Mark 14:50

All those with Jesus

This refers to the disciples.

Mark 14:51

linen

cloth made from the fibers of a flax plant

that was wrapped around him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that he had wrapped around himself"

When the men seized him

"When the men seized that man"

Mark 14:52

he left the linen garment

Because the man was trying to run away, the others would have grabbed at his clothing, trying to stop him.

Mark 14:53

Connecting Statement:

After the crowd of the chief priests, scribes, and elders lead Jesus to the high priest, Peter watches nearby while some stand to give false testimony against Jesus.

There were gathered with him all the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes

This can be reordered so that it is easier to understand. "All of the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes had gathered there together"

Mark 14:54

Now

This word is used here to mark a change in the story as the author tells us about Peter.

as far as the courtyard of the high priest

As Peter followed Jesus, he stopped at the high priest's courtyard. This can be written clearly. Alternate translation: "and he went as far as the courtyard of the high priest"

He sat among the officers

Peter sat with the officers who were working at the courtyard. Alternate translation: "He sat in the courtyard among the officers"

the officers

These were probably the servants of the "the chief priests, the elders, and the scribes" (Mark 14:54).

Mark 14:55

Now

This word is used here to mark a change in the story as the author returns to telling us about Jesus being put on trial.

they might put him to death

They were not the ones who would execute Jesus; rather, they would order someone else to do it. Alternate translation: "they might have Jesus executed" or "they might have someone execute Jesus"

But they did not find any

They did not find testimony against Jesus with which they could convict him and have him put to death. Alternate translation: "But they did not find any testimony with which to convict him"

Mark 14:56

brought false testimony against him

Here speaking false testimony is described as if it were a physical object that someone can carry. Alternate translation: "accused him by speaking false testimony against him"

their testimony did not agree

"they contradicted each other"

Mark 14:57

brought false testimony against him

Here speaking false testimony is described as if it were a physical object that someone can carry. Alternate translation: "accused him by speaking false testimony against him"

Mark 14:58

We heard him say

"We heard Jesus say." The word "we" refers to the people who brought false testimony against Jesus and does not include the people to whom they are speaking.

made with hands ... made without hands

Here "hands" refers to men. Alternate translation: "made by men ... without man's help" or "built by men ... without man's help"

in three days

"within three days." This means that the temple would be built within a three-day period.

will build another

The word "temple" is understood from the previous phrase. It may be repeated. Alternate translation: "will build another temple"

Mark 14:59

their testimony did not agree

"these witnesses contradicted each other"

Mark 14:60

Connecting Statement:

When Jesus answers that he is the Christ, the high priest and all of the leaders there condemn him as one who deserves to die.

stood up among them

Jesus stands up in the middle of the angry crowd to speak to them. Translate this to show who was present when Jesus stood up to speak. Alternate translation: "stood up among the chief priests, scribes, and elders"

Have you no answer? What is it these men testify against you?

The chief priest is not asking Jesus for information about what the witnesses said. He is asking Jesus to prove what the witnesses said is wrong. Alternate translation: "Are you not going to reply? What do you say in response to the testimony these men are speaking against you?"

Mark 14:61

the Son of the Blessed One

Here God is called "the Blessed One." It is best to translate "Son" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a "son" of a human father. Alternate translation: "the Son of God"

Mark 14:62

I am

This likely has a double meaning: 1) to respond to the high priest's question and 2) to call himself "I Am," which is what God called himself in the Old Testament.

he sits at the right hand of power

Here "power" is a metonym that represents God. To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: "he sits in the place of honor beside the all-powerful God"

comes with the clouds of heaven

Here the clouds are described as accompanying Jesus when he returns. Alternate translation: "when he comes down through the clouds in the sky"

Mark 14:63

tore his garments

The high priest tore his clothes purposefully to show his outrage and horror at what Jesus has said. Alternate translation: "tore his garments in outrage"

Do we still need witnesses?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "We certainly do not need any more people who will testify against this man!"

Mark 14:64

You have heard the blasphemy

This refers to what Jesus said, which the high priest called blasphemy. Alternate translation: "You have heard the blasphemy he has spoken"

They all

all the people in the room

Mark 14:65

Some began to

some of the people in the room

to cover his face

They covered his face with a cloth or blindfold, so he could not see. Alternate translation: "to cover his face with a blindfold"

Prophecy

They mocked him, asking him to prophecy who was hitting him. Alternate translation: "Prophecy who hit you"

officers

men who guarded the governor's house

Mark 14:66

Connecting Statement:

As Jesus had predicted, Peter denies Jesus three times before the rooster crows.

below in the courtyard

"outside in the courtyard"

one of the servant girls of the high priest

The servant girls worked for the high priest. Alternate translation: "one of the servant girls who worked for the high priest"

Mark 14:67

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 14:68

denied

This means to claim that something is not true. In this case, Peter was saying that what the servant girl said about him was not true.

neither know nor understand what you are talking about

Both "know" and "understand" have the same meaning here. The meaning is repeated to add emphasis to what Peter is saying. Alternate translation: "I really do not understand what you are talking about"

Mark 14:69

the servant girl

This is the same servant girl who identified Peter previously.

one of them

The people were identifying Peter as one of Jesus's disciples. This can be made clearer. Alternate translation: "one of Jesus's disciples" or "one of those who have been with that man they arrested"

Mark 14:70

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 14:71

to put himself under curses

If in your language you have to name the person who curses someone, state God. Alternate translation: "to say for God to curse him"

Mark 14:72

rooster immediately crowed

The rooster is a male bird that calls out loudly very early in the morning. If he has made that sound he has "crowed."

---

a second time

"Second" here is an ordinal number.

he broke down

This idiom means that he was overwhelmed with grief and lost control of his emotions. Alternate translation: "he was overwhelmed with grief" or "he lost control of his emotions"



**15** <sup>1</sup>Early in the morning, the chief priests, with the elders and scribes and the entire Jewish council, consulted together. Then they bound Jesus and led him away. They handed him over to Pilate.<sup>2</sup> Pilate asked him, "Are you the King of the Jews?"

He answered him, "You say so."

<sup>3</sup>The chief priests were accusing him of many things.

<sup>4</sup>Pilate again asked him, "Do you give no answer? See how many things they are accusing you of!"<sup>5</sup> But Jesus no longer answered Pilate, and that amazed him.

<sup>6</sup>Now at the time of the festival, Pilate usually released to them one prisoner, a prisoner they requested.<sup>7</sup> There was a man called Barabbas in prison with the rebels who had committed murder during the rebellion.<sup>8</sup> The crowd came to Pilate and began to ask him to do for them as he had done in the past.

<sup>9</sup>Pilate answered them and said, "Do you want me to release to you the King of the Jews?"<sup>10</sup> For he knew that it was because of envy that the chief priests had handed Jesus over to him.<sup>11</sup> But the chief priests stirred up the crowd to cry out that Barabbas should be released instead.

<sup>12</sup>Pilate answered them again and said, "What then should I do with the King of the Jews?"

<sup>13</sup>They shouted again, "Crucify him!"

<sup>14</sup>Pilate said to them, "What evil has he done?"

But they shouted more and more, "Crucify him."

<sup>15</sup>Pilate wanted to satisfy the crowd, so he released Barabbas to them. He scourged Jesus and then handed him over to be crucified.

<sup>16</sup>The soldiers led him inside the courtyard (which is the government headquarters), and they called together the whole company of soldiers.<sup>17</sup> They put a purple robe on Jesus, and they twisted together a crown of thorns and put it on him.<sup>18</sup> They began to salute him and say, "Hail, King of the Jews!"

<sup>19</sup>They were striking his head with a reed staff and spitting on him. They went to their knees and they bowed down before him.<sup>20</sup> When they had mocked him, they took off of him the purple robe and put his own garments on him, and then led him out to crucify him.<sup>21</sup> A certain man, Simon of Cyrene, was coming in from the country (he was the father of Alexander and Rufus), and they forced him to carry his cross.

<sup>22</sup>The soldiers brought Jesus to the place called Golgotha (which is translated "Place of a Skull").<sup>23</sup> They offered him wine mixed with myrrh, but he did not drink it.<sup>24</sup> They crucified him and divided up his garments by casting lots to determine what piece each soldier would take.

<sup>25</sup>It was the third hour when they crucified him.<sup>26</sup> On a sign they wrote the charge against him, "The king of the Jews."<sup>27</sup> With him they crucified two robbers, one on the right of him and one on his left.<sup>28</sup> <sup>1</sup>

<sup>29</sup>Those who passed by insulted him, shaking their heads and saying, "Aha! You who would destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days,<sup>30</sup> save yourself and come down from the cross!"

<sup>31</sup>In the same way the chief priests were mocking him with each other, along with the scribes, and said, "He saved others, but he cannot save himself.<sup>32</sup> Let the Christ, the King of Israel, come down now from the cross, that we may see and believe." Those who were crucified with him also insulted him.

<sup>33</sup>At the sixth hour, darkness came over the whole land until the ninth hour.<sup>34</sup> At the ninth hour Jesus cried out with a loud voice, "Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?" which is interpreted, "My God, my God, why have you abandoned me?"<sup>35</sup> Some of those standing by heard his words and said, "Look, he is calling for Elijah."

<sup>36</sup>Someone ran, put sour wine on a sponge, put it on a reed staff, and gave it to him to drink. The man said, "Let us see if Elijah comes to take him down."<sup>37</sup> Then Jesus cried out with a loud voice and died.

<sup>38</sup>The curtain of the temple was split in two from the top to the bottom.

<sup>39</sup>When the centurion who stood and faced Jesus saw that he had died in this way, he said, "Truly this man was the Son of God."<sup>40</sup> There were also women who looked on from a distance. Among them were Mary Magdalene,

Mary (the mother of James the younger and of Joses), <sup>2</sup> and Salome.<sup>41</sup> When he was in Galilee, they followed him and served him. Many other women also came up with him to Jerusalem.

<sup>42</sup> When evening had come, because it was the Day of Preparation, that is, the day before the Sabbath, <sup>43</sup> Joseph of Arimathea came there. He was a respected member of the council who was waiting for the kingdom of God. He boldly went in to Pilate and asked for the body of Jesus. <sup>44</sup> Pilate was amazed that Jesus was already dead; he called the centurion and asked him if Jesus was dead.

<sup>45</sup> When Pilate learned from the centurion that Jesus was dead, he gave the body to Joseph. <sup>46</sup> Joseph had bought a linen cloth. He took him down from the cross, wrapped him in the linen cloth, and laid him in a tomb that had been cut out of a rock. Then he rolled a stone against the entrance of the tomb. <sup>47</sup> Mary Magdalene and Mary the mother of Joses saw the place where Jesus was buried.

---

<sup>1</sup>The best ancient copies do not have Mark 15:28, The scripture was fulfilled that says, 'He was counted with the lawless ones.'

<sup>2</sup>The man called Joses here is called Joseph in Mark 6:3. The name Joseph represents how the name was spelled in Hebrew, and the name Joses represents how his name was spelled in Greek.

---

## Mark 15 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

"The curtain of the temple was split in two"

The curtain in the temple was an important symbol that showed that people needed to have someone speak to God for them. They could not speak to God directly because all people are sinful and God hates sin. God split the curtain to show that Jesus's people can now speak to God directly because Jesus has paid for their sins.

#### The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried ([Mark 15:46](#)) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

### Important figures of speech in this chapter

#### Sarcasm

Both by pretending to worship Jesus ([Mark 15:19](#)) and by pretending to speak to a king ([Mark 15:18](#)), the soldiers and the Jews showed that they hated Jesus and did not believe that he was the Son of God. (See: and mock)

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani?

This is a phrase in Aramaic. Mark transliterates its sounds by writing them using Greek letters. He then explains its meaning.

### Links:

- [Mark 15:1 Notes](#)

Mark 15:1

Connecting Statement:

When the chief priests, the elders, the scribes, and the council give Jesus over to Pilate, they accuse Jesus of doing many bad things. When Pilate asks if what they had said is true, Jesus does not answer him.

they bound Jesus and led him away

They commanded for Jesus to be bound, but it would have been the guards who actually bound him and led him away. Alternate translation: "they commanded for Jesus to be bound and then he was led away" or "they commanded the guards to bind Jesus and then they led him away"

They handed him over to Pilate

They had Jesus led to Pilate and transferred control of Jesus over to him.

Mark 15:2

You say so

Possible meanings are 1) by saying this, Jesus was saying that Pilate, not Jesus, was the one calling him the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: "You yourself have said so" or 2) by saying this, Jesus implied that he is the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: "Yes, as you said, I am" or "Yes. It is as you said"

Mark 15:3

were accusing him of many things

"were saying that Jesus had done many bad things"

Mark 15:4

Pilate again asked him

"Pilate asked Jesus again"

Do you give no answer

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Do you have an answer"

See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

Mark 15:5

that amazed him

It surprised Pilate that Jesus did not reply and defend himself.

Mark 15:6

Connecting Statement:

Pilate, hoping the crowd will choose Jesus, offers to release a prisoner, but the crowd asks for Barabbas instead.

Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story as the author tells background information about Pilate's tradition of releasing a prisoner at feasts and about Barabbas.

Mark 15:7

General Information:

The writer continues giving background information that will enable the reader to understand the part of the story that follows.

the rebels who had committed murder during the rebellion

The writer writes as though he believes that the readers know which rebels and which rebellion he is talking about, not as though he is introducing new participants to the story.

Mark 15:8

to do for them as he had done in the past

This refers to Pilate releasing a prisoner at feasts. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "to release a prisoner to them as he had done in the past"

Mark 15:9

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 15:10

For he knew that it was because of envy ... Jesus over to him

This is background information about why Jesus was handed over to Pilate.

it was because of envy that the chief priests

They envied Jesus, probably because so many people were following him and becoming his disciples. Alternate translation: "the chief priests were envious of Jesus. This is why they" or "the chief priests were envious of Jesus's popularity among the people. This is why they"

#### Mark 15:11

stirred up the crowd

The author speaks of the chief priests rousing or urging the crowd as if the crowd were a bowl of something that they were stirring. Alternate translation: "roused the crowd" or "urged the crowd"

released instead

They requested Barabbas to be released instead of Jesus. Alternate translation: "released instead of Jesus"

#### Mark 15:12

Connecting Statement:

The crowd asks for Jesus's death, so Pilate turns him over to the soldiers, who mock him, crown him with thorns, strike him, and lead him out to crucify him.

What then should I do with the King of the Jews

Pilate asks what he should do with Jesus if he releases Barabbas to them. This can be written clearly. Alternate translation: "If I release Barabbas, what then should I do with the King of the Jews"

#### Mark 15:13

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

#### Mark 15:14

Pilate said to them

"Pilate said to the crowd"

#### Mark 15:15

to satisfy the crowd

"make the crowd happy by doing what they wanted him to do"

He scourged Jesus

Pilate did not actually scourge Jesus but rather his soldiers did.

scourged

"flogged." To "scourge" is to beat with an especially painful whip.

then handed him over to be crucified

Pilate told his soliders to take Jesus away to crucify him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "told his soldiers to take him away and crucify him"

#### Mark 15:16

the courtyard (which is the government headquarters)

This was where the Roman soldiers in Jerusalem lived, and where the governor stayed when he was in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "the courtyard of the soldiers' barracks" or "the courtyard of the governor's residence"

the whole company of soldiers

"the whole unit of soldiers" "the whole cohort of soldiers"

#### Mark 15:17

They put a purple robe on Jesus

Purple was a color worn by royalty. The soldiers did not believe that Jesus was king. They clothed him this way to mock him because others said that he was the King of the Jews.

a crown of thorns

"a crown made of thorny branches"

Mark 15:18

began to salute him

The reader should understand that they were mocking Jesus by pretending to salute him.

Hail, King of the Jews

The greeting "Hail" with a raised hand was only used to greet the Roman emperor. The soldiers did not believe that Jesus was the king of the Jews. Rather they said this to mock him.

Mark 15:19

a reed

"a stick" or "a staff"

went to their knees

"kneeled" or "knelt" or "got on their knees"

Mark 15:20

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 15:21

Simon ... Alexander ... Rufus

These are names of men.

Cyrene

This is the name of a place.

from the country

"from outside the city"

he was the father of Alexander and Rufus

This is background information about the man whom the soldiers forced to carry Jesus's cross.

they forced him to carry his cross

According to Roman law, a soldier could force a man he came upon along the road to carry a load. In this case, they forced Simon to carry Jesus's cross.

Mark 15:22

Connecting Statement:

The soldiers bring Jesus to Golgotha, where they crucify him with two others. Many people mock him.

Place of a Skull

"Skull Place" or "Place of the Skull." This the name of a place. It does not mean that there are lots of skulls there.

Skull

A skull is the head bones, or a head without any flesh on it.

Mark 15:23

wine mixed with myrrh

It may be helpful to explain that myrrh is a pain-relieving medicine. Alternate translation: "wine mixed with a medicine called myrrh" or "wine mixed with a pain-relieving medicine called myrrh"

Mark 15:24

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 15:25

the third hour

"Third" here is a ordinal number. This refers to nine o'clock in the morning. Alternate translation: "nine o'clock in the morning"

Mark 15:26

On a sign

The soldiers attached this sign to the cross above Jesus. Alternate translation: "They attached to the cross above Jesus's head a sign on which"

the charge against him

"the crime they were accusing him of doing"

Mark 15:27

one on the right of him and one on his left

This can be written more clearly. Alternate translation: "one on a cross on the right side of him and one on a cross on the left side of him"

Mark 15:28

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 15:29

shaking their heads

This action showed that the people disapproved of Jesus.

Aha!

This is a exclamation of mockery. Use the appropriate exclamation in your language.

You who would destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days

The people refer to Jesus by what he earlier prophesied that he would do. Alternate translation: "You who said you would destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days"

Mark 15:30

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 15:31

In the same way

This refers to the way that the people who were walking by Jesus were mocking him.

were mocking him with each other

"were saying mocking things about Jesus among themselves"

Mark 15:32

Let the Christ, the King of Israel, come down

The leaders did not believe that Jesus is the Christ, the King of Israel. Alternate translation: "He calls himself the Christ and the King of Israel. So let him come down" or "If he is really the Christ and the King of Israel, he should come down"

believe

The means to believe in Jesus. Alternate translation: "believe in him"

insulted

mocked, slandered

Mark 15:33

the sixth hour

This refers to noon or 12 p.m.

darkness came over the whole land

Here the author describes it becoming dark outside as if the darkness were a wave that moved over the land. Alternate translation: "the whole land became dark"

Mark 15:34

At the ninth hour

This refers to three o'clock in the afternoon. Alternate translation: "At three o'clock in the afternoon" or "In the middle of the afternoon"

Eloi, Eloi, lama sabachthani

These are Aramaic words that should be copied as is into your language with similar sounds.

is interpreted

"means"

Mark 15:35

Some of those standing by heard his words and said

It can be stated clearly that they misunderstood what Jesus said. Alternate translation: "When some of those

standing there heard his words, they misunderstood and said"

Mark 15:36

sour wine

"vinegar"

reed staff

"stick." This was a staff made from a reed.

gave it to him

"gave it to Jesus." The man held up the staff so that Jesus could drink wine from the sponge. Alternate translation: "held it up to Jesus"

Mark 15:37

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 15:38

The curtain of the temple was split in two

Mark is showing that God himself split the temple curtain. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "God split the curtain of the temple in two"

Mark 15:39

the centurion

This is the centurion who supervised the soldiers who crucified Jesus.

who stood and faced Jesus

Here "faced" is an idiom that means to look towards someone. Alternate translation: "who stood in front of Jesus"

that he had died in this way

"how Jesus had died" or "the way Jesus had died"

Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

Mark 15:40

looked on from a distance

"watched from far away"

(the mother of James ... and of Joses)

"who was the mother of James ... and of Joses." This can be written without the parentheses.

James the younger

"the younger James." This man was referred to as "the younger" probably to distinguish him from another man named James.

Joses

This Joses was not that same person as the younger brother of Jesus. See how you translated the same name in [Mark 6:3]

Salome

Salome is the name of a woman.

Mark 15:41

When he was in Galilee, they followed him ... with him to Jerusalem

"When Jesus was in Galilee, these women followed him ... with him to Jerusalem." This is background information about the women who watched the crucifixion from a distance.

came up with him to Jerusalem

Jerusalem was higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for people to speak of going up to Jerusalem and going down from it.

Mark 15:42

Connecting Statement:

Joseph of Arimathea asks Pilate for the body of Jesus, which he wraps in linen and puts in a tomb.

evening had come

Here evening is spoken of as if it were something that is able to "come" from one place to another. Alternate

translation: "it had become evening" or "it was evening"

Mark 15:43

Joseph of Arimathea came there. He was a respected

The phrase "came there" refers to Joseph coming to Pilate, which is also described after the background information is given, but his coming is referenced before for emphasis and to help introduce him to the story. There may be a different way to do this in your language. Alternate translation: "Joseph of Arimathea was a respected"

Joseph of Arimathea

"Joseph from Arimathea." Joseph is the name of a man, and Arimathea is the name of the place his is from.

He was a respected member of the council ... for the kingdom of God

This is background information about Joseph.

went in to Pilate

"went to Pilate" or "went in to where Pilate was"

asked for the body of Jesus

It can be stated clearly that he wanted to get the body so that he could bury it. Alternate translation: "asked for permission to get the body of Jesus in order to bury it"

Mark 15:44

Pilate was amazed that Jesus was already dead; he called the centurion

When Pilate heard that Jesus was dead, he was surprised, so he asked the centurion if it was true. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Pilate was amazed when he heard that Jesus was already dead, so he called the centurion"

Mark 15:45

he gave the body to Joseph

"he permitted Joseph to take Jesus's body"

Mark 15:46

linen

Linen is cloth made from the fibers of a flax plant. See how you translated this in Mark 14:51.

He took him down ... Then he rolled a stone

You may need to make explicit that Joseph probably had help from other people when he took Jesus's body down from the cross, prepared it for the tomb, and closed the tomb. Alternate translation: "He and others took him down ... Then they rolled a stone"

a tomb that had been cut out of a rock

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "a tomb that someone had previously cut out of solid rock"

a stone against

"a huge flat stone in front of"

Mark 15:47

Joses

This Joses was not that same person as the younger brother of Jesus. See how you translated the same name in [Mark 6:3]

the place where Jesus was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the place where Joseph and the others buried Jesus's body"



**16** <sup>1</sup>When the Sabbath day was over, Mary Magdalene, Mary the mother of James, and Salome bought spices that they might come and anoint Jesus' body.<sup>2</sup>Very early on the first day of the week, they went to the tomb when the sun had come up.

<sup>3</sup>They were saying to one another, "Who will roll away the stone for us from the entrance to the tomb?"<sup>4</sup>When they looked up, they saw that the stone had been rolled away, for it was very large.

<sup>5</sup>They entered the tomb and saw a young man dressed in a white robe, sitting on the right side, and they were alarmed.

<sup>6</sup>He said to them, "Do not be alarmed. You seek Jesus, the Nazarene, who was crucified. He is risen! He is not here. Look at the place where they had laid him.<sup>7</sup>But go, tell his disciples and Peter, 'He is going ahead of you to Galilee. There you will see him, just as he told you.'"

<sup>8</sup>They went out and ran from the tomb; they were trembling and amazed. They said nothing to anyone because they were so afraid.

<sup>9</sup><sup>1</sup> [Early on the first day of the week, after he arose, he appeared first to Mary Magdalene, from whom he had cast out seven demons.<sup>10</sup>She went and told those who were with him, while they were mourning and weeping.<sup>11</sup>They heard that he was alive and that he had been seen by her, but they did not believe.

<sup>12</sup>After these things he appeared in a different form to two of them as they were walking out into the country.

<sup>13</sup>They went back and told the rest, but they did not believe them.

<sup>14</sup>Jesus later appeared to the eleven as they were reclining at the table, and he rebuked them for their unbelief and hardness of heart, because they did not believe those who saw him after he rose from the dead.<sup>15</sup>He said to them, "Go into all the world, and preach the gospel to the entire creation.<sup>16</sup>He who believes and is baptized will be saved, and he who does not believe will be condemned.

<sup>17</sup>These signs will go with those who believe: In my name they will cast out demons. They will speak in new languages.<sup>18</sup>They will pick up snakes with their hands, and if they drink anything deadly, it will not hurt them. They will lay hands on the sick, and they will get well."

<sup>19</sup>After the Lord Jesus had spoken to them, he was taken up into heaven and sat down at the right hand of God.

<sup>20</sup>The disciples left and preached everywhere, while the Lord worked with them and confirmed the word by the signs that went with them.] <sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>The best ancient copies do not have Mark 16:9-20.

<sup>2</sup>See the note on Mark 16:9.

---

## Mark 16 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried ([Mark 15:46](#)) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

### Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

#### A young man dressed in a white robe

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about angels in white clothing with the women at Jesus's tomb. Two of the authors called them men, but that is only because the angels were in human form. Two of the authors wrote about two angels, but the other two authors wrote about only one of them. It is best to translate each of these

passages as it appears in the ULB without trying to make the passages all say exactly the same thing. (See: [Matthew 28:1-2](#) and [Mark 16:5](#) and [Luke 24:4](#) and [John 20:12](#))

## Links:

- [Mark 16:1 Notes](#)

---

### Mark 16:1

Connecting Statement:

On the first day of the week, women come early because they expect to use spices to anoint Jesus's body. They are surprised to see a young man who tells them Jesus is alive, but they are afraid and do not tell anyone.

When the Sabbath day was over

That is, after the Sabbath, the seventh day of the week, had ended and the first day of the week had begun.

### Mark 16:2

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 16:3

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 16:4

the stone had been rolled away

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone had rolled away the stone"

### Mark 16:5

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 16:6

He is risen!

The angel is emphatically stating that Jesus has risen from the dead. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "He arose!" or "God raised him from the dead!" or "He raised himself from the dead!"

### Mark 16:7

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 16:8

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 16:9

Connecting Statement:

Jesus appears first to Mary Magdalene, who tells the disciples, then he appears to two others as they walk in the country, and later he appears to the eleven disciples.

on the first day of the week

"on Sunday"

### Mark 16:10

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

### Mark 16:11

They heard

"They heard Mary Magdalene say"

he had been seen by her

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Mary Magdalene had seen him" or "she had seen him"

### Mark 16:12

he appeared in a different form to two of them

The "two of them" saw Jesus, but he looked different from how he had looked previously.

two of them

"two of his disciples"

Mark 16:13

they did not believe them

The rest of the disciples did not believe what the two who had been walking in the country said.

Mark 16:14

Connecting Statement:

When Jesus meets with the eleven, he rebukes them for their unbelief and tells them to go out into all the world to preach the gospel.

the eleven

These are the eleven apostles who remain after Judas has left them.

they were reclining at the table

This is a metonym for eating, which was the usual way people in that day ate meals. Alternate translation: "they were eating a meal"

reclining

In Jesus's culture, when people gathered to eat, they lay down on their sides, propping themselves up on pillows beside a low table.

hardness of heart

Jesus is rebuking his disciples because they would not believe in him. Translate this idiom so it is understood that the disciples were not believing Jesus. Alternate translation: "refusal to believe"

Mark 16:15

Go into all the world

Here "the world" is a metonym for the people in the world. Alternate translation: "Go everywhere there are people"

the entire creation

This is an exaggeration and a metonym for people everywhere. Alternate translation: "absolutely everybody"

Mark 16:16

He who believes and is baptized will be saved

The word "He" refers to anyone. This sentence can be made active. Alternate translation: "God will save all people who believe and allow you to baptize them"

he who does not believe will be condemned

The word "he" refers to anyone. This clause can be made active. Alternate translation: "God will condemn all people who do not believe"

Mark 16:17

These signs will go with those who believe

Mark speaks of miracles as though they were people going along with the believers. Alternate translation: "People watching those who believe will see these things happen and know that I am with the believers"

In my name they

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is giving a general list: "In my name they will do things like these: They" or 2) Jesus is giving an exact list: "These are the things they will do in my name: They."

In my name

Here "name" is associated with Jesus's authority and power. See how "in your name" is translated in [Mark 9:38]

Mark 16:18

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 16:19

he was taken up into heaven and sat

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God took him up into heaven, and he sat"

sat down at the right hand of God

To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God.

Alternate translation: "sat in the place of honor beside God"

Mark 16:20

worked with them

worked together with them, helped them as they worked

---

confirmed the word

This idiom means they proved that their message was true. Alternate translation: "showed that his message, which they were speaking, was true"

by the signs that went with them

"by enabling them wherever they went to do miracles that showed that they truly were his disciples"